THE UNITED REPUBLIC OF TANZANIA

MINISTRY OF HEALTH

National Medical Standard Operating Procedures for District Level Hospital Laboratory

Version 01:2024

JANUARY 2024

NATIONAL MEDICAL STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR DISTRICT LEVEL HOSPITAL LABORATORY

PUBLISHED IN 2024

MAGUFULI GOVERNMENT CITY, AFYA ROAD/STREET, MTUMBA,

PO BOX 743,

40478 DODOMA, TANZANIA.

LANDLINE: **+255 (0)26 232 3267**

EMAIL: **ps@afya.go.tz**

WEBSITE: **www.moh.go.tz**

ISBN: 978-9912-9833-6-6

DISCLAIMER

This document is provided on the basis that it is for the use of MoH and PO-RALG only. MoH will not be bound to discuss, explain or reply to queries raised by any agency/organisation other than the intended recipients of this document. MoH disclaims all liability to any third party who may place reliance on this document and therefore does not assume responsibility for any loss or damage suffered by any such third party in reliance thereon.

The images and related drawings used in this document are intended solely as a guiding support and should be considered as purely indicative, not restrictive of the expected item characteristics nor an indication of the client's choice and/or preference.

The views expressed in this manual are those of the individual contributors. Comments on the usefulness of this manual, and suggestions for improvements in future editions will be welcome, and should be addressed to the contact therein. This communication may contain information that is proprietary, confidential, or exempt from disclosure. If you are not the intended recipient, please note that any other dissemination, distribution, use or copying of this communication is strictly prohibited. Anyone who receives this document in a message in error should notify the sender immediately by telephone or by return e-mail and delete it from their computer.

Table of Contents

ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

For the purposes of this NMLSOP document, these abbreviations and acronyms will apply:

Abbreviations	Acronyms
AIDS	Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome
AJLM	African Journal for Laboratory Medicine
AMMP-1	Adult Morbidity and Mortality Project Phase 1
AMR	Antimicrobial Resistance
ANC	Antenatal Care
APECSA	Association of Pathologists of East, Central and Southern Africa
APHL	Association of Public Health Laboratories
APT	Association of Pathologists of Tanzania
ASCP	American Society for Clinical Pathology
ASLM	African Society for Laboratory Medicine
ASM	American Society for Microbiology
BEmONC	Basic Emergency Obstetric and Neonatal Care
BMC	Bugando Medical Centre
BRM	Biorisk Management
BSC	Biological Safety Cabinet
BSc	Bachelor of Science
BSL	Biosafety Level
BUQ	Bottom-Up Quantification
CCM	Chama Cha Mapinduzi (*Ruling Party in the United Republic of Tanzania)*
CD4	Cluster of Differentiation 4
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDs	Cluster of Differentiations
CEmONC	Comprehensive Emergency Obstetric and Neonatal Care
CEPD	Continuing Education and Professional Development
CHF	Community Health Financing
CHMT	Council Health Management Team
CHSB	Council Health Service Board
CHWs	Community Health Workers
CLS	Community Laboratory Services
CLSI	Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute
COPECSA	College of Pathologists, East, Central and Southern Africa
CPD	Continuing Professional Development
CPL	Central Pathology Laboratory
CTRL	Central Tuberculosis Reference Laboratories
DDHCTSU	Director, Diagnostic and Health Care Technical Services Unit
DED	District Executive Director
DHs	District Hospitals

Abbreviations	Acronyms
DLTs	District Laboratory Technologists
DMO	District Medical Officer
DO	Data Officer
DP	Development Partner
DQA	Data Quality Assurance
DTS	Dried Tube Specimen
EAC	East African Community
EAPHLN	East African Public Health Laboratory Network
ECSA	East, Central, and Southern African
eLIS	electronic Laboratory Information System
eLMIS	Electronic Logistics Management Information System
EOC	Emergency Operations Centre
EQA	External Quality Assessment
FBO	Faith Based Organisations
FYDP	Five Years' Development Plan
GCLA	Government Chemistry Laboratory Agency
GHSA	Global Health Security Agenda
GOT	Government of Tanzania
HCRF	Health Commodity Revolving Fund
HCTS	Health Care Technical Services
HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
HLI	Health Links Initiative
HLPC	Health Laboratory Practitioners' Council
HMIS	Health Management Information Systems
HMTs	Health Management Teams
HSSP IV	Health Sector Strategic Plan IV
HSSP V	Health Sector Strategic Plan V
I-TECH	International Training and Education Centre for Health
IATA	International Air Transport Association
ICAP	International Center for AIDS Care and Treatment Programs
IDSR	Integrated Disease Surveillance and Response
IHR	International Health Regulations
IMPACT	Information Mobilise for Performance Analysis and Continuous Transformation
IMTU	International Medical and Technological University
ISBN	International Standard Book Number
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
IT	Information Technology
KCMC	Kilimanjaro Christian Medical Centre
KIU	Kampala International University
KPI	Key Performance Indicator
LEMM	Laboratory Equipment Management Module
LIO	Laboratory Information Officer
LIS	Laboratory Information System
LMIS	Logistic Management Information System
LO	Logistic Officer

Abbreviations	Acronyms
LQA	Laboratory Quality Assurance
MDG	Millennium Development Goals
MeLSAT	Medical Laboratory Scientists Association of Tanzania
MMAM	Mpango wa Maendeleo ya Afya ya Msingi
MNCH	Mother and Neonatal Child Health
MoH	Ministry of Health
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
MS	Marketing Surveillance
MSc	Master of Science
MSD	Medical Stores Department
MSD	Medical Stores Department
MTBDR	Mycobacterium Tuberculosis Drug Resistance
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MUHAS	Muhimbili University of Health and Allied Sciences
NACP	National AIDS Control Programme
NACTE	National Council for Technical Education
NBTS	National Blood Transfusion Services
NCDs	N0n-Communicable Diseases
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation
NHLS	National Health Laboratory Services
NHLSP	National Health Laboratory Strategic Plan
NIMR	National Institute for Medical Research
NMCP	National Malaria Control Programme
NMLSSP III	National Medical Laboratory Services Strategic Plan III
NPHL	National Public Health Laboratory
NPHLA	National Public Health Laboratory Agency
NRL	National Reference Laboratory
NSCLQS	National Sub-Committee on Laboratory Quality System
NSGHLS	National Standard Guidelines for Health Laboratory Services
NSGRP	National Strategy for Growth and Reduction of Poverty
NSLQMS	National Sub-committee for Laboratory Quality Management Systems
NTDs	Neglected Tropical Diseases
NTLP	National Tuberculosis and Leprosy Programme
PEPFAR	President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief
PHDR	Poverty and Human Development Report
PHIA	Population-based HIV Impact Assessment
PHLB	Private Health Laboratory Board
PHLS	Public Health Laboratory Services
PLHIV	People Living with HIV and AIDS
PO-RALG	President's Office-Regional Administration and Local Government
POC	Point of Care
PPM	Planned Preventive Maintenance
PPP	Public Private Partnership
PT	Proficiency Testing

Abbreviations	Acronyms
QA	Quality Assurance
QC	Quality Control
QMS	Quality Management System
QO	Quality Officer
RAS	Regional Administrative Secretary
RBF	Results-based Financing
RFM	Result Framework Matrix
RHMT	Regional Health Management Team
RLQA	Regional Laboratory Quality Assurance
RLTs	Regional Laboratory Technologists
RMO	Regional Medical Officer
RRH	Region Referral Hospital
RTQII	Rapid Testing Quality Improvement Initiative
SADC	Southern African Development Community
SADCAS	Southern African Development Community Accreditation System
SCM	Supply Chain Management
SD	Standard Deviation
SDG	Sustainable Development Goals
SLIPTA	Stepwise Laboratory Improvement Process Towards Accreditation
SLMTA	Strengthening Laboratory Management Toward Accreditation
SO	Safety Officer
SWOC	Strength Weakness Opportunities and Challenges
TA	Technical Assistance
TB	Tuberculosis
TCU	Tanzania Commission for Universities
THPS	Tanzania Health Promotion Support
TIKA	Tiba kwa Kadi
TMDA	Tanzania Medicine and Medical Devices Authority
TOR	Terms of Reference
TOT	Trainer Of Trainee
TSPAS	Tanzania Service Provision Assessment Survey
URT	United Republic of Tanzania
WHO	World Health Organization
ZACDS	Zonal Advisory Committee on Diagnostic Services

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this NMLSOP document, these terms and definitions will apply:

Terms	Applicable Definitions
Demand	Refers to consumers' desire to acquire the services, and the willingness to pay for it.
Access	Refers to the ability of people to reach places and services and the ability of places to be reached by people and goods
Quality	Refers to the degree to which a set of inherent characteristics of products or service fulfils requirements
Resilience	Refers to the process of adapting well in the face of adversity, trauma, tragedy, threats, or significant sources of stress - such as relationship problems, serious health problems, or workplace and financial stressors
Accountability	Refers to responsibility of an individual to complete assigned tasks and to perform the duties required by their job
Learning	Refers to the process of acquiring new understanding, knowledge, behaviours, skills, values, attitudes and preferences
Operational plan	Refers to a comprehensive and actionable plan that defines how team's functions and activities contribute to an organisations overall business goal

FOREWORD

This is the first National Medical Laboratory Standard Operating Procedure (NMLSOP).

The document outlines the Standard Operating Procedures that the laboratory tests are to be performed in various facilities during the period of one year's towards strengthening the provision of quality medical laboratory services. The plan was developed through consultative process involving various stakeholders within the Ministry of Health and other Ministry of the government of Tanzania.

This plan describes the background of medical laboratory sciences, as well as the context in which it was established in the country. It also features the current roles, functions and structure of the organisation. Furthermore, contents of the plan include; stakeholders' analysis, strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and challenges that face medical laboratory services. In identifying these elements, SWOC and Political, Economic, Social, Technological, Environmental and Legal (PESTEL) analysis were used.

The NMLSOP have been developed in line with the other medical laboratory's technical procedures. This NMLSOP is presented in seven (7) chapters set in a path to overcome the weaknesses and challenges as well as proving a tool to take advantage of organisation's strength in exploring the existing opportunities. The SOPs include purpose, scope, responsibilities, principle and many steps. This NMLSOP is expected to be reviewed annually from January 2024 to January 2025.

Successful implementation of this NMLSOP depends on the availability of technical and financial resources to coordinate its execution. Hence, all stakeholders should be aware of their roles and responsibilities at the national, regional, and council levels outlined in this strategy. It is expected that, MoH through the Director, Diagnostic and Health Care Technical Services Unit (DDS) will provide the required leadership and guidance.

Dr. John A. K. Jingu
PERMANENT SECRETARY

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The National Medical Laboratory Standard Operating Procedure (NMLSOP) is a product of dedicated efforts and contributions of various stakeholders. The MoH acknowledges the contribution of PO-RALG, Development and Implementing Partners, Non-Government Organisations (NGOs), Institutions or facilities (National Hospitals, Zonal Hospitals, Specialised Hospitals, Regional Referral Hospitals, District Hospitals, Health Centers, Dispensaries), Regulatory Agencies (Health Laboratory Practitioner's Council and Private Health Laboratories Board), Programmes (NASHCoP, NTLP, NMCP, NBTS) and Individuals towards improving the quality of health care service delivery through improved medical laboratory services.

In particular, the MoH would like to thank the Global Fund (GF) and Centres for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) for their financial and technical support through the consultancy in development of this strategic plan. Special appreciations are extended to technical experts and individuals for their active participation and constructive inputs and comments provided in reviewing this guideline (**ANNEX 1**).

Our appreciations go to the Director of diagnostic and Health Care Technical Services Unit (DDS) Dr Alex S. Magesa for steering up the whole process; Acting Head of Laboratory Services (Ag. HLS) Mr Reuben S. Mkala for field coordination; and to all laboratory technical team or individuals who played a pivotal role in developing this NMLSOP by participating in the consultation workshops, meetings, providing relevant information and offering their expert opinion when consulted. Last but not the least; appreciations go to David Ocheng, who facilitated the whole process of developing this document.

Prof. Tumaini J. Nagu
CHIEF MEDICAL OFFICER

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

In developing this National Medical Laboratory Standard Operating Procedure (NMLSOP) for the period 2024-2025 consideration has been made on a number of National and International guiding and operational guidelines. National Standard for Medical Laboratories (2017); Health Care Technology Policy Guideline (2004); Operational Plan for the National Laboratory System to Support HIV and AIDS Care and Treatment (2005); National Laboratory Quality Assurance Framework to Support Health Care Interventions (2007); Standard Guidelines for the Facilities and Operations of Forensic Bureau Laboratory (2008); International Health Regulations (IHR) of 2005; Global Health Security Agenda (GHSA) 2024 Framework; and the Ruling Party Election Manifesto 2020.

The main objective of this SOPs is to enable the laboratories at all levels to effectively and efficiently carry out their core functions of laboratory tests as stipulated by their mandate, strategically coordinate and allocate the available resources by prioritising functions with effective impact in line with the National Health Policy (2007) and the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs).

There are four chapters in this document. Chapter one provides; a brief introduction and background information, justification and objectives for the NMLSOP.

This National Medical Laboratory Standard Operating Procedure has four strategic directions:

1. Enhanced conducive Political, Social and Economic environment for Medical Laboratory services (Resilience);
2. Improved and strengthened Medical Laboratory Diagnostic services (Access);
3. Heightened effective collaboration and partnerships for coordinated action (Demand);
4. Strengthened Quality Management systems, Surveillance and Monitoring and Evaluation (Quality).

For each objective above, strategies, targets, activities and performance indicators were derived. The NMLSOP Matrix specifically describes the sequence of objectives,

strategies, targets, activities and performance indicators are considered the guiding framework for the development and implementation of annual operational plans.

SCOPE

The scope of this National Medical Laboratory Standard Operating Procedure (NMLSOP) is to provide a step-by-step instruction for performing laboratory tests.

PRIMARY BENEFICIARIES

The primary beneficiaries are Laboratory Practitioners' who perform examination of biological samples in the laboratories and non-laboratory testers performed specialised laboratory tests at point-of-care testing sites.

SECONDARY BENEFICIARIES

The Secondary users of this document will include but not be limited to:

Policy makers, medical care managers and administrators, medical devices regulatory authorities, medical laboratories, intervention programmes, Regional Health Management Teams and Council Health Management Teams, zonal medical equipment workshops, biomedical engineers, healthcare technical services and end-users engaged in strengthening the quality of medical diagnostic services in the country.

Additionally, other beneficiaries include: Development and Implementing Partners who provide technical assistance to support the Government of Tanzania (GOT) to implement the medical laboratory agenda, public and private medical institutions and laboratories, and higher learning medical laboratory training institutions, prospective accrediting agencies, medical professional bodies and clinical laboratory medicine.

The objective of NMLSOP is to ensure that Laboratory personnel implement National Medical Laboratory Standard Operating Procedure for continuity of quality medical diagnostic laboratory services as needed by the clients.

CHAPTER 1: SAMPLE COLLECTION

1.0 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The collection of samples for laboratory tests from patients consists of following steps:

- Documentation/Registration of the patient
- Collection of samples
- Dispatch of sample to respective department

1.1.1 Handling of Biological Samples

Laboratory staffs are often confronted with the problem of handling of biological samples from patients. The following must be observed for personal protection;

- All biological samples must be considered hazardous and infected.
- Wearing of personal protective equipment (PPEs),
- Exercising due care to prevent spillage/splashes while transferring blood to containers from syringe,
- The sample containers be labelled with adequate information.

1.1.2 Samples for Culture

i As far as possible samples for culture should be obtained before administration of antimicrobial agents.
ii If it is not possible, then the laboratory should be informed about the therapeutic agent(s) so that this fact is considered before issuing laboratory report.
iii Material should be collected from the appropriate site where the likelihood and possibility of isolation of suspected organisms is high.
iv Sometimes patient's active participation is necessary for sample collection
v (sputum or urine), so he/she should be instructed properly and accordingly.
vi Sufficient quantity of samples is to be collected to permit complete examination.
vii Samples are to be placed in sterile containers.
viii Some samples are directly collected in culture media. Contact laboratory if such collection is required.
ix Proper labelling of samples should always be done with patient's name, test type, date and site of collection etc.
x The relevant clinical information is to be recorded on the request form.
xi Any condition, circumstances or situation that will require special procedures should also be noted on the request from.
xii Samples should be collected during working hours except in emergency, so that the services of qualified microbiologist will be available to directly supervise processing of the sample.

xiii The most appropriate samples for isolation of viral, chlamydial or rickettsia agents depend on the nature of the illness.

xiv The material should be collected as early as possible in the acute phase of the disease, because these agents tend to disappear relatively rapidly after the onset of the symptoms.

xv Vesicle fluid is preferably collected in a syringe or capillary pipette and immediately diluted in an equal volume of skimmed milk or tissue culture medium.

xvi All samples for viral culture should be frozen and stored at -70°C until culture is initiated.

1.1.3 Dispatch of Samples from Reception to the Laboratory Sections

i Match the containers and respective request forms, number them and enter in the dispatch register/computer.

ii Verify while handing over/taking away to respective department of the laboratory.

iii Notify the concerned department about urgent and special tests.

1.1.4 Sample Transportation

i Exterior of the container should not be soiled/contaminated with the samples.

ii Sufficient absorbent materials must be used to pack the sample, so that it absorbs the spilled liquid in case of leakage/breakage during transit to reference/referral laboratory.

iii Sample containers must be leak proof and unbreakable. Plastic containers are preferred.

iv Samples must be promptly delivered to the laboratory for valid results.

v If applicable, appropriate transport media should be used.

vi Samples are to be refrigerated or incubated at 37°C, as the case may be, if there is a delay in transport of samples to laboratory.

vii An appropriately filled request form should always accompany all samples to guide the pathologist/ health laboratory practitioner in selection of suitable media or appropriate technique.

1.2 COLLECTION OF BLOOD SAMPLES

Consider the following recommended order of veins during blood drawing;

- Median cubital vein (first choice), • Cephalic vein (second choice),
- Basilic vein (third choice).

1.1.5 Blood sample for serology

i Serological tests are required in most of the bacterial, viral and parasitic diseases.

ii A clotted blood sample is preferred.

iii A vacuum collection system is both convenient as well as reliable.

iv Wherever applicable, paired samples are to be collected during acute and convalescent phases of illness in certain viral and other infections to document a diagnostic rise in antibody titre.
v Protect blood samples from extremes of heat and cold during transport.
vi Whole blood is to be stored at 2-8°C.
vii Serum can be frozen at -20°C or lower temperature for long term storage.

1.1.6 Blood sample for culture

i Make sure you have the appropriate media for blood culture, as the media may vary depending upon the type of pathogen suspected.
ii Wash the hands with soap and water and wear sterile gloves.
iii Withdraw the blood following the procedure described on the procedure for collection of venous blood. Change needle before injecting the blood into the culture bottle.
iv Thoroughly clean the rubber bung of the culture bottle with iodine solution and inject an amount of blood equal to 10% of the volume of medium (for 30 ml medium 3 ml blood and for 50 ml medium, 5 ml blood is needed).
v After the needle has been removed, the site should be cleaned with 70% alcohol/spirit swab again.
vi Don't store the containers and caps separately.
vii Blood obtained for culture of suspected anaerobes should not be exposed to air in any way.

1.1.7 Venous blood

i Welcome and greet the patient**,** introduce yourself**.**
ii Make the patient sit comfortably on the phlebotomy chair.
iii Identify the patient by asking his/her particulars and compare them with the request form.
iv Check the request form for the requested investigations and inform the patient about the samples to be collected.
v Where possible, ask the patient to remove any tight - fitting sleeved clothing, or to roll up loose sleeves.
vi Label the containers before obtaining sample.
vii Select syringe of appropriate size so that the quantity of blood required can be obtained in single prick. If multiple or high volume of samples is required, use a butterfly needle or a canula.
viii Select appropriate vein (preferably antecubital) from forearm. Cleanse the skin over the venepuncture site in a circle approximately 5 cm in diameter with 70% alcohol/spirit swab and allow to air dry, do not blow.

ix If the sample is to be collected for blood culture, then skin is to be thoroughly sterilised, following the procedure as follows:
   a) Starting in the centre of a circle
   b) apply 2% iodine (or povidone-iodine)
   c) in ever widening circles until the entire
   d) chosen area has been saturated with iodine.
   e) Allow the iodine to dry on the skin for at least 1 min.
   f) Completely remove the iodine with 70% alcohol/spirit swab following the pattern of application.

x Apply a tourniquet tight enough to obstruct venous flow only and relocate the vein to be punctured but don't touch the proposed site of needle entry or the needle itself. Ask the patient to clench the fist to make the veins prominent. If the vein is not visible, palpate it with fingers. In case the veins of forearm are not visible/palpable, other sites such as dorsum of the hand may be selected.

xi With bevel up, insert the correct needle size on the veins at an angle between 15 - 30o then draw the blood into the appropriate collection tubes, (make sure the patient arm in a downward position to prevent reflux).

xii Mix immediately after drawing each tube that contain an additive by gently inverting the tube 8 - 10 times. Do not mix vigorously in order to avoid haemolysis.

xiii Release the torniquet from the patient, Withdraw the needle and apply pressure to the puncture site using dry cotton balls/gauze pad. Do not withdraw the piston too forcefully as it can collapse the vein and it may cause frothing/ haemolysis of the sample.

xiv Apply pressure with thumb on antiseptic swab at puncture site for 2 - 4 min till the blood ooze stops.

xv If syringe was used, safely remove the needle from the syringe before distribution.

xvi The blood from syringe is distributed to appropriate, labelled containers.

NOTE:

In case of multiple blood sample collection, consider the following recommended order of draw;

- First tube blood culture,
- Second tube: non-additive tube (e.g. red stopper),
- Third tube: coagulation tube (e.g. blue stopper),
- Last tube: additive tube (e.g. lavender or green tube).

1.1.8 Capillary Blood Collection

i Wear sterile gloves

ii Assemble All Collection Tools

iii Clean the ring fingertip with 70% isopropyl alcohol swab or 70% spirit starting the middle and leave outward to prevent contaminating the area,
iv Leave the site to air-dry,
v Hold the finger firmly place the new sterile lancet device at the site on the finger,
vi Wipe first drop of blood with a clean dry gauze or cotton wool,
vii Collect the sample with the second drop of blood using appropriate sample collection devices such as blood capillary tube,
viii Apply pressure with a clean dry gauze pad or cotton wool until bleeding stop, ix. Transfer the collected blood sample into appropriate sample container or testing devices.

1.1.9 Procedure for Performing Neonate Capillary Blood Collection

i Use the most medial or lateral portions of the planter surface of the heel Limit the depth of the puncture wound by using an automated lancet.
ii Only consider using the whole plantar surface of the foot (using automated lancets of 2.2mm in length or less) for neonates over 33 weeks' gestation if they are having multiple/frequent heel pricks
iii Position the neonate: ensure the foot is lower than the body.
iv Choose a puncture site – do not use a previous puncture site.
v Clean the heel site (i.e. gauze and water) if the foot appears unclean (e.g. faecal material).
vi Encircle the foot with the palm of the hand and the index finger.
vii Make a quick puncture with the automated lancet device
viii Wipe off the first drop of blood with a gauze swab
ix Collect the sample with the second drop of blood using any of the collection devices such as slides or rapid test
x Apply pressure with a clean dry gauze pad until bleeding stop

1.3 COLLECTION OF URINE SAMPLES

Urine samples are collected for routine and culture examinations to diagnose urinary tract infections (UTIs), both lower UTIs (cystitis-infection of the bladder) and upper UTIs (pyelonephritis-infection of the kidney). Unlike most other cultures, colony counts are done on urine samples to determine the number of organisms present in the sample. Generally, >100,000 organisms/ml of a single isolate indicate an individual has a UTI. However, mixed UTIs do occur and some individuals with UTIs will have counts lower than 100,000 organisms/ml.

Most organisms that cause UTIs are normal enteric flora, including *E. coli, Proteus, Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, and *Enterococcus* species. In young, otherwise healthy,

sexually active females, *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* can be found to be the cause of UTI.

UTIs caused by *Proteus* species can be complicated by the formation of urinary calculi or stones. The large amount of urease that *Proteus* produces can alkalinise the urine. If there are minerals such as phosphates or carbonates in the urine, the alkaline pH can cause them to precipitate out and form stones.

TYPES OF URINE SAMPLE

A. First morning urine sample

It provides concentrated urine as the bladder incubated it the whole night. It is best for nitrite, protein, good for microscopic examination and culture and sensitivity. The casts may have deteriorated and bacteria may affect true glucose reading.

B. Random (routine) urine sample

It is the most common type and most convenient sample. It is good for observing physical characteristics, chemical analysis and identification of casts, crystals and cells.

C. Second-voided urine sample

The first morning sample is discarded and second sample is collected. Formed elements remain intact.

D. Mid-stream (clean catch) urine sample

The portion of urine that does not contain the first and last portions of the sample.

E. Post-prandial

It is collected after meal (usually after 2 hours). It is good for glucose and protein estimation. Urine sugar testing now has limited diagnostic or prognostic value.

F. Timed sample

It is a combination of all voiding over a length of time. Two-hour sample is good for urobilinogen and 24-hour sample is good for quantitative urinary components estimation. Timed urine samples are collected in dynamic function tests.

G. Foley catheter

Disinfect a portion of the catheter with alcohol, puncturing the tubing directly with a sterile syringe and needle and aspirate the urine. Place urine in a sterile container, it should never be collected from drainage bag.

H. Suprapubic urine

Urine sample collected by suprapubic aspiration and cystoscopy.

1.1.10 Procedures for Collection of Urine Sample

Urine sample is often collected by patient him/herself. Therefore, the patient needs to be properly instructed to have correct sample collection. An uncontaminated midstream urine (MSU) sample is the best and following methods are to be used for its collection:

A. Females

i. Wash the genital area thoroughly with - clean water (may be omitted for urine Routine Examination).
ii. With two fingers of one hand, hold the outer folds of vagina (labia) apart. With the other hand, rinse the area from the front to the back with running tap water.
iii. Start urination so that the stream of urine should flow without touching the skin. After a few moments, place a sterile container under the stream of urine. Remove it from the urine stream the moment required amount of urine is collected.
iv. Secure and tighten the cap on the container.

B. Males

i. Wash the genital, area thoroughly with Clean water (may be omitted for urine Routine Examination).
ii. Start urination and after a few moments, place a sterile container under the stream of urine. Collect the required amount of urine and remove the container from urine stream.
iii. Secure and tighten the cap.

C. Infants, uncooperative and debilitated patients

i. Plastic bags may be attached after careful and thorough washing of genital area.
ii. The bags should be watched so that they can be removed immediately after patient has passed the urine.
iii. If the patient has not voided urine within 30 min the collecting bag is removed.
iv. Patient needs to be re-scrubbed and a new collection device is to be attached.

D. Urine collection for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*

i. Three consecutive early morning samples (>90 ml each) collected in sterile container are superior to 24h collection.
ii. Boric acid (1.6%) is used as preservative in case of 24h urine collection in exceptional situations e.g., when patient cannot report daily for sampling.
iii. Suprapubic aspiration in ward by a doctor is preferred in catheterised patients.

1.4 FAECAL SAMPLES COLLECTION PROCEDURE

Faecal samples are collected for routine and culture examinations to find the causative agent of infectious diarrhoea. Rectal swabs are often helpful in identifying the cause of acute bacterial diarrhoea when stool sample cannot be collected readily.

It is important to remember that there are many causes of diarrhoea other than infectious agents such as metabolic disorders, certain drugs, and food intolerances (allergies). In a routine stool culture, the following organisms are often isolated: *Salmonella* species, *Shigella* species and *Vibrio cholera.* Viruses and parasites are also common causes of diarrheal disease.

1.2.1 Procedure for Collection of faecal samples

i. Faeces should be passed directly into a clean, waxed cardboard container that is fitted with a tight cover.
ii. Avoid contact with residual soap/detergent, disinfectant or urine in the bedpan.
iii. Faeces obtained are transferred to another clean, wide mouthed and screw capped container. The sample should include any pus, blood, mucus or formed elements that may have passed with stool.
iv. Sample (~1 ml) is added to 10 ml sterile alkaline peptone water in suspected cholera cases.
v. If viral infection is suspected, faeces are extracted with sterile buffered saline. Faeces (~1 ml) are mixed with 9 ml sterile buffered saline, allowed to sediment for 30 min (or centrifuged). The supernatant is transferred to a sterile container, frozen and kept below -40°C until processed.

1.5 COLLECTION OF BODY FLUIDS

The primary body fluid that are collected for routine and culture examinations includes; cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), joint fluid, pleural fluid, and peritoneal (ascites) fluid.

1.2.2 Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)

i. CSF routine and culture examinations are performed to diagnose meningitis due to Viruses, fungi, and bacteria. Acute bacterial meningitis (ABM) is a medical emergency.

ii. The age and immune status of the patient influence the type of bacterial pathogen most likely to cause ABM:
iii. Neonates 0 – 2 months; *E. coli, Streptococcus agalactiae* - Group B streptococci, *Listeria monocytogenes*
iv. 2 months - 2 years; *Haemophilus influenza* and *Neisseria meningitidis*
v. Older than 2 years; *Neisseria meningitides* – most common in children and young adults, *Streptococcus pneumoniae* – most common in older adults

Procedures for Collection of CSF samples

CSF is normally collected from sub-arachnoid space of spinal cord at lumber level by puncture with a long needle. A physician in the ward under strict aseptic conditions performs the procedure.

i. Sample shall be collected in 2-4 ml quantities in 3-4 sterile screw capped bottles that are serially numbered and must be sent to the laboratory immediately.
ii. In case CSF is to be cultured for *M. tuberculosis* then at least 5 ml sample is needed. CSF shall be tested as soon as it arrives in the laboratory.
iii. CSF in the first bottle is sometimes contaminated with blood and should be kept aside.
iv. Fluid from second bottle is used for routine tests while fluid from third bottle is used for bacterial culture etc.
v. If tuberculous meningitis is suspected, 4th bottle is kept in refrigerator undisturbed to see whether a pellicle or coagulum forms.

NB: CSF must never be refrigerated (if for bacterial culture as it kills H. Influenzae) and should be kept at 37°C.

Body Effusions (Exudates and Transudates)

An effusion is fluid which collects in a body cavity or joint. Fluid which collects due to an inflammatory process is referred to as an **exudate** (needs investigations) and that which forms due to a non-inflammatory condition is referred to as a **transudate** (needs no microbiological investigations). Effusions include; pleural, pericardial, synovial, peritoneal, and hydrocele fluids.

1.2.3 Pleural and Pericardial Fluids

Main purpose of testing is to ascertain their transudative or exudative nature and to find a causative organism if an infective process is indicated. See sputum sample for list of organisms that can be isolated from pleural samples.

1.2.4 Peritoneal Fluid - Ascites

The common indications for paracentesis are ascites of unknown origin, suspected intestinal perforation, haemorrhage or infarct, infections like tuberculosis, complications of cirrhosis (spontaneous bacterial peritonitis) and suspected intraabdominal malignant disorders.

1.2.5 Joint fluid (synovial fluid)

Joint fluid cultures are performed to diagnose septic arthritis (most cases of arthritis are NOT infectious; they are due to strain on a joint or immunological diseases).

The three most common causes of septic arthritis are: *Staphylococcus aureus, Neisseria gonorrhoea,* and Coagulase-negative staphylococci in patients with joint replacement prosthetics

1.2.6 Hydrocele Fluid

Usually from the sac surrounding the testes. Occasionally *Wuchereria bancrofti* microfilariae and rarely *Brugia* species can be found in hydrocele fluid.

Collection of aspiration fluids (effusions)

- Collection of synovial, pleural, pericardial, peritoneal, or hydrocele fluid is carried out by a medical officer or competent nurse.
- Label each container with the date and the patient's identifiers
- After aspiration, aseptically dispense the fluid into 3 tubes as follows:
  - 5 to 10 ml is in a sterile tube for microbiological examination. o 5 ml in anticoagulant (heparin, trisodium citrate or EDTA) for estimation of cell count and protein concentration.
  - 2-3 ml in a plain tube and allowed to clot (normal fluid does not clot).
- If the sample cannot be examined immediately, fluid should be frozen and stored at -70°C until examined**.**

1.6 COLLECTION OF GENITAL SAMPLES

i. Indicated for the diagnosis of bacterial sexually transmitted diseases, primarily gonorrhoea (GC) or non-gonococcal cervicitis or urethritis (NGU). The most common cause of NGU is *Chlamydia trachomatis.*
ii. immunological and molecular tests for the diagnosis of chlamydial infections includes (PCR, DNA probes, etc.).
iii. Vaginal secretions are also sent to the laboratory for the diagnosis of vaginitis.
iv. The diagnosis of vaginitis can be made with a wet mount – yeast, trichomonas, bacterial vaginosis (BV), culture – yeast, or Gram stain – yeast and BV.

v. Urethritis, cervicitis: *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis,* other agents of NGU
vi. Vaginitis: *Candida albicans, Trichomonas vaginalis and* BV

1.2.7 Urethral swabs

Possible pathogens; *Neisseria gonorrhoea, Chlamydia trachomatis,* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*.

Collection of urethral discharge from male patients

i. Cleanse around the urethral opening using a swab moistened with sterile physiological saline.
ii. Gently massage the urethra from above downwards.
iii. Using a swab, collect a sample of discharge.
iv. Make a smear of the discharge on a microscope slide by gently *rolling* the swab on the slide. This will avoid damaging pus cells which contain the bacteria.

Note: Very few pus cells may be present if the patient has recently passed urine. Allow 2–4 hours after urination before collecting a sample.

v. When culture is indicated (see previous test),
vi. Collect a sample of pus on a sterile cotton-wool swab.
vii. If possible, before inserting the swab in a container of Amies transport medium, inoculate a plate of culture medium.
viii. Label the samples and deliver them to the laboratory as soon as possible. vii. Isolation of N. gonorrhoeae from urine

***Note*:**

A rectal swab is also required from homosexual patients. A selective medium is required to isolate *N. gonorrhoea* from a rectal sample.

In acute urethritis, it is often possible to detect *N. gonorrhoea* in pus cells passed in urine, especially the first voided urine of the day (centrifuged to sediment the pus cells).

Cervical swabs and possible pathogens

From non-puerperal women:

Neisseria gonorrhoea, Chlamydia trachomatis (serovars D-K), *Streptococcus pyogenes*, herpes simplex virus.

From women with puerperal sepsis or septic abortion:

Streptococcus pyogenes, other *beta* haemolytic streptococci, *Staphylococcus aureus, Enterococcus* species, anaerobic cocci, *Clostridium perfringens, Bacteroides, Proteus, Escherichia coli and other coliforms, Listeria monocytogenes.*

1.2.8 Collection of cervical samples from female patients

i. A sample collected from the endocervical canal is recommended for the isolation of *N. gonorrhoeae* by culture. Use a sterile vaginal speculum to examine the cervix and collect the samples.
ii. Moisten the speculum with sterile warm water, and insert it into the vagina.
iii. Cleanse the cervix using a swab moistened with sterile physiological saline.
iv. Pass a sterile cotton-wool swab 20–30 mm into the endocervical canal and gently rotate the swab against the endocervical wall to obtain a sample.
v. When gonorrhoea is suspected, before inserting the swab in Amies transport medium, if possible, inoculate a plate of culture medium. Label the samples and deliver to the laboratory as soon as possible. Inoculated culture plates must be incubated within 30 minutes.

1.2.9 Vaginal Swabs

Vaginal discharge may be due to infection of the vagina or infection of the cervix or uterus.

Pathogens causing vaginal infections include *Trichomonas vaginalis, Candida species, and Gardnerella vaginalis with anaerobes.*

1.2.10 Collection of vaginal discharge to detect T. vaginalis, C. albicans and G. *vaginalis*

Two preparations are required:

A. Wet preparation to detect motile *T. vaginalis*

i. Use a sterile swab to collect a sample from the vagina.
ii. Transfer a sample of the exudate to a microscope slide.
iii. Add a drop of physiological saline and mix.
iv. Cover with a cover glass.
v. Label and deliver to the laboratory for immediate examination

B. Dry smear for Gram staining to detect Candida and examine for clue cells

Although yeast cells can be seen in an unstained wet preparation, the Gram-positive cells and pseudo hyphae of *C. albicans* are more easily seen in a Gram-stained smear.

i. Use a sterile swab to collect a sample from the vagina.
ii. Transfer a sample of the exudate to a microscope slide and spread it to make a *thin* smear.
iii. Allow the smear to air-dry, protected from insects and dust.
iv. Label and deliver to the laboratory with the wet preparation.

1.2.11 Collection of samples to detect T. pallidum

To detect motile *T. pallidum* spirochetes, a sample must be collected before antibiotic treatment.

i. Wearing protective rubber gloves, cleanse around the ulcer (chancre) using a swab moistened with physiological saline. Remove any scab which may be present.
ii. Gently squeeze the lesion to obtain serous fluid. Collect a drop on a clean cover glass and invert it on a microscope slide.
iii. Immediately deliver the preparation to the laboratory for examination by darkfield microscopy

1.7 WOUND SAMPLES TO INCLUDE PUS, ABSCESS, TISSUE

Indicated for primarily to diagnose skin and soft tissue infections (SSTIs). SSTIs may be caused by a variety of organisms; different organisms depending on how the wound or injury occurred. Fungi, parasites, and viruses are also important causes of certain types of SSTIs.

Community-acquired: *Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pyogenes, Clostridium perfringens* and other anaerobic bacteria).

Hospital-acquired: *Staphylococcus aureus,* Enteric Gram-negative rods – *E. coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Acinetobacter* species*,* and other non-fermenting Gramnegative rods, *Streptococcus pyogenes, Clostridium* species and other anaerobic bacteria

Collection of Wound sampless - *General considerations*

Samples should be collected by a medical officer or an experienced nurse.

Pus from an abscess is best collected at the time the abscess is incised and drained, or after it has ruptured naturally.

When collecting pus from abscesses, wounds, or other sites, avoid contaminating the sample with commensal organisms from the skin.

As far as possible, a samples from a wound should be collected before an antiseptic dressing is applied.

When pus is not being discharged, use a sterile cotton-wool swab to collect a sample from the infected site.

Immediately after collection, immerse the swab in Amies transport container.

Label the samples and as soon as possible deliver it with a completed request form to the laboratory.

When myeloma is suspected: Obtain a samples from a draining sinus tract using a sterile hypodermic needle to lift up the crusty surface over the sinus opening. This method of samples collection has the advantages that the pus obtained is usually free from secondary organisms and the draining granules can usually be seen clearly and removed for microscopic examination. Transfer the pus to a sterile container.

When tuberculosis is suspected*:* Aspirate a sample of the pus and transfer it to a sterile container.

When the tissue is deeply ulcerated and necrotic (full of dead cells): Aspirate a sample of infected material from the side wall of the ulcer using a sterile needle and syringe. Transfer to a sterile container.

Fluid from pustules, buboes, and blisters*:* Aspirate a samples using a sterile needle and syringe. Transfer to a sterile container.

Serous fluid from skin ulcers, papilloma, or papules, that may contain Treponema*:* Collect a drop of the exudate directly on a *clean* cover glass and invert it on a *clean* slide. Immediately deliver the samples to the laboratory for examination by dark-field microscopy.

Caution: Samples from patients with suspected plague or anthrax are highly infectious. Label such samples HIGH RISK and handle them with care. In a health centre for dispatch to a microbiology laboratory Collect the samples using a sterile cotton-wool swab.

Insert it in a container of Amies transport medium, breaking off the swab stick to allow the bottle top to be replaced tightly.

In a hospital with a microbiology laboratory

- Using a sterile technique, aspirate or collect from a drainage tube up to 5 ml of pus.
- Transfer to a leak-proof sterile container. When the material is aspirated fluid from a pustule, transfer the fluid to a sterile, leak-proof container. Stopper, and seal in a leak-proof plastic or metal container.

Note: It is not possible to transport exudate from a suspected treponemal ulcer because the Treponema remain motile for only a short time.

Make a smear of the material on a clean slide (for Gram staining) and allow to air-dry in a safe place. Heat-fix the smear.

Caution: **Do *not* make a smear for transporting when the samples is from a patient with suspected anthrax.**

Send the samples with a completed request form to reach the microbiology laboratory within 6 hours.

1.8 COLLECTION OF THROAT AND NASAL SWABS

Throat cultures are performed to diagnose streptococcal pharyngitis (infection with *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A streptococci). The most common causes of pharyngitis (sore throat) are viruses, which cause over 75- 80% of all cases. Of the bacteria that cause pharyngitis, Group A streptococci is the major cause and therefore, with few exceptions the only bacteria that is reported from a throat culture is *Streptococcus pyogenes.*

Exceptions include:

- *Corynebacterium diphtheria* which in areas of the world where vaccination is prevalent, is a rare cause of pharyngitis
- *Neisseria gonorrhoea* can cause pharyngitis, however many pharyngeal infections with *N. gonorrhoea* are mild or asymptomatic.
- If the physician suspects either of these two organisms, he/she must let the lab know because the isolation of either requires special culture techniques.

Throat Swabs

Throat swab cultures are to be taken under direct vision with good light.

Areas of exudation, membrane formation, any inflammation or if not seen then tonsillar crypts are the sites of choice.

Nasal swabs

- Nasopharyngeal swabs are better taken by treating physician/surgeon himself. For recovery of viral agents, washings are collected after gargles with nutrient broth by the patient.
- Nasal Sample for Mycobacterium leprae
- The nasal sample for *M. leprae* can be taken as follows:

6.1 Nasal swab

i. Make the patient sit with his head bent backwards but facing the light.
ii. Insert and repeatedly rotate the swab into one of the nasal cavities, against upper part of the nasal septum.

iii. Make 2-3 evenly spread smears.

iv. Air dry the slides, wrap in a paper and send to the laboratory.

6.2 Nasal washings and nasal blow

i. Make the patient sit.
ii. Place a few drops of sterile saline in the nose.
iii. After 3 min, ask the patient to blow hard his nose on a small sheet of plastic or cellophane. (This plastic or cellophane can be given to the patient to take it home and ask him to blow hard onto the sheet, the following morning, soon after waking and before washing.
iv. The patient can bring it directly to the laboratory).
v. Transfer some of the mucus pieces from the washing to a slide with a clean wooden stick and make thin smear.
vi. Air dry slide and send it to the testing area

6.3 Collection of Nasopharyngeal Swabs

Assemble equipment for Nasopharyngeal swab collection and PPEs for prevention of infections.

i. Lable the VTM with required information and fill the register and all necessary forms with all necessary information.
ii. Remove the swab from the package. Do not touch the soft end with your hand or anything else.
iii. Insert the nasopharyngeal swab into the nasopharnx region. iv. Leave in place for a few seconds.
iv. Slowly remove swab while slightly rotating it.
v. Break the applicator's stick end and put tip of swab into ATM containing vial
vi. VTM

1.9 COLLECTION OF OROPHRYANGEAL SWABS

Assemble equipment for orophryangeal throat swab collection and prevention of infections.

i. Label the VTM with required information and fill the register and all necessary forms with all necessary and correct information.
ii. Remove the swab from the package. Do not touch the soft end with your hand or anything else.
iii. Have the patient open his/her mouth wide. iv. Insert swab in the area of tonsils.
iv. Use tongue depressor if the patient is not able to resist gagging and closing the mouth while the swab touches the back of the throat near the tonsils. vi. Rotate swab to obtain adequate sample

v. Break the applicator's stick end and put tip of swab into vial containing VTM

1.10 COLLECTION OF SKIN SMEARS

i. Ensure all required material and supplier are in place.
ii. Ask the patient to sit on the prepared chair at phlebotomy.
iii. Confirm the identity of the patient by asking his/her name and compare with name written on the request form.
iv. Clearly explain to patient what you want to do and ask for verbal consent
v. Select the site, you should take a smear from two sites only**;** One ear lobe and One active lesion

Sample from ear lobe

i. Clean the skin at the smear site with swab and let it air dry.
ii. Pinch the skin firmly between your thumb and forefinger
iii. Make an incision in the skin about 5mm long and 2mm deep. Keep on pinching to make sure the cut remains blood less
iv. Turn the scalpel 90^{o} and hold it at right angle to the cut
v. Scrap inside the cut once or twice with side of the scalpel to collect tissue fluid and pulp (there should be no blood in the sample as this may interfere with staining and reading of the slide
vi. Stop pinching the skin and absorb any bleed with dry cotton swab
vii. Spread the material scrapped from the incision on to the slide, ensure you spread it evenly with the flat of the scalpel making 8mm diameter
viii. Clearly label your slide with patient ID similar to that appearing on patient request form

Sample from active lesion

i. Rub the scalpel with cotton wool drenched with alcohol.
ii. Pass the blade through the flame of the spirit burner for 3-4 seconds and let it to cool without touching anything
iii. Select the most active looking lesion (active means lesion that are raised and reddish in colour)

1.11 SPUTUM SAMPLES

Sputum cultures are performed to diagnose infections such as pneumonia and pulmonary tuberculosis that is caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Bacteria associated with Community-Acquired Pneumonia (CAP):

i. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* – most common bacterial cause of CAP
ii. *Haemophilus influenzae*
iii. *Moraxella catarrhalis*
iv. *Staphylococcus aureus* - particularly following a viral infection such as influenza

v. *Klebsiella pneumoniae* – particularly in individuals with chronic conditions such as alcoholism
vi. *Mycoplasma pneumonia** – particularly in young individuals in closed quarters
vii. Bacteria associated with Hospital-Acquired Pneumonia:
viii. *Streptococcus pneumoniae*
ix. Enteric Gram-negative rods such as *E. coli, Klebsiella,*
x. *Enterobacter, Citrobacter,* and *Serratia*

- *Staphylococcus aureus*
- *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
- *Acinetobacter* species
- *Haemophilus influenzae*

Sputum Collection Procedure

1. Label the sample container on the body of the container, not on the lid and fill out the sputum examination request form.
2. Instruct the patient and demonstrate how she or he can produce and collect good sputum;
    a) Access to a well ventilated place (outside the laboratory working area),
    b) Mouth wash (rinsing with water),
    c) Breathe in deeply 2-3 times, and breathe out hard each time.
    d) Cough deeply from the chest and collect the sputum into the container.
    e) Opening and closing the sputum container so as there are no leaks or smearing on the exterior of the container.
    f) Hand wash steps
3. Emphasise the need for the patient to supply the most useful sample, the normally thick, yellowish (sometimes blood-streaked), purulent material brought up from the lungs after a deep, productive cough.
4. Emphasise that saliva produced by spitting is not sputum. However, if the only sample the patient can produce is salivary, do submit it to the laboratory as it can still yield useful information.
5. Encourage the patient to bring the collected sample back to the unit as quickly as possible.
6. For M.tuberculosis culture, a series of three fresh, early morning samples (5-10 ml) are collected and kept in the refrigerator. If amount is less, the patient is advised to collect 24 h sputum or until 50 ml is obtained.
7. M.tuberculosis can be recovered from the gastric contents in infants, debilitated patients and those who are unable to cooperate in the collection of sputum. This can be obtained by gastric aspiration performed as an indoor procedure.
8. Gastric washings are better collected early in the morning, in fasting state. These are neutralised soon after collection by N/10 NaOH.

1.12 COLLECTION AND TRANSPORT OF SAMPLES FOR FUNGAL CULTURE

Purpose

The proper collection of Samples and their rapid transport to the clinical laboratory are of major importance for the recovery of fungi. In many instances, Samples not only contain the etiologic agent but also contain contaminating bacteria or fungi that will overgrow some of the slower-growing pathogenic fungi.

Materials

Sterile sample collection containers (screw-capped, plastic, disposable), screwcap tubes, transport media, blood culture bottles 70% alcohol, syringe and needle, forceps Requisition forms, biohazard sample bags

Samples

- Samples submitted for fungus cultures may come from either sterile or non-sterile body sites.
- Samples include cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), blood, bone marrow, pleural fluid, peritoneal fluid, joint fluid; tissue biopsies and fine needle aspirates from body sites such as the lung, liver, brain, lymph nodes.
- sputum, tracheal aspirate, Broncho alveolar lavage fluids; skin, nails and hair samples; midstream urine; superficial wound swabs; throat, mouth, or nasopharynx; ear material; vaginal or cervical material; and faeces.

Procedure

1. Collect Samples aseptically and place in sterile, leak-proof containers**,**collect vaginal, ear, throat, and cervical Samples in swabs. Dried out swabs and 24 hour collections of any sample are not acceptable.
2. Blood for fungal cultures are directly inoculated into special culture bottles. The medium should be obtained from the laboratory prior to collection.
3. the sample should be collected before an antifungal agent is administered.
4. Deliver the sample to the laboratory within two hours.
5. Submit Samples with appropriate test request form that ndicate type of fungal culture requested:
   a) Dermatophyte culture for hair, skin, and nail Samples
   b) Rule-out *Candida* culture for vaginal, urine, skin and throat Samples
   c) Fungal blood culture
   d) Complete fungal culture

Appendix 1: Guidelines for Collection of Samples for Fungal Cultures (Site-specific)

Collection Guideline and Minimum Volume	**Transport** Local / distal**	**Comments**
Abscess/drainage/wound: Aspirate sample and transport in a syringe without needle or place in a sterile screw-cap container.	≤2 h, RT ≤24 h, RT	Samples may also be collected using aerobic swab transport system (least recommended). Sample base of lesion and abscess wall.
Blood: Collect as for bacterial cultures; inoculate 10 ml Samples into blood culture bottles (commercial). (Note: The amount of blood inoculated into the bottle depends on the amount of media in the bottle.)	≤2 h, RT ≤24 h, RT	Automated blood culture systems
Bone marrow: Inoculate Samples onto culture medium or blood culture bottles (commercial) for automated blood culture system.	≤15 min RT ≤24 h, 4^{o}C	Lysis centrifugation device may be used; 0.5 ml to 3 ml of bone marrow in a green top (heparin) tube or 5 ml in a yellow top tube (heparin)
CSF: Collect a minimum of 2 ml in a sterile container.	≤15 min RT or 30^{o}C ≤24 h, RT	Never refrigerate CSF; aspirate or biopsy of brain abscess may be refrigerated
Ear, external: Collect as for bacterial culture; use transport swab	≤2h, RT ≤24 h, 4^{o}C	
Eye, Corneal scrapings: Inoculate directly onto media and prepare slides for staining. Agar plates are inoculated by lightly touching both sides of the spatula in a row of separate “C” streak marks.	15 min RT ≤24 h, RT	Contact the laboratory to obtain medium prior to corneal scraping procedure.
Eye, conjunctiva: Collect sample in aerobic transport swab medium.	≤2 h, RT ≤24 h, RT	Sample both eyes even if one is uninfected. The uninfected eye can act as a control to compare against agents isolated from the infected eye.

Collection Guideline and Minimum Volume	Transport** Local / distal	Comments
Hair/Nails: Disinfect area with 70% alcohol before collection of Samples. **Hair:** After selecting infected area, remove at least 10 hairs with shaft intact, and scrape scalp scales if present. **Nails:** Scrape infected nail area, or clip infected nail.	≤72 h, RT ≤72 h, RT	Place Samples in dry container or envelope. Humidity in a closed sample transport system may cause the sample to be overgrown by bacteria
Respiratory sites: Collect 3 early morning sputa resulting from a deep cough; Collect BAL, trans tracheal aspirate, bronchial washings, and induced sputum. Collect >1 ml. Transport Samples in a sterile screw-cap container.	≤2 h, RT ≤2 h, 4°C	24-hours sputum collections are not acceptable for fungal culture. Short survival time for thermally dimorphic pathogens
Respiratory sites: Sinuses Surgical removal of sinus contents. Collect sample in sterile, moist gauze. Transport sample in a sterile screw-cap container	≤15 min RT ≤24 h, RT	Maxillary and ethmoid sinuses are the most common sites. Use no bacteriostatic saline solution to moisten the sample.
Respiratory sites: Oral Swab active lesions in aerobic transport swab medium.	≤2 h, RT ≤24 h, RT	
Skin/intertriginous areas: Disinfect area with 70% alcohol; scrape surface of skin at margin of lesion with a scalpel or end of a microscope slide. Place sample in clean dry container or envelope.	≤72 h, RT ≤72 h, RT	Humidity in a closed sample transport system may cause the sample to be overgrown by bacteria.
Sterile body fluids: pericardial, peritoneal,	≤15 min	In general, the more fluid
pleural, synovial Collect a minimum of 2 ml in a sterile screwcap container. May use blood culture bottles for yeasts.	RT ≤24 h, 4°C	obtained for culture, the better the chance of isolation for any fungal pathogen.

Collection Guideline and Minimum Volume	Transport** Local / distal	Comments
Submission of stool Samples for routine fungal culture is discouraged. Many Candida spp. are part of the normal stool biota, and anything that disrupts the normal gastrointestinal tract biota, such as diet or use of antibiotics, can yield a predominance of yeast when stool is cultured. Neither colonisation with yeast nor a predominance of yeast indicates invasive disease with Candida. If invasive disease of the gastrointestinal tract is suspected, a colonoscopy and tissue biopsy should be performed.		
Tissue/biopsy Samples: Collect tissue and transport in sterile screwcap container with a small amount of no bacteriostatic saline to prevent drying.	≤15 min RT ≤24 h, RT	Never transport in formalin.
Urine: First morning clean-catch urine in sterile screw-cap cup; Catheterised sample in sterile screw-cap cup; collected in a sterile screw-cap cup following prostatic massage.	≤2 h, RT ≤2 h, 4oC	24-hur urine collections and Foley catheter urine Samples are not acceptable; Patients with blast mycosis or cryptococcosis may have prostatic infection.
Vagina: Collect sample in aerobic transport swab medium.	≤2 h, RT ≤24 h, RT	Primarily for refractory vaginal candidiasis

1.13 COLLECTION OF SAMPLES FOR CYTOLOGY

Fixative

Two types of smears are used for cytological examination depending on the preferred method of staining.

Usually wet-fixed smears are preferred to air-dried smears. Wet fixed smears are prepared by immediately fixing the slide without allowing it to dry. The fixatives recommended are a mixture of equal parts of ether and 95% ethyl alcohol, formal

alcohol or 95% ethyl alcohol alone. Not less than 15 min are required for adequate fixation though slides may remain in the fixative for 7-10 days without deterioration. Coplin jars made of glass or plastic are commonly used as containers for fixative.

Papanicolaou's and H&E stains are commonly used on wet-fixed smears. T

Respiratory Tract:

Sputum

A fresh early morning sample produced by a deep cough should be collected and brought to the laboratory immediately without any fixation. If it is not possible to transport unfixed material to the laboratory, the sputum should be prefixed by asking the patient to expectorate into a wide mouthed small jar half filled with 70% ethyl alcohol. In case of peripheral laboratories where cytology facilities are not available, fresh sputum should be examined grossly for tissue fragments and blood tinged areas. Smears from these areas and other randomly sampled areas should be prepared and fixed immediately (wet-fixed) in 95% ethyl alcohol. After fixation for 20 min these slides can be dried and transported to referral laboratory for reporting.

Bronchial Aspirates, Washings and Brushings

Aspirates and washings collected during bronchoscopy may be centrifuged and smears prepared from the cell button. Direct smears can also be made and fixed in 95% ethyl alcohol. Direct smears should be prepared from bronchial brushings and wet-fixed in 95% alcohol. Alternatively, they can be processed like aspirates and washings.

Broncho alveolar Lavage (BAL)

BAL involves the infusion and re-aspiration of a sterile saline solution into the air passages. This fluid should be submitted as such immediately to the laboratory. If delay in transportation is expected, equal quantity of 95% ethyl alcohol should be added.

Urinary Tract:

Urine

Freshly voided urine is the sample of choice in male patients. The first morning sample should be avoided as the urine has been collecting in the bladder overnight and the cells have usually degenerated. In female patients catheterised urine is the preferred sample. Approximately 50-100 ml of urine should be collected in an equal amount of 50% ethyl alcohol. If possible the patient should be sent to the laboratory for collection of a fresh sample.

Washings and Brushings of Ureter and Renal Pelvis, Bladder Washings

All washings should be collected in an equal amount of alcohol for fixation. Brushings may also be added to alcohol for fixation. Alternatively, direct smears may be prepared and wet fixed in an alcoholic fixative.

Pleural, Pericardial and Peritoneal Fluids

Fluid should be collected in a clean, dry container, which need not be sterile, and should be sent to the laboratory as soon as possible. If it is not possible to send the fluid immediately, it should be stored in a refrigerator at 4°C and not allowed to freeze. The sample can be preserved at refrigerator temperature for several days. In case of small peripheral laboratories without cytology facilities, smears should be prepared after centrifugation. Both wet-fixed and air-dried smears of the sediment, labelled as such should be submitted to the referral laboratory.

CSF

Cerebrospinal fluid should be collected in a clean container and transported immediately to the laboratory for processing. If delay in transportation of more than a few hours is expected equal amount of 50:50 alcohol ether mixture, or 95% ethyl alcohol may be added.

Alimentary Tract

Brush and wash samples may be collected from oesophagus, stomach, lower bowel and rectum. Brush smears should be prepared immediately by rolling on a clear glass slide. Five to six such smears may be wet fixed in alcohol for Papanicolaou's staining. A few air-dried smears may also be prepared. These should be labelled as such and submitted for cytological examination. Wash samples from stomach must immediately be neutralised with N/10 sodium hydroxide (pH up to 6.0) and centrifuged rapidly in ice-cold siliconised tubes. Smears are prepared from the deposit in the same manner as mentioned above. Wash samples from lower bowel are also concentrated in the same way by centrifuging in ice-cold siliconised tubes and smears prepared. **Female Genital Tract Cervical Smear**:

1. Used to obtain a representative sample from the squamocolumnar junction (transformation zone), using an Ayre's spatula or similar device.
2. Having exposed the cervix using a bivalve speculum a circumferential sample is obtained by rotating the spatula through 360°, thus obtaining cells from the entire junctional zone.

3. If the smear does not show endocervical cells, an additional smear may later be obtained from the endocervical canal by using a cotton-tip applicator or endocervical cytobrush.
4. By using a wooden spatula, place the obtained sample on a glass slide and spread smoothly down the length of the slide. Immediately, fix the slide by placing it in 95% alcohol for a minimum of 15 min or by using an aerosol spray fixative.
5. After fixation the slide is allowed to dry and sent to the laboratory with a complete request form.
6. Slide identification and labelling must be ensured at all times.
7. Alternatively, a sample may also be collected from the vaginal pool in the posterior fornix with the help of a pipette.
8. Few drops of fluid are expressed onto a slide, spread and fixed in the same way as above.
9. The advantage of this sample is that it contains cells from the entire female genital tract however the disadvantage is that the cells are dead and desquamated and may show degenerative **changes, which are difficult to interpret.**

Vaginal Smear

Samples for hormonal evaluation are taken from the lateral vaginal wall. If this is not possible, posterior fornix pool sample may be used. The samples should be taken by lightly dipping the applicator in the secretions avoiding forceful scraping. The smears are prepared, wet fixed immediately in the same manner as cervical smears, dried and submitted to the laboratory.

Breast

Nipple discharge

A few drops should be expressed by pressing the sub areolar region. The drops are touched on to a clean glass slide and spread with the help of another slide. Smears should be wet fixed in alcoholic fixative and submitted.

FINE NEEDLE ASPIRATION (FNA) BIOPSY

This technique can be used to sample superficial and subcutaneous lesions in breast, thyroid, lymph node, salivary gland and superficial abdominal masses. It can also be used in deep visceral lesions with the help of radiologists using fluoroscopy, computer assisted tomography, angiography and ultrasonography to localise the lesions.

Procedure for FNA:

1. Proper clinical history should be taken in establishing diagnosis.
2. Explain and assure the patient about the procedure.
3. Obtain a disposable syringe with 21-25 gauge needle (5-10 ml) syringe.
4. Thoroughly cleaned the area with a spirit swab.

5. Introduce the needle into the mass, create negative pressure by retracting the plunger and prob the mass is in several directions (Figure 1).
6. Prior to withdrawal of needle, realease
7. the plunger to allow equalisation of pressure.
8. Apply a cotton swab for few min to stop the bleeding.

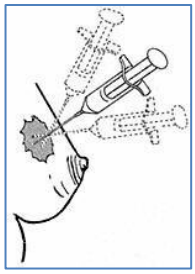


Figure 1: Fine needle biopsy technique

Slide Preparation:

1. After aspiration, detach the syringe from the needle and fill it with air.
2. Reattach the syringe to the same needle and push the plunger to gently express the material onto glass slides.
3. This step can be done once or twice.
4. By using another slide, gently spread the materials on the slide. You can use the opposite surfaces of the two slides (one slide containing aspirated material and another clean slide) for smearing.
5. Allow the slides to air dry or fix them in solution containing ether and alcohol in equal proportions or 95% alcohol.
6. Stain the slides by either of the cytological stains ((Papanicolaou (PAP), Haematoxylin and Eosin (H&E), Leishman and modified Giemsa stains)).

Collection of semen

1. The period of abstinence, date and time of collection and interval of time between actual collection and laboratory analyses should be recorded on the worksheet.
2. The sample must preferably be collected after 3-day abstinence, but not longer than 7 days.
3. The entire sample should be obtained by masturbation into a sterile glass or plastic container with a screw top.

NOTE: Coitus interruptus is not a reliable means of semen collection, because the first portion of the ejaculate, which contains the highest number of spermatozoa, may be lost. Moreover, there may be cellular and bacteriological contamination of the sample and the low pH of the vaginal fluid could adversely affect sperm motility.

4. The sample should preferably be collected on site; if this is not possible, the sample must be delivered to the laboratory within 30 minutes to 45 minutes of collection. During this period, the sample should be kept at body temperature.
5. Ordinary latex condoms and containers with rubber stoppers must never be used as these interfere with the spermatozoa viability and motility.

References

1. Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries, vol 1, Monica Cheesbrough. 1998

2. Patricia T. Kent, B.S., George P. Kubica. 1985. Public Health Mycobacteriology; A guide for the level III Laboratory. *U.S Depart. Of Health, Centers for Disease Control.*
3. Bobby E. Strong, M.S., George P. Kubica. Isolation and Identification of Mycobacterium tuberculosis; A guide for the Level II Laboratory. *US. Dept. of Health, Division of Human Services, Centers for Disease Control.*
4. National Standards for Medical Laboratory Guideline, Tanzania; October 2017
5. Practical Laboratory Manual by Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema.
6. Basic Laboratory Method in Medical Parasitology-WHO 1991.
7. District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries by Cheesbrough.
8. Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 10th edition, 2011.
9. The African Field Epidemiology Network: Outbreak Investigation Laboratory Guidelines. DC, USAID, AFENET.
10. Guide for National Public Health Laboratory Networking to Strengthen Integrated Disease Surveillance and Response. WHO, CDC, USAID. Brazzaville, Republic of Congo. 2008

1.14 SAMPLE FOR HISTOPATHOLOGY

General Considerations

1. Container must be several times larger than the sample.
2. It should be wide mouthed and flatbottomed.
3. It should have a screw cap.
4. The plastic container is always preferred over the tin jar.
5. Container should have a label with name of the patient, bed number, ward and nature of sample.
6. The surgical sample should be washed with tap water to remove extra blood whenever possible.
7. The large samples may be incompletely sliced with sharp knife for better fixation.
8. The accompanied request form should have name, age, ward, site of biopsy and brief clinical history.

FIXATIVES

1. In routine, 10% formal saline is an appropriate fixative. It is prepared by diluting one part of 40% formalin in nine parts of physiological saline. Pure formalin (40%) should not be used because it hardens the sample.
2. Samples for frozen section are sent in physiological/isotonic saline.
3. Bone marrow trephine biopsy is fixed in Zenker's solution/formalin or any suitable fixative.
4. Post-mortem samples are fixed and transported in 10% formal saline.
5. The quantity of fixative should be 3-4 times the size of the surgical sample.
6. In special situations always consult pathologist about the fixative to be used.

Renal Biopsy

The sample of renal biopsy for histopathological examination should be collected in 10% formal saline. The request form should contain all the relevant clinical information and results of laboratory investigations. The sample of renal biopsy for immunofluorescence should be submitted fresh in normal saline.

Liver Biopsy

The liver biopsy sample should be collected in 10% formalin/formal saline. Request form should mention the reports of LFTs and hepatitis markers tested besides the relevant clinical information. Liver biopsy sample for the diagnosis of storage disorders should be collected in absolute alcohol.

Bone Sample

Bone sample should be collected in 10% formal saline. Information regarding age, sex of the patient, site of biopsy, clinical history and x-ray with radiologists opinion are required for reporting on bone samples and should accompany the sample.

Sample for Immunohistochemistry and Tumour Markers

Samples should be collected in 10% formal saline. If the case has been reported from AFIP initially, then AFIP report No. is also required. If the case is reported by some other laboratory, then all the slides along with paraffin embedded blocks and the histopathology report are required for immunohistochemistry and tumour markers.

Sample for Oestrogen and Progesterone Markers

These markers are carried out on paraffin blocks. Paraffin blocks along with previous slides and report are required if the case has been reported from some other laboratory.

CHAPTER 2: PARASITOLOGY

2.1. PROCEDURE FOR MALARIA RAPID TEST

2.1.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for In vitro qualitative screening test for detection of malaria parasites (*P. falciparum, P. vivax, P. ovale and P. malariae*) in whole blood

2.1.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all Health Laboratory Practitioners who works in parasitology section on performing MRDT test.

2.1.3 Responsibility

Head of section is responsible to ensure implementation and competence assessment for all staff that will perform this test

2.1.4 Principle

Test is based on principle of immune-chromatography in which nitrocellulose membrane is pre-coated with two monoclonal antibodies as two separates lines. One monoclonal antibody (test line PAN), is PAN specific to lactose Dehydrogenase (phLDH) of the plasmodium species (*plasmodium falciparum, P. vivax, P. ovale* and *P. malariae*). And the other line (test line pf) consist of monoclonal antibody specific to histidine rich protein 2 (HRP2) of plasmodium falciparum. When the test sample along with assay diluent flows through intercellular membrane, monoclonal antibody conjugated with colloidal gold which are PAN specific to plDH and falciparum specific for HRP2 binds to plasmodium antigen released from lysed blood sample. These antigen –conjugate complex moves through the nitrocellulose membrane and binds to corresponding immobilised antibody at test lines, which leads to the formation of colour band/bands indicating reactive results. The control band will appear irrespective of reactive or non-reactive sample.

2.1.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood from EDTA/Finger prick

2.1.6 Equipment Timer

2.1.7 Materials

Gloves, Test kit, Lab Coat, and

2.1.8 Storage and Stability

MRDT sample should be tested within 1hour after collection if not possible stored at 2-8^0c for 7 days.

2.1.9 Safety

- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All Samples must be regarded as potentially infectious. iii. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines (IPC) f

2.1.10 Calibration Not Applicable

2.1.11 Quality Control

Process known positive and negative blood sample daily before performing patient samples.

2.1.12 Procedure Steps

Follow the actions described below for sample collection step-by-step.

i. Allow all kit components and sample to room temperature prior to testing
ii. Remove the test device from the foil pouch; place it on a flat, dry surface. iii. Label the test device with the patient identification number/name
iii. Transfer 5µl of whole blood collected in an inverted cup/special capillary provided into sample well by touching sample pad. (see manufacture instruction)
iv. Add 4 drops of assay diluents into the squire assay diluents well. (See manufacture instruction)
v. Read the result within 15 min. (Do not interpret after 30 min) and read result. (See manufacture instruction).

2.1.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

2.1.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Negative

The presence of one colour band (“C” Control line) within the result window indicates a negative result. **Positive**

“C” and “P. falciparum the presence of two coloured bands (“Pf” test line and “C” control line) within the result window no matter which band appears first, indicate P.F positive result**. Positive**

“C”, “P.f” and “Pan” the presence of three colored band (“Pf”, Pan “Test line and “C” Control line) within the result window no matter which band appears first, indicate P.F positive or mixed infection of P.F and P.V or P.M or P.O **Invalid result**

If no coloured band appear, at control line “c” within stipulated time then the result is invalid.

2.1.15 Limitations of the procedure and sources of error

Test kit cannot detect malaria antigen if parasites are less than 100. The test is limited to detect HRP2, an antigen to Malaria Plasmodium species that may persist after treatment or passed P. falciparum infection.

2.1.16 Performance Characteristics Refer to package insert

2.1.17 Supporting Documents Sample collection manual

2.1.18 References

Manufacturer inserts

2.2. PROCEDURE FOR MALARIA MICROSCOPY

2.2.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for the examination of malaria parasite to diagnose and monitor treatment outcome of malarial infection.

2.2.2 Scope

This procedure is used during examination of malaria parasites at the Laboratory using Microscopy.

2.2.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained health Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for performing this test procedure

The Head of Parasitology unit is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

2.2.4 Principle

Giemsa stain

Giemsa stain is a *Romanowsky* stain contains methylene blue which is basic stain and eosin is acidic stain, the malaria parasites has DNA in the nucleus which is basic in nature and RNA in the cytoplasm is acidic in nature, during staining the reactions takes place whereby acidic part of a parasite will pick-up basic part of the stain and the basic part of the parasite will pick-up the acidic part of the stain, that's why the nucleus of the parasite will show red color and the cytoplasm will stain bluish. Malaria parasites are identified by microscopic examination of thick or thin blood films stained with Giemsa. Thick blood films are used for detecting parasites, thin blood films are used for more detailed morphological examination and for determining parasite species. Thick blood films consist of several layers of blood cells, so that a large volume of blood is examined. The thick film staining technique ruptures red cells, leaving white cells and parasites intact. The thin film staining technique preserves the morphology of blood cells and malaria parasites.

2.2.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood collected in EDTA tube is required Blood slides

2.2.6 Equipment

Hot plate, Tally counters or differential counter, Microscope, Timer, Weighing scale, and PH Meter

Maintenance

To increase the life-span of microscopes, preventive maintenance, including cleaning the objectives and replacing parts as necessary. should be part of routine internal QC and must be properly done and documented. Microscopes should be covered when not in use to avoid exposure to dust, and proper precautions must be taken in humid areas to avoid fungal growth on the lenses and in the microscope.

Also Hot plate, Tally counter, Timer, weighing scale and PH meter should be maintained as per manufacture instructions.

2.2.7 Materials

- High-quality immersion oil should be used according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- High-quality microscope slides, free of surface abrasions, preferably have a frosted end for labeling and purchased from a reputable supplier should be used.
- 10% alcohol-based Giemsa stain,
- markers, lancets, syringes, needles, Vacutainer-type needles, alcohol swabs, lens-cleaning solution, lens-cleaning tissues, buffer tablets, pH calibration solutions, cotton-wool, gloves, safety glasses (including the over-spectacle type), filter paper and glycerol. gloves, sharps, boxes, gowns and detergents, and slide boxes.

2.2.8 Storage and Stability

Unstained blood slides should be stored at 2-8 c for 3 months

Stained blood slides should be stored at room temperature for 3 months on slide boxes.

2.2.9 Safety

Adhere to safety precaution as stated in safety manual/IPC guideline

All personal protective equipment(PPE) should be worn when performing procedure

All samples should be regarded as potential infectious

2.2.10 Calibration

Calibration of PH meter and weighing scale should be done once per year. Maintenance of microscopes should be done as planned.

2.2.11 Quality Control

QC slides should be used to check the quality and performance of the Giemsa stain, Microscope and Laboratory personnel. Malaria-positive and negative blood should be used to prepare QC thick and thin films. Before examining patient slides, the QC slides should be checked first, If the QC slides are satisfactory, the patient slides can be examined. Slides must be selected regularly for cross-checking, either by sending them to a crosschecking center or during routine supportive supervisory visits.

2.2.12 Procedure Steps

Preparation of thick and thin blood film

i. Prepare both thick and thin film on the same microscope glass slide.
ii. Label the slides with the unique patient ID including the date of examination.
iii. Put Slide card for making thin and thick blood films, showing size of blood drops and area of slide to cover for a thin film and thick film
iv. Put the microscope glass slide on the slide card for thick and thin film
v. Pipette 2µl of blood and pour it on the smallest circle on the slide card
vi. Place the spreader in front of the 2µl drop of blood at a 30^{o}- 45^{o} angle. Use a clean microscope slide with a smooth edge as a spreader.
vii. Pull back the spreader and hold until the blood evenly spreads along the width
viii. Push the slide forward in a smooth continuous motion ix. Avoid hesitation or a jerky motion when spreading the blood
ix. Pipette 6µl of blood and pour on the large circle on the slide card. xi. Using another slide, spread the drop of blood within the confined area to make a thick film.
x. Put the slide films on the slide rack and allow it to dry.
xi. Fix the thin smear for one second by either spraying or dipping into absolute methanol.
xii. Air dry the slides on a slide rack with the fixed thin film facing down

Preparation of Giemsa Stock Solution (500ml) from Giemsa powder

i. Measure and dissolve 3.8g of Giemsa powder in 250ml of methanol
ii. Measure 250ml of glycerol and add to the solution above
iii. Ripen the stock solution by placing in direct sunlight for about 1 week or place in water bath of temperature 56^{o}C and shake at interval.
iv. Filter the stock solution before storing in a cool dry place with label and date of preparation

Preparation of 10% Giemsa stain from Giemsa Stock solution

i. Add 1 part of stock solution to the 9 parts of 7.2 buffer solution
ii. Prepare 30ml of 10% working giemsa solution as follows: 3mls of Giemsa

iii. +25ml of buffered water PH of 7.2 iii. Mix and transfer to a clean caped leakproof bottle

iv. Lable and keep in a dry place

Staining of blood films

i. Arrange the slides on a staining rack with the sample side facing up
ii. With an aid of a disposable pipette, Flood the films with 10% Giemsa solution and leave to stain for 15 minutes.
iii. Decant the Giemsa and wash in buffered water at pH 7.2
iv. Clean the back of each slide with cotton wool or gauze
v. Air dry the slides

Examination of the blood films

i. Place a drop of immersion on the thick film
ii. Place the slide on the microscope stage
iii. Swing the X10 objective into position and bring the film into focus using the course adjustment**.**
iv. Use the X10 and X40 objectives to check quality of the slide(s) before reading and reporting;
v. Swing the x 100 oil immersion objective into position and focus using the fine adjustment
vi. Choose the correct smear reading pattern either Horizontal, start from up right to left or Vertical, start from upright down.
vii. Systematically, Examine the thick film. viii. If you do not see any parasites, continue examining the whole film. ix. If parasites are seen, start counting number of white blood cells and parasites simultaneously up to a WBC of 200.
viii. If the parasitemia level is less than 10/200WBC, continue to count up 500
ix. WBC
x. Report the number of parasites count per 200 or 500 white blood cells in the Blood parasites worksheet.
xi. Retain the read slides for 3 Months

2.2.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

2.2.14 Reporting and Interpretation of Results Malaria parasites

Typical Malaria parasites have the following features on the Giemsa stained films;

Purple red chromatin dot, Blue cytoplasm, Brown-black/yellowish green pigment and Distinct morphology

Interpretation

In stained blood films, trophozoites appear as red stained chromatin dots with blue staining cytoplasm. If doubtful on parasites seen, search for definite ones. Do not make

a diagnosis on the basis of structures that resemble rings or chromatin dots alone. Structures that may be confused with malaria parasites are platelets, portions or other red cell inclusion bodies ***Reporting***

If no parasites are seen report as “No parasites seen”

If malaria parasites are seen, report species identified and count e.g. “*Plasmodium species* seen 50/200WBC”

Critical values

The following are the Panic/Critical values for Malaria microscope test results. In case of the patient result falling inside the indicated values, call the Doctor or relevant ward and record the details of the conversation on the Panic Result Book

Test	**Critical value**
Malaria for Under 5 years	>100 *P.falciparum* Asexual/200wbc’s
Malaria for > 5 years& adult	>1000*P.falciparum*Asexual/200wbc’s
None Tropical people	ANY POSITIVE

2.2.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Poor storage of reagents or using the reagents after expiry date may cause false results.

Difficulty in distinguishing young ring-stage parasites

2.2.16 Perfomance characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

2.2.17 Supporting Documents Not Applicable

2.2.18 References

- Practical Laboratory Manual-Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema
- Standard Operating Procedure Essential Laboratory Tests {AMREF-2008 } EXT 120
- Basic Malaria Microscopy Part I. Learner’s Guide, Second edition, WHO.

2.3. PROCEDURE FOR URINE MICROSCOPY

2.3.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to provide step by step instructions for performing macroscopic and microscopic examination of urine sediment samples

2.3.2 Scope

This procedure is used during examination of urine samples in Parasitology section in medical laboratory.

2.3.3 Responsibility

The Registered medical laboratory personnel is responsible for effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

2.3.4 Principle

Macroscopic Examination

The urine is visualized with naked eyes to determine its appearance (turbidity and colour).

Microscopic Examination

The urine sediment is analyzed by a microscope to observe the presence of white blood cells, red blood cells, parasites and other abnormalities in urine sample. Identification of cells (WBC (pus cells), RBGs and Epithelial), casts, crystals, amorphous phosphates, bacteria and parasites in urine is based on their different cellular and intra-cellular morphology under light microscopy.

2.3.5 Sample Requirements

20 mL, minimum 1 mL Fresh, cleanly voided urine collected in a clean container

Early morning voided mid-stream urine. Other samples include;

Random urine (collected at any time of the day)

Terminal urine sample collected at any time of the day for demonstrating ova of *Schistosoma haematobium*

First voided urine sample in the morning is used to demonstrate *Trichomonas vaginalis* in males

In infants and babies, a random urine sample collected as early as possible is used for all types of urine investigation.

2.3.6 Equipment

Microscope, Centrifuge machine, Refrigerator, Timer, and Forceps

2.3.7 Materials

Gloves, Cover slips, Glass slides, Test tubes, Centrifuge tubes, Gauze, Grease pencil, Lens paper, Waste containers, Urine container, Laboratory coat, Marker pen

2.3.8 Storage and stability

Process urine sample within 1hour of collection, if not possible refrigerate at 2-8^{0}C immediately and test within 12 hours.

2.3.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iv. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

2.3.10 Calibration

Urine analyzers, , timer and centrifuge should be calibrated as per schedule Maintenance of all equipments should be done as planed

2.3.11 Quality Control

Quality control should be performed daily before processing patient samples by analysing known positive and negative samples.

2.3.12 Procedure

Macroscopic examination

Observe the appearance of the urine for color and clarity/turbidity

Microscopic examination

i. Label the centrifuge tubes with the laboratory unit number using a grease pencil and arrange into a rack. ii. If the urine sample is to be tested both for urinalysis and culture, mix well by inverting three times and aliquot the sample into a centrifuge tube and label exactly as the original sample
ii. Transfer the centrifuge tubes containing urine sample into the centrifuge. iv. Make sure the centrifuge tubes are balanced well.
iii. Centrifuge the urines at 3000rpm for 5 minutes. vi. Remove the centrifuge tubes from the centrifuge

iv. Pour off the supernatant into the sink with running water and leave the urine deposit
v. Transfer the rack containing arranged centrifuge test tubes to the working area
vi. Arrange the marked slides according to the number of urine sample
vii. Re-suspend the urine deposit by tapping the bottom of the centrifuge tube.
viii. Transfer a drop of the deposit onto a clean glass slide. xii. Put on a cover slip
ix. Place the slide on the microscope stage and reduce the iris diaphragm
x. Examine the slide systematically using x 10 objective and count the cells, casts, crystals, amorphous phosphates and parasites (these structures are more likely to be seen around the edges of the cover slip.
xi. Swing the x40 objective into position
xii. Open the iris diaphragm very slightly to allow just enough light to provide a contrast of cells, casts, crystal and amorphous phosphates against the bright back ground (these structures are more likely to be seen around the edges of the cover slip).
xiii. structures cannot be seen if a very bright light is used
xiv. Put the used glass slide and cover slip in a container with disinfectant.

2.3.13 Biological Reference interval

Macroscopy

Color	Straw - Dark yellow
Appearance	Clear - Hazy

Microscopy

Red blood cells:	0–2/hpf.
WBC (PUS CELL)/Pus cells:	0–5/hpf
Casts	0-4/hpf
Bacteria	Negative

2.3.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Macroscopic

Report the Turbidity and color of the urine e.g. Clear yellowish, Blood stained etc.

Microscopic

Report a range of the actual highest number of WBC (pus cells), RBC and Parasites per high power field as counted under x40 objective (e.g. 0 – 2 RBC/HPF, 3 – 5 WBC/HPF, 10 – 12 S. haematobium ova/HPF) etc.

For crystals, Epithelial cells, yeasts or casts, report as +, ++ or +++. Where + indicates 1 to 9 observed findings per field; ++ indicates 10 to 100 observed findings per field; +++ indicates above 100 observed findings per field.

If no cells or parasites are seen report as “No parasites or cells seen.”

Results interpretation

Schistosomes Haematobium ova in urine indicates Schistosomiasis disease

Presences of more than 3 Red blood cells for males, more than 8 red blood cells for females and any RBC or WBC (pus cell) for children and notification of more than 8 WBC (Pus Cell) in either male or female is pathological significant.

White blood cells may indicate infection or inflammation.

Red blood cells may indicate kidney disease, a blood disorder, or bladder cancer.

Bacteria can indicate infection.

Skin cells can indicate infection or kidney disease.

Crystals may be a sign of kidney stones.

Casts, or tube-shaped proteins, may be a sign of a kidney disorder.

Parasites can indicate parasitic disease in various parts of the body.

2.3.15 Limitations of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

- Inadequate centrifugation of sample
- Poor collection of urine sample
- Prolonged storage of urine sample at wrong temperature
- Expired reagents
- Technical competency level
- Presence of artifacts such as plant cells

2.3.16 Performance Characteristics Not Applicable

2.3.17 Supporting document Sample Collection Manual

2.3.18 References

- Monica Cheesbrough: District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries, Vol 1,Tropical Health Technology, 1998.
- Practical Laboratory Manual-Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema

2.4. PROCEDURE FOR STOOL ROUTINE EXAMINATION

2.4.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for examination of stool macroscopic and microscopic to detect abnomalities/Parasites. The most common parasites include the roundworms *Ascaris lumbricoides* and *Necator americanus* (commonly called hookworm); the tapeworms *D. latum*, *Taenia saginata*, and, rarely, T. solium; the amoeba *E. histolytica*; and the flagellate *G. lamblia*.

2.4.2 Scope

This procedure is used during examination of stool in Parasitology Section.

2.4.3 Responsibility

The Registered medical laboratory personnel are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head of Parasitology section is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure

2.4.4 Principle

Normal saline retains the morphology of the organism in its natural shape and color, free helminthes eggs from debris.

Iodine - stains the internal structure of cyst to brown/yellow color so to allow the study of cyst morphology. It also kills the organisms to allow internal structure easily seen.

2.4.5 Sample Requirements

Stool collected in Clean plastic screw capped container which has spoon like. Include macroscopic worms or worm segments as well as bloody and mucoid portions of the sample.

About 150mg stool should be collected.

2.4.6 Equipment

Microscope, Tally counters or differential counter, Centrifuge and Fume hood

Maintenance

Maintenance of microscopes should be done as planned

2.4.7 Materials

Normal saline, 1% Iodine, 10% formalin, Wooden applicator stick, Grease pencil, Gloves, Microscopic slides, Cover slip, Marker and Stool container

2.4.8 Storage and stability

Stool sample should be at the laboratory within two hours after collection. If a liquid or soft stool sample can't be examined within 30 minutes of passage, place it in a preservative; if a formed stool sample can't be examined immediately, refrigerate it or place it in preservative.

2.4.9 Safety

- All sampless must be considered as potentially infectious and must be handled and examined with care.
- All personal protective equipments (PPE) should be worn when performing procedure
- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
- Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

2.4.10 Calibration

Calibration of centrifuge should be done as per schedule

2.4.11 Quality Control

Quality control should be performed daily before processing patient samples by using known positive and negative samples

2.4.12 Procedure

Macroscopic Observations

Observe the stool sample for the following; Color of the samples, Consistency, Presence of blood, mucus, and, or, pus. Whether the samples contain worms.

Wet Preparation by Saline and 1% Iodine

i. Using marker label a microscope slide with the laboratory number
ii. Place a drop of fresh physiological saline at one end of a slide and a drop of 1% Iodine on the other end.
iii. Using applicator stick, pick up a size of match head stool (~2 mg) and mix with a drop of saline and a similar amount with Iodine to make a smooth thin preparation. iv. If stool is formed, the portion should include the inside and outside parts of the sample
iv. For mucoid or watery stool, mix the entire contents before picking a portion to mix with saline.
v. Cover the preparations with a cover slip.
vi. Start with 10x objective to systematically, examine the entire saline preparation.

vii. Use the 40x objective to assist in the detection and identification of parasitic elements (eggs, ova, cyst etc). Always examine several microscope fields with this objective before reporting 'No parasites seen.'.
viii. Use the iodine preparation to assist in the identification of cysts.
ix. Report the findings on Stool analysis worksheet.
x. Discard the used microscope slide on the container with disinfectant.

2.4.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

2.4.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation

i. Adult helminths or portions of helminths may be recovered and seen with a naked eye. Examples include E. vermucularis adult worms, Ascaris lumbricoides adult worms, and tapeworm proglottids.
ii. Occasionally, other helminths may be recovered (hookworm, Strongyloides stercoralis), but identification requires the use of the microscope.
iii. The appearance of stool will yield diferrent interpretation such as; blood and mucus in faeces: might be suggestive of amoebic dysentery, intestinal schistosomiasis, invasive balantidiasis (rare infection), and severe T. trichiura infections. Other non-parasitic conditions in which blood and mucus may be found include bacillary dysentery, Campylobacter enteritis, ulcerative colitis, intestinal tumour, and haemorrhoids.
iv. **Presence of pus**: This can be found when there is inflammation of the intestinal tract. Many pus cells can be found in faecal sampless from patients with bacillary dysentery. They can also be found in amoebic dysentery but are less numerous.
v. **Pale coloured and frothy (containing fat) samples:** might be suggestive of giardiasis and other infections as- sociated with intestinal malabsorption. vi. **Pale coloured faeces:** (lacking stercobilinogen) might be suggestive of an obstructive jaundice.
vi. Mucoid and blood diarrhea might be suggestive to presence of *E.*
vii. *histolytica*

Reporting

Macroscopic Findings - Report the following:

i. Colour of the samples.
ii. Consistency, i.e. whether formed, semiformed, unformed, watery.
iii. Presence of blood, mucus, and, or, pus. If blood is present note whether this is mixed in the faeces. If only on the surface this indicates rectal or anal bleeding.
iv. Presence of worms, e.g. *A. lumbricoides* (large roundworm), *E. vermicularis* (threadworm) or tapeworm segments, e.g. *T. solium*, *T. saginata.*

Microscopic Findings – Report the Following

i. Report presence of any ova, trophozoites or cysts seen, specifying the species, e.g. “Entamoeba histolytica trophozoites seen”. ii. If no parasites are seen report as “ No ova or cysts seen”.

2.4.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Delay in examination of stool sample may cause missing of some parasites in wet prepation which are dectected still alive. Examples of such organisms are Strongloides stercolaris, Giardia lamblia *E. Histolytica* trophozoites, etc.

Presence of urine kills trophozoites (false-negative results). Excessive heat or cold.

2.4.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification of this procedure.

2.4.17 Supporting Documents Not Applicable

2.4.18 References

- Practical Laboratory Manual-Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema
- Monica Cheesbrough: District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries,Vol 1,
- Tropical Health Technology, 1998.
- Brunner & Suddarth’s Handbook of Laboratory and Diagnostic Tests, 2010.

2.5. PROCEDURE FOR EXAMINATION OF BLOOD FOR MICROFILARIAE

2.5.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing of blood, lymphatic, and cerebrospinal fluid for the recovery of lymphatic filariasis. Diagnosis of filarial infections is often confirmed by demonstration of the parasite.

2.5.2 Scope

This procedure is used during examination procedures to diagnose filarial infections in the Laboratory using Microscopy.

2.5.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained Medical Laboratory Technician, s are responsible for performing this test procedure. The Head of Parasitology unit is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

2.5.4 Principle

Giemsa stain

Giemsa stain is a Romanowsky stain contains methylene blue which is basic stain and eosin is acidic stain, the parasites has DNA in the nucleus which is basic in nature and RNA in the cytoplasm is acidic in nature, during staining the reactions takes place whereby acidic part of a parasite will pick-up basic part of the stain and the basic part of the parasite will pick-up the acid part of the stain, that's why the nucleus of the parasite will show red color and the cytoplasm will stain bluish.

Wet preparation

Microfilariae are seen in wet preparations of blood on direct microscopic examination or in the deposit of a blood sample after lysis with formalin and centrifugation.

2.5.5 5.0. Sample Requirements

Whole blood collected in EDTA tube should be collected around midnight (22:00 – 04:00 for *W. Bancrofti* and 10:00 – 15:00 for *L. Loa*), as this is the time when parasite is present in the blood for microfilaria worms.

2.5.6 Equipment

Hot plate, Tally counters or differential counter, Microscope, Centrifuge, Timer, Weighing scale and PH Meter

2.5.7 Materials

10 % Giemsa stain working solution, 70% Methylated spirit, Distilled water, Immersion oil, Tap water, buffer solution, Cover slips, Glass slide, Rack, Slide drying rack,

2.5.8 Storage and Stability

The Giemsa stock stain should be stored in a dark bottle and take precautions to avoid moisture entering the stain.

2.5.9 Safety

- All sampless must be considered as potentially infectious and must be handled and examined with care.
- All personal protective equipments (PPE) should be worn when performing procedure
- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
- Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

2.5.10 Calibration

Calibration of centrifuge, PH meter and weighing scale should be performed as planned. maintenance of microscopes should be done as planned

2.5.11 Quality Control

Positive and negative control samples are processed once a day in the morning before patient samples.

2.5.12 Procedure Steps

Step 1: Procedural Steps - Wet Preparation

i. Collect 10 ml of venous blood and dispense it into 10 ml of water. ii. Mix the blood gently in water and leave for 10 minutes to give time for all the red cells to lyze.
ii. Centrifuge the haemolyzed sample for 10 minutes at slow to medium speed, i.e. RCF 300–500 g. iv. Using a Pasteur pipette, immediately remove and discard the supernatant fluid.
iii. Transfer the sediment to a slide, add a small drop of methylene blue and cover with a cover glass. The stain will be taken up by the nuclei and show whether the microfilariae are sheathed.
iv. Examine the entire preparation microscopically for motile microfilariae using the 10× objective with the condenser iris closed sufficiently to give good contrast.
v. Count the number of microfilariae in the entire preparation. Divide the number counted by 10 to give the approximate number of microfilariae per ml of blood (mf/ml).

vi. If unable to identify the species with certainty, continue with step 2 (examination with 10% Giemsa stain under oil immersion objective).

Step 2: Procedural Steps – 10 % Giemsa Staining Procedure

i. Remove the cover glass and add a small drop of plasma, serum, or albumin solution.
ii. Mix and spread thinly. Allow the preparation to dry completely.
iii. The addition of albumin, plasma, or serum (known to be microfilaria-free) will help to prevent the preparation from being washed from the slide during staining.
iv. Fix with absolute methanol or ethanol for 2–3 minutes.
v. Flood the films with 10% Giemsa solution and leave to stain for 15 minutes. vi. Decant the Giemsa and wash in buffered water at pH 7.2 or distilled water
vi. Clean the back of each slide with cotton wool or gauze
vii. Place a drop of immersion on the thick film and place the slide on the microscope stage
viii. Swing the x10 objective into position and bring the film into focus.
ix. Swing the x100 oil immersion objective into position and focus. xi. Examine the thick film systematically starting from the top left hand corner and move from field to field.

2.5.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

2.5.14 Reporting and Interpretation of Results

Microfilaria

Species are identified by noting the arrangement of the nuclei towards the end of the tail and the presence of sheath. W. bancrofti and Loa loa have a sheath; M. perstans does not have a sheath. In Loa loa and M. perstans, the nuclei reach the tail tip and the tail tip is rounded. In W. bancrofti, the tail tip is pointed.

Trypanosomes

Trypanosomes have elongated, flat, narrow bodies, often curved. In wet preparations, they move rapidly by means of an undulating membrane and flagellum. In stained preparations, the kinetoplast, a dark staining round body from which the flagellum originates, is seen.

2.5.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

- Incorrectly timed samples for microfilaria or trypanosomes
- Poor storage of reagents or using the reagents after expiry date

2.5.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

2.5.17 Supporting Documents Sample collection manual

2.5.18 References

- Practical Laboratory Manual-Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema
- Standard Operating Procedure Essential Laboratory Tests {AMREF-2008 } EXT 120

2.6. PROCEDURE FOR EXAMINATION OF SKIN FOR MICROFILARIAE

2.6.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for examination of Skin snips to diagnose onchocerciasis caused by a filarial worm known as *Onchocerca volvulus.* The disease is also known as river blindness because invasion of the eye can lead to loss of vision.

2.6.2 Scope

This procedure applies to health laboratory practitioners in the laboratory settings.

2.6.3 Responsibility

Section heads are responsible for ensuring that only qualified and competent health laboratory practitioners carry out this procedure.

2.6.4 Principle

Giemsa stain is a Romanowsky stain contains methylene blue which is basic stain and eosin is acidic stain, the parasites has DNA in the nucleus which is basic in nature and RNA in the cytoplasm is acidic in nature, during staining the reactions takes place whereby acidic part of a parasite will pick-up basic part of the stain and the basic part of the parasite will pick-up the acid part of the stain, that's why the nucleus of the parasite will show red color and the cytoplasm will stain bluish.

2.6.5 Sample Requirements

Skin snips collected using a sterile needle and razor blade (or scalpel) should be taken from those sites such as in the buttocks, iliac crests or calves of the legs. *Important:* A bloodless skin snip is required.

2.6.6 Equipment

Microscope, PH meter, Forceps

2.6.7 Materials

10 % Giemsa stain working solution, Cover slips, Glass slide, Centrifuge tubes, Grease pencil, Filter paper, Marker pen or ball point pen, Alcohol swab, Gloves, Pasteur pipette, Filter paper or paper towel and EDTA tubes

2.6.8 Storage and stability

The Giemsa stock stain should be stored in a dark bottle and take precautions to avoid moisture entering the stain.

2.6.9 Safety

i. All sampless must be considered as potentially infectious and must be handled and examined with care.
ii. All personal protective equipments (PPE) should be worn when performing procedure
iii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
iv. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

2.6.10 Calibration

Calibration of auxiliary equipment should be done as per schedule and that all calibration records including certificates should be available.

2.6.11 Quality Control

Positive and negative control samples are processed once a day in the morning before patient samples.

2.6.12 Procedural steps

i. Immerse the skin snip in a conical centrifuge tube containing about 1 ml of fresh physiological saline and leave it at room temperature for up to 4 hours.
ii. Using forceps, remove the skin snip, place it on a slide, and cover with a cover glass.
iii. Centrifuge the contents of the tube at medium to high speed, i.e. RCF 500–1000, for 5 minutes. Remove and discard the supernatant fluid. Transfer the entire sediment to a slide.
iv. Examine both the skin snip and sediment microscopically for microfilariae using the 10× objective with the condenser iris *closed sufficiently* to give good contrast.
v. If no microfilariae are seen, immerse the skin snip in a further 1 ml of saline and reincubate.
vi. If after overnight incubation no microfilariae are seen, report the preparation as ‘Negative’.

vii. If microfilariae are present, proceed to step v below:

viii. Remove the cover glass and allow the preparation to dry completely.

ix. Fix the dried preparation with absolute methanol or ethanol for 2–3 minutes.

x. Stain and Examine the preparation as explained under Giemsa staining procedure.

2.6.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

2.6.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Report the number of microfilariae as scanty, few, moderate numbers, or many. If after overnight incubation no microfilariae are seen, report the preparation as 'Negative'.

2.6.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Poor storage of reagents or using the reagents after expiry date may cause false results.

2.6.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification of this procedure

2.6.17 Supporting Documents Not Applicable

2.6.18 References

- Practical Laboratory Manual-Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema
- Standard Operating Procedure Essential Laboratory Tests {AMREF-2008 } EXT 120

2.7. PROCEDURE FOR PERFORMING OCCULT BLOOD

2.7.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing occult blood test using HemaScreen slide.

2.7.2 Scope

This procedure applies to the Parasitological department for detection of faecal occult blood.

2.7.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent health laboratory practitioners carry out this procedure.

2.7.4 Principle

Hema-screen is composed of guaiac impregnated paper enclosed in a cardboard frame which permits sample application to one side, and interpretation on the reverse side. The process involves placing two samples, collected from three successive evacuations, onto guaiac paper.

Haema-screen is based on the oxidation of phenolic compounds present in the guaiaconic acid to quinones results in the production of blue colour. Because of its similarity to the prosthetic group of peroxidise, the hematin portin of the haemoglobin molecule can function in a pseudoenzymatic manner, catalysing the oxidation of guaiac.

When fecal sample containing occult blood is applied to the test paper, contact is made between hemoglubin and guaiac. A pseudoperoxidase reaction will occur upon addition of the developer solution, with a blue chromagen formed proportionally to the concentration of haemoglobins.

The colour reaction will occur after thirty seconds.

Haemoglobin + Developer

$Hb + H_2O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O + O_2$ Oxidation of Guaiac

$$O_2 + Guaiac \rightarrow Oxidised\ Guaiac$$

(colourless) (blue)

The hema- screen kits include on-slide monitors which provide a quality control system for each test.

2.7.5 Sample Requirements

Fresh stool sample collected by patient from toilet bowl

2.7.6 Equipment Microscope

2.7.7 Materials

Hema-screen slide with control, Hema-screen developer, Sample applicator

2.7.8 Storage And Stability

The slide should be stored at room temperature (15-30℃), do not use after expiration date. The slide should be protected from heat, humidity, fluorescent light, U.V. radiation, excessive air flow or volatile chemicals (e.g. iodine or bleach). Do not refrigerate or freeze.

2.7.9 Safety

Universal safety precautions should be taken into considerations and that all biological substances and reagents should be treated as potentially infectious.

2.7.10 Calibration Not Applicable

2.7.11 Quality Control

Quality controls are provided on each hema-screen slide. This specially treated area provides assurance that the guaiac-impregnated paper and developer are reacting according to product specification.

2.7.12 Procedure Steps

Procedure for stool occult blood test

i. Fill the information on the front flap of the Hema-Screen slide.
ii. Open the front flap. iii. Using the applicator sticks provided, collect a small amount of stool from the container on one end of the applicator sticks. Apply very thin smear in box 1.
iii. Reuse applicator to obtain a second sample from a different part of the stool sample. Apply a very thin smear inside box 2 discard the stick and stool container in highly infectious waste container.
iv. Allow sample to air dry, and then close the cover. vi. Open perforated window on the back of the slide
v. Apply 2 drops of developer to the back side of boxes 1 and 2
vi. Read results after 30 seconds and within 2 minutes.
vii. Record results; any trace of blue, within or on the outer rim of the sample, is positive for occult blood.

viii. Place one or two drops of developer between the positive and negative IQC boxes.
ix. Read the results after 30 seconds and within 2 minutes.
x. The positive control should turn to blue but the negative control should not have any trace of blue.

2.7.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

2.7.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results Report **positive** for any blue trace in the sample area Report **negative** if there is no any blue trace in the sample area

2.7.15 Limitations of the procedure and Sources of error

i. Medication such as aspirin and other inflammatory drugs. ii. Rectal medicines, tonics or vitamin C preparation which contain vitamin C (ascorbic acid) in excess of 250mg per day.
ii. Bleeding haemorrhoids or open cuts on hands.
iii. Menstruation
iv. Improper sample collection
v. Other disease of gastrointestinal track
vi. Poor storage of reagents or using the reagents after expiry date may cause false results.

2.7.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification of this procedure

2.7.17 Supporting Documents Sample collection manual

2.7.18 References

- Package insert
- Concise Book of Medical Laboratory Technology Methods and Interpretations.

CHAPTER 3: BLOOD TRANSFUSION

3.0 PROCEDURE FOR ABO AND RHESUS BLOOD GROUPING

3.0.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing ABO and Rhesus (D) blood grouping using tube method.

3.0.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Blood Transfusion unit when performing ABO & Rhesus(D) blood group typing for donors and patients.

3.0.3 Responsibility

The head of Blood Transfusion and competent medical laboratory personnel are responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained.

3.0.4 Principle

This method is based on immunophenotyping principle. The known antibodies A&B(antisera) react with unknown antigens on the red cells surface to form agglutination or haemolysis; this is known as **forward or cells grouping.** Also known antigens (A and B) react with unknown antibodies in the patient or donor serum/plasma to form agglutination or haemolysis; this is known as **backward or serum blood grouping.**

The D antigen on the red cells surface reacts which known D antibodies(anti-D) to form agglutination which determines the Rhesus group of an individual, either as Rh (D) **Positive**(agglutination) or Rh (D) Negative (no agglutination).

3.0.5 Sample Requirements

2-3mls of EDTA sample, 2-3mls of clotted sample from plain tube Centrifuge the sample at 3500rpm (RCF) for 5 minutes.

3.0.6 Equipment

Centrifuge, Microscope, Refrigerator, Timers, 37˚C water bath and Thermometer ***3.0.7 Materials***

Reagent	Consumables

Anti –A Anti-B Anti-D (saline, IgM) Incomplete anti-D (IgG) Anti-Human Globulin Serum (AGS) 0.85% Physiological Saline Low ionic strength solution (LISS)	Gloves Laboratory coat Test tubes, Test tube rack, slides Marker pens, Beakers, Pasteur pipettes,

3.0.8 Storage and Stability

- Store serum or plasma at 2^0C -8^0C for 7 days.
- Whole blood is stored at 2^0C - 8^0C for 3 days
- Anti-sera should be kept at 2^0C – 8^0C or as per manufacturer instructions

3.0.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/ IPC guideline

ii. All personnel protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

3.0.10 Calibration

Calibration of auxiliary equipment should be done as per calibration schedule

3.0.11 Quality Controls

Perform Quality Controls once in a week, when new antisera received and when new control cells are prepared.

Controlling of anti-sera

- Commercial anti-sera are quality controlled by reacting them with known cell Suspension of A, B, O, Rh (D) Positive and Rh (D) Negative.
- Arrange 6 tubes labelled A, B, AB, O and D positive and D negative.
- Put one drop of 2-5% cell suspension of A, B, AB, O Rh (D) Positive and O Rh (D)

Negative to the corresponding tubes above

- Add one drop Anti-A, Anti-B, Anti-AB and Anti-D into corresponding tubes.

Controlling of O sensitized cells

- Label two tubes as O sensitized cells and O un sensitised cells
- Put one drop of corresponding of 3-5% cell suspension in the two tubes above.
- In the two tubes, add one drop of AHG each.

Controlling of physiological saline

- Label two tubes as saline and distilled water

- Put one drop of saline and one drop of distilled water to the respective tubes above
- Add one drop of O Rh (D) Positive cells to the two tubes

Common step

- Centrifuge all tubes above at light speed (1000rpm for 1 minute).
- Agglutination or haemolysis indicates positive reactions. • Expected reactions are shown in table below
- Record results on ABO & Rh blood.

Interpretation of IQC results

Commercial Antisera	Cell suspensions						
	A cells	**B cells**	**AB cells**	**Rh D pos cells**	**Rh D Neg Cells**	**O - sensitized cells**	**Un - sensitised cells**
Anti A	+	-	+	-			
Anti B	-	+	+	-			
Anti AB	+	+	+	-			
Anti D					+		
LISS						+++	
AHG						+	-
Saline						+ to ++	
Distilled water						Haemolysis	

Key:

+ Agglutination

- No agglutination

Note: Strength of agglutination is graded from 1+ (separate agglutination) to 3+ (one solid agglutination)

3.0.12 Procedure Steps

Prepare of 2- 5% cell suspension

- Place 2-3 drops of donor red blood cells into a tube
- Fill the tube (3/4) with 0.85% normal saline
- Centrifuge the tube at 3400rpm for 2 to 3 minutes. Decant supernatant fluid. (Repeat 3 times)
- Transfer a drop of packed red cells from the above tubes and add 19 drops of saline to make 2% to 5% donor red cell suspension

Blood grouping procedure

Forward/Cell Grouping

i. For each patient/donor label 3 test tubes as Anti-A tube (A), Anti-B tube **(B)**, and anti-D tube (D). ii. Arrange the labelled test tubes in the test tube rack

iii. Add one volume of anti A into tube A
iv. Add one volume of anti-B into tube B
v. Add one volume of anti-D into tube D
vi. To each of the above tubes add one drop of 2 - 5% cell suspension and mix well.
vii. Centrifuge the three tubes at 1000rpm for one minute
viii. Examine the contents of the tubes for the evidence of agglutination. ix. Read, interpret, and record the test results.

Backward/Serum Grouping

i. For each patient/donor, label 2 test tubes as A cells and B cells.
ii. Add two drops of serum to each tube. iii. Add one drop of A reagent cells into tube labelled A cells,
iv. Add one drop of B reagent cells into tube labelled B cells
v. Mix the contents of the tubes gently
vi. Centrifuge the tubes at 1000 rpm for one minute.
vii. Examine the serum for evidence of haemolysis, gently suspend the cell bottoms and examine them for agglutination macroscopically and microscopically.
viii. Read, interpret and record test results.

Procedure for Weak Rh (D)

i. If the above anti-D reaction is negative, confirm weak Rh (D) as follows: ii. Add two drops of LISS

iii. Incubate at 37˚C for 15 minutes in water bath. In absence of low ionic strength solution (LISS) incubate at room temperature for 30 minutes
iv. Spin for 1000rpm for 1 minute
v. Observe for agglutination macroscopically and microscopically or for haemolysis
vi. If agglutination or haemolysis is observed at this stage, report result as Rh (D) Positive and the procedure ends here.
vii. If there is still no agglutination, proceed as follows: viii. Wash contents of the tube 3 times with physiological saline
ix. Discard supernatant after third wash
x. Add one drop Anti-Human Globulin Serum (AGS)
xi. Spin for 1000rpm for one minute
xii. Observe for agglutination (macroscopically and microscopically) or haemolysis

xiii. If agglutination is observed at this stage, report results as Rh (Du) Positive
xiv. If reaction is still negative, add one drop of O sensitised cells to the tube
xv. Spin for 1000rpm for 1minute
xvi. Observe for agglutination (macroscopically and microscopically) or haemolysis
xvii. Presence of agglutination or haemolysis indicates a valid negative result.
xviii. Absence of agglutination or haemolysis means the test is invalid; therefore, it has to be repeated.

Note: For purposes of transfusion, patients with Rh(Du) Positive should be given rhesus negative blood.

3.0.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not Applicable

3.0.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results Interpretation of results

Patient/Donor Cell Grouping					**Patient/ Donor Serum Grouping**		
Anti-A	Anti-B	Ant-AB	Anti-D	Blood group &Rhesus factor	A-cells	B-cells	Blood group
+	-	+	+	A Rh(D)Pos	-	+	A
-	+	+	+	B Rh(D)Pos	+	-	B
+	+	+	+	AB Rh(D)Pos	-	-	AB
-	-	-	+	O Rh(D)Pos	+	+	O

KEY: - + Means Agglutination

- Means No Agglutination

Reporting of results

Results report should include the ABO Type and Rhesus D reaction results, e.g.

Blood group A Rh (D) Positive, or Blood Group A Rh(D) Negative

3.0.15 Limitations of the Procedure and Source of Error

- Avoid haemolysed samples as this may lead to false negative results.
- Patients who have had recent multiple transfusions may develop alloantibodies that can interfere with antigen – antibody reactions

3.0.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report

3.0.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual, safety manual, and quality manual.

3.0.18 References

i. Technical manual of the American Association of Blood Banks
ii. Mollison P.L., Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine 8th Ed. Oxford. Blackwell Scientific, Practical haematology by Decie iii. Guidance manual on “ABO and Rh blood grouping” (Institute of Biologicals-
India)
iv. Anti-sera insert kit (Anti-A, Anti- B, Anti-AB, Anti- D Monoclonal blood grouping antibodies for tube and slide test) T Tulip diagnostics (P) LTD.

3.1 PROCEDURE FOR ESTIMATION OF HEMOGLOBIN BY USING

COPPER SULPHATE SOLUTION

3.1.1 Purpose

To provide guidance on the procedure of Haemoglobin estimation level to blood donors using the Copper Sulphate solution technique

3.1.2 Scope

This procedure provides guidance on haemoglobin estimation of blood donors using copper sulphate (CUS04) method in NBTS Blood collection teams and its satelites.

3.1.3 Responsibility

Trained qualified and competent certified registered medical personnel and other authorized medical personnel.

3.1.4 Principle

A blood droplet is allowed to fall into copper sulphate solution of a specific gravity 1.053 and the movement of droplet is observed, If the specific gravity is higher than solution, the drop will sink within 15 sec or else it will remain suspended for some time.

3.1.5 Sample Requirements

Capillary Blood

3.1.6 Equipment

Not applicable

3.1.7 Materials

Reagents: 70% Ethyl alcohol, Copper Sulphate solution with specific gravity of 1.053

Consumables: Sterile swabs, Picker, Sharp container, Capillary tubes, Gloves,

Universal bottle, Waste containers and Timer

3.1.8 Preparation of Copper II Sulphate solution

i. Weigh 170 gms of hydrous Copper Sulphate Powder/Crystals
ii. Put into volumetric flask
iii. Dissolve 170gms of hydrous Copper Sulphate Powder/Crystals with 1 litre of distilled water.
iv. Mix well until all Crystals dissolves
v. Label the solution as STOCK SOLUTION with Preparation date, Batch number and expiry date
vi. *NB: Calculate expiry date six months from date of preparation*
vii. Store and keep stock solution at room temperature in a tightly capped brown glass bottle.

3.1.9 Prepare Working Solution

To prepare 1 Litre of *working solution;*

- Dispense 480mls of distilled water using measuring cylinder into a volumetric flask.
- Add 520mls of prepared stock solution using measuring cylinder - Mix thoroughly

3.1.10 Storage and Stability

Copper Sulphate working solution stored at room temperature in brown bottle in three months

3.1.11 Safety

i. Decontaminate working surfaces twice daily, in the morning and afternoon and when needed, all generated records are kept.
ii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
iii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iv. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
v. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
vi. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

3.1.12 Calibration

Not applicable

3.1.13 Quality Control

Reagent : Test specific gravity of copper sulphate solution using Hydrometer

Accept the copper sulphate solution if the specific gravity is 1.053

Reject copper sulphate if specific gravity is not equal to 1.053

Record findings of the copper sulphate inspection and testing report form.

Then select sample with slightly bellow and slightly high with a cut off value of High (12.6 -13.0) g/dl and Low (12.0 – 12.4) g/dl.

Accept the copper sulphate solution, if drop of blood with haemoglobin level less than 12.5 g/dl floats and blood with haemoglobin level higher than 12.5g/dl sinks. Perform corrective action if results are outside an acceptable limits

3.1.14 Procedure Steps

Follow the actions described below step-by-step:

i. Explain the Procedure to the Blood Donor
ii. Welcome and greet the donor, offer a chair to seat
iii. Explain the procedure and reassure the donor.
iv. Select and clean Site
v. Select donors' middle finger or the finger medial to the middle finger
vi. Clean the upper top of right-side area with cotton wool swab soaked in 70% ethyl alcohol in a spiral movement starting at the intended site out ward
vii. Leave it until dried do not blow the site
viii. Remove the lancets cover
ix. Using the index finger and thumb, squeeze and hold the donor's·fingertip at the upper joint tightly and prick
x. Wipe off the first drop of blood once with a dry swab
xi. Draw blood into the Capillary Tube
xii. Gently press the pricked fingertip to draw blood Note; Do not Squeeze the pricked finger because it may introduce tissue fluid, dilute blood and give false low Hemoglobin
xiii. Hold Capillary tube at approximately 60 degrees and let the blood flow into the capillary tube up to not less than 3/4 capacity
xiv. Avoid air entering the capillary tube by ensuring smooth flow and undisrupted flow of blood into the capillary tube
xv. Close the upper tip of capillary tube by placing your finger tip
xvi. Give clean dry swab to donor and instruct them to press finger with thumb till bleeding stops.
xvii. Release a drop of Blood to Copper Sulphate Solution
xviii. Hold capillary tube at least 1 cm above the surface of copper sulphate solution
xix. Release your finger tip to allow one drop of blood freely into labeled container of fresh daily prepared and quality control copper sulphate solution.

3.1.15 Biological Reference Intervals

Above or equal 12.5 g/dl

3.1.16 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Accept if HB is greater/equal than 12.5g/dl

Reject if HB is less than 12.5 g/dl

3.1.17 Limitations of The Procedure and Sources of Error

Not applicable

3.1.18 Performance Characteristics

Not applicable

3.1.19 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual, Quality manual, Safety manual

3.1.20 References

AAB technical manual 12th edition, AfSBTC 4th Edition.

3.2 PROCEDURE FOR COMPATIBILITY TESTING

3.2.1 . Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing compatibility testing, which is used to select blood and blood components that will not cause harm to the recipient (patient)

3.2.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Blood Transfusion section when performing compatibility testing prior to issue of a unit of blood to recipient.

3.2.3 Responsibility

The head of Blood Transfusion and competent medical laboratory personnel are responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained.

3.2.4 Principle

This method is based on immunophenotyping principle. The known red cell antigens from donor are mixed with unknown antibodies from the recipient (patient) to detect if there is any incompatibility caused by ABO, Rhesus and/or other blood groups antibodies.

3.2.5 Sample Requirements

- Patient/ recipient serum from a clotted blood sample in plain tube
- Donor cells from a segment tubing of the blood unit

3.2.6 Equipment

Centrifuge, Water bath, timer, refrigerator

3.2.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Incomplete anti-D (IgG) Anti-Human Globulin Serum (AGS) Sensitized cell	Test tubes, Test tube rack, grease pencil, Beakers, Physiological Saline, Pasteur pipettes

3.2.8 Storage and Stability

Venous blood must be used within 3 hours at room temperature then after should be refrigerated at 2-8˚C. Blood Donor units should be stored at 1-6˚C

3.2.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iv. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

3.2.10 Calibration

Calibration should be done as per schedule.

3.2.11 Quality control

Quality Controls for Antihuman globulin should be done on a daily basis before performing patient samples..Internal quality control should be prepared from patient samples or known organisation. ***3.2.12 Procedure Steps***

Immediate Spin Saline Technique

i. Select a unit of blood from the blood bank storage with the same group as the recipient. If there is no unit with the same blood group as the recipient, blood group O packed red cells can be used as universal donor. Also recipients with AB blood group are considered as universal recipients of packed red cells.

ii. Label a tube for each donor red cell suspension being tested with the patient's serum.

iii. Add two drops of patient's serum or plasma to each tube.

iv. Add one drop of donorcells suspension into appropriate test tubes

v. Rinse the Pasteur pipette 5 times during transferring of cells and serum to avoid contamination

vi. Mix the contents of the tube(s) and centrifuge at 1000rpm for 60 seconds.
vii. Gently re-suspend the cell buttons and observe for haemolysis or agglutination.
viii. Read, interpret, and record test results. ix. If compatible, proceed with Indirect Antiglobulin Technique

Interpretation and reporting:

Agglutination or hemolysis means a positive (incompatible) test results

A smooth suspension of red cells after resuspension of the red cells button means negative results and indicates a compatible immediate spin cross match.

Note: In emergency cases where the blood unit is required immediately, perform Immediate Spin Saline Technique. Issue the blood unit if it is compatible then proceed with Indirect Antiglobulin test. If there is any incompatibility, immediately call the ward to stop the transfusion and re-call the blood unit.

3.2.13 Biological References Intervals

Not applicable

3.2.14 Reporting and Interpretation of results

Interpretation of results

Results should be reported in such a way that will indicate the recipient's blood group and the donor's blood unit number to which the donor's bloods is compatible or not compatible. **Reporting of results**

Report as compatible when there is no agglutination or incompatible when there is no agglutination.

3.2.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Hemolysis samples may lead to false negative results.

Patients who have had recent multiple transfusions may develop allo-antibodies that can interfere with antigen – antibody reactions

3.2.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report.

3.2.17 Supporting Documents

Quality manual, sample collection manual and safety manual

3.2.18 References

Pam S. Helekar, D.P. Blackall et.al. American Association of Blood Bank 15 Edition, 1985. (method 3.1) and (method 3.2.1)

3.3 PROCEDURE FOR ABO BLOOD GROUPING DISCREPANCIES

3.3.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to provide instructions for performing Initial investigation of ABO grouping discrepancies.

3.3.2 Scope

This procedure will be used for investigation of ABO grouping discrepancies in Blood transfusion unit. ***3.3.3 Responsibility***

Qualified and competent Medical Laboratory personnel are responsible for doing this test procedure. The head of section blood transfusion is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure.

3.3.4 Principle

To be considered valid, the results of red cell grouping and serum grouping should agree. This method describes a general approach to the investigation of an ABO grouping discrepancy caused by either missing reactions or unexpected positive reactions

3.3.5 Sample Requirements

2-3mls blood in EDTA tube.

2-3mls clotted blood sample in plain tube

Centrifuge the sample according to anti-sera manufacturer instruction.

3.3.6 Equipment

Centrifuge machine, Microscope, Timer and Refrigerator

3.3.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Standard anti-sera as controls. Standard ABO cells as controls Anti-A, Anti-B and Anti-AB sera Group A, B and O pooled cells 0.85% Or 0.9% Saline solution	Test tubes Pasteur pipette Waste Disposal box Test tube racks Beakers Microscope Slide

3.3.8 Storage and Stability

Reagents are stored according to manufacturer instruction.

Samples are stored at 2-8 ˚C for the specified period in sample retention schedule.

3.3.9 Safety

i. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
ii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iii. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice. iv. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

3.3.10 Calibration

Calibration of centrifuge and thermometers should be done.

3.3.11 Quality Control

Performance of quality control for the reagents and source of Quality control materials will follow in ABO blood grouping procedure.

3.3.12 Procedure

i. Repeat ABO typing on the same sample. If initial tests were performed on red cells suspended in serum or plasma, testing should be repeated after washing red cells several times with saline.
ii. Test a new sample. A new sample for testing should be requested when the ABO discrepancy reflects a disagreement between the current test results and a previous test result on record or when sample contamination is suspected.
iii. Review the patient's medical history for medical conditions that could alter or interfere with ABO typing.
iv. Review the results of plasma testing against autologous red cells and group O red cells in the antibody screen to evaluate potential interference by autoantibodies or alloantibodies. A direct antiglobulin test may be helpful.

3.3.13 Biological reference interval

Not applicable

3.3.14 Reporting and interpretation of results Report POSITIVE and NEGATIVE.

3.3.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

According to manufacturer instructions and sample collection manual.

3.3.16 Performance Characteristics

This will follow the method verification report.

3.3.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual, quality manual and safety manual.

3.3.18 References

i. Cooling L. ABO, H, and Lewis blood groups and structurally related antigens. In: Fung M, Grossman BJ, Hillyer CD, Westhoff CM, eds. Technical manual.
18th edition. Bethesda, MD: AABB, 2014:291-315.

3.4 PROCEDURE FOR DIRECT ANTIGLOBLIN (COOMBS) TEST

3.4.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing direct coombs test within the laboratory at blood transfusion section.

3.4.2 Scope

This procedure is used in blood transfusion unit demonstrate in-vivo coating of red cells with antibodies. The DAT is used in investigating autoimmune haemolytic anemia, drug-induced hemolysis, hemolytic disease of newborn, and alloimmune reactions to recently transfused red cell

3.4.3 Responsibility

The head of Blood Transfusion and compitent medical laboratory personel are responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained.

3.4.4 Principle

All antibody molecules are globulins. anti-IgG combine mainly with FC portion of the sensitizing antibody molecules. the two fab sites of the AHG molecule form a bridge between adjacent antibody-coated cells to produce visible agglutination. cells that have no globulin attached will not be agglutinated. AHG will react with human antibodies and complement molecules that are bound to red cells or are present, free, in serum.

Unbound globulins may react with AHG, causing false-negative antiglobulin test. Unless the red cells are washed to remove unbound proteins before addition of AHG serum, the unbound globulins may neutralize AHG and cause a false-negative result.

3.4.5 Sample Requirement

2- 3 ml of whole blood in EDTA tube

3.4.6 Equipment

Centrifuge, refrigerator and microscope.

Maintenance

Centrifuge, refrigerator and microscope. Maintenance should be performed timely.

3.4.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Anti-human globulin serum (AHG'S) sensitized cells 0.9% normal saline	Test tubes, test tube rack, grease pencil, beakers, normal saline, pasteur pipettes, microscope slides and wash bottle Distilled water, Volumetric flask/Beaker Spatula, Maker pen, Gloves Plain paper/weighing paper

3.4.8 Storage and Stability

Venous blood must be used within 3 hours at room temperature then after should be refrigerated at 2-8°C. Blood Donor units should be stored at 1-6°C. Reagents should be stored at 2-8°C and sensitized cell should be stored at 2-8°C for 2weeks.

3.4.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iv. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
v. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

3.4.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of thermometer centrifuge, timer as per schedule.

3.4.11 Quality Control

Quality control for Antihuman globulin should be performed daily. Follow the following steps to run quality control of Antihuman globulin.

i. Dispense 100µl of Anti human globulin sera (AGS)
ii. Add 100µl of prepared sensitized cells into clean tube
iii. Mix the contents of the tube according to manufacturer instructions.
iv. Spin at 1000 RCF for 1 minute and macroscopically observe for agglutination
v. Accept for use if there is agglutination.
vi. Repeat the procedure and investigate the cause if no agglutination is observed.
vii. Record all processes in record form.
viii. The sensitized cells can be kept for 2-4 weeks at 1ºC -6ºC if suspended in Alservers solution, but appropriate controls must be used to ensure their quality is not compromised.

3.4.12 Procedure

Preparation of cells for the test

i. Take 5-7 drops of blood under test in a test tube
ii. Wash the cell 3-4 times with normal saline to remove nonspecific plasma protein
iii. By turning the test tubes upside down three to four times. iv. Use wash bottle instead of beaker to dispense normal saline during washing steps and decant the supernatant after each wash to avoid contamination
v. Prepare 3-5% suspension of washed cells in normal saline by taking 3 drops of washed cells into a test tube and adding 97 drops of fresh normal saline for preparing 3%, and 5 drops of washed cells into 95 drops of fresh normal saline for preparing 5%, rinse the pasteur pipette 5 times during preparation and transferring of cells to avoid contamination

Preparation of Normal Saline

i. By using weighing scale and weighing paper measure 8.5 grams of Sodium chloride crystals
ii. By using measuring cylinder measure 500mls of distilled water
iii. Add measured 8.5grams of NaCl crystal in measuring cylinder containing 500mls of distilled water iv. Swirl measuring cylinder gently to mix the content
v. When NaCl dissolve completely then add distilled water and make the final volume 1 liter.
vi. Insert an air tightly stopper into the mouth of volumetric flask/measuring cylinder and shake gently to make the solution homogenous.
vii. Transfer your solution into prepared container special for physiological saline and label it properly (name of solution, preparation date expired date, prepared by and storage temperature)

NOTE: Prepare fresh Physiological saline everyday

3.4.13 Preparation of O Sensitized Red Cells

i. Select 2-3 units of group O positive cells for preparation of sensitized cells, take 1 ml from each unit.
ii. Label tube “sensitized cells”.
iii. Transfer 1 ml of group O blood cells to the labeled tube.
iv. Fill ¾ of the labeled tube with normal saline or phosphate- buffered saline (PBS) or alservers solution
v. Fill ¾ of the second tube with normal saline for balancing. vi. Set the centrifuge at 3000rpm

vii. Centrifuge for 5 minutes to pellet the cells. viii. Repeat three times while decanting the supernatant. ix. Add equal volumes of incomplete anti D and pooled O cells and mix

x. Incubate at 37˚C for 30 minutes

xi. Wash the cells 3× in saline

xii. Discard the final supernatant fluid

xiii. Dispense 9.7 parts of normal saline or phosphate- buffered saline (PBS) or Alserver's solution into clean tube labeled sensitized cells.

xiv. Transfer 0.3 parts of the washed sensitized red cells to the above tube labeled sensitized cells.

xv. Cap or cover the tube with parafilm.

xvi. Homogenize sensitized cells with normal saline or phosphate- buffered saline by gently inverting the tube ten times.

Test procedure.

i. Add one drop of anti-human globulin serum (AHG) into a tube labeled with sample

ii. ID number. iii. Add one drop of the prepared 5% cell suspension into the tube above.

iv. Mix well centrifuge the tube at 1000rpm for 1 minutes

v. Gently re-suspend the cell button and examine macroscopically for agglutination or hemolysis. vi. Examine the test cells microscopically to confirm the above results

vii. If no agglutination or hemolysis is observed, add one drop of o sensitized cells as a positive control

viii. Centrifuge the tube at 1000rpm for 1 minutes

ix. Examine the contents of the tubes macroscopically as well as microscopically for the evidence of agglutination

x. Presence of agglutination or hemolysis indicates a valid positive test.

3.4.14 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

3.4.15 Reporting and Interpretation of Results

Report results as "direct coombs test – positive or negative". Presence of agglutination or hemolysis indicate positive results. Absence of agglutination or hemolysis indicate Negative results.

3.4.16 Limitations of the procedure and sources of error

i. Hemolysis samples may lead to false negative results.

ii. Patients who have had recent multiple transfusions may develop alloantibodies that can interfere with antigen – antibody reactions ***3.4.17 Performance Characteristics*** Refer to method verification.

3.4.18 Supporting Documents

Quality manual, sample collection manual, safety manual and result management procedure. ***3.4.19 References***

Pam S. helekar, D.P. blackall et.al. American association of blood bank 15 edition, 1985.

Coomb's reagent package insert

3.5 PROCEDURE FOR INDIRECT ANTIGLOBULIN (COOMBS) TEST

3.5.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing In-direct Antiglobulin Test (Indirect Coombs test).

3.5.2 Scope

Procedure is used in Blood Transfusion unit normally to test for IgG Rhesus antibodies that might have been produced by a Rhesus negative mother who has been immunized by a Rhesus positive child. The formed antibodies may cause hemolytic disease of new born

3.5.3 Responsibility

The head of Blood Transfusion and competent medical laboratory personnel are responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained.

3.5.4 Principle

When patient serum suspected to have immune antibodies are mixed with known O Positive washed red blood cells (antigen) and incubated at 37˚C, washed then tested with AHG and the results shows agglutination.

3.5.5 Sample Requirements

2 to 5 ml of serum from clotted blood in plain tube, 3% sensitized red cells, 2-5 mls of pooled O cells ***3.5.6 Equipment***

Centrifuge, Refrigerator, 37˚C water bath

3.5.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Anti-Human Globulin Serum (AGS) sensitized cells 0.9% physiological saline	Test tubes, Test tube rack, grease pencil, Beakers, Physiological Saline, Pasteur pipettes

3.5.8 Storage and Stability

Venous blood must be used within 3 hours at room temperature then after should be refrigerated at 2-8°C. Blood Donor units should be stored at 1-6°C. Reagents like Antihuman globulin should be stored at 2-8°C and sensitized cell should be stored at 2-8°C for 2weeks.

3.5.9 Safety controls

i. Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded three times in 24 hours, 8 hours' interval each.

ii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

iii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

iv. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

v. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice. vi. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

3.5.10 Calibration

Calibration of equipment per should be done as per schedule.

3.5.11 Quality Control

i. Quality control for Antihuman globulin should be performed daily.

ii. Quality Control of Antihuman globulin. iii. Dispense 100µl of Anti human globulin sera (AGS)

iv. Add 100µl of prepared sensitized cells into clean tube

v. Mix the contents of the tube according to manufacturer instructions. vi. Spin at 1000 RCF for 1 minute and macroscopically observe for agglutination

vii. Accept for use if there is agglutination.

viii. Repeat the procedure and investigate the cause if no agglutination is observed.

ix. Record all processes in record form.

x. The sensitized cells can be kept for 2-4 weeks at 1ºC -6ºC if suspended in Alservers solution, but appropriate controls must be used to ensure their quality is not compromised.

3.5.12 Procedure Steps

i. Pool O positive cells from at least 5 or more donors into one tube. ii. Wash the pooled O positive cells three to four times using physiological saline to remove adsorbed plasma proteins. iii. Prepare 3-5% cell suspension of O cells in normal saline.

iv. Put two drops of serum /plasma into labeled tube marked “Test”

v. Add two drops of 5% cells suspension in that labeled tube marked “Test” or with patient ID numbers if there is more than one sample.

vi. Rinse the Pasteur pipette 5 times during preparation and transferring of cells to avoid contamination

vii. Wash patient cells and prepare 3-5% cell suspension in normal saline. viii. Add two drop of patient cells in a tube labeled as Auto control. ix. Add two drops of patient serum to tubes Labeled auto control.

x. Incubate the tubes at 37˚C for 60 minutes. However, if there is Low Ionic Strength Solution (LISS) add two drops to each of the tubes above and incubate for 15minutes.

xi. Wash both tube 4-5 times using normal saline

xii. Use wash bottle instead of beaker to dispense normal saline during washing steps and decant the supernatant after each wash to avoid contamination

xiii. After the last wash, decant the supernatant

xiv. Add one drop of Anti Human Globulin serum (AHG)

xv. Mix well

xvi. Centrifuge the tube at 1000rpm for 60seconds

xvii. Gently re-suspend the cell button and examine macroscopically for agglutination or hemolysis.

xviii. Examine the test cells microscopically to confirm the above results

xix. If no agglutination or hemolysis is observed, add one drop of O sensitized cells as a positive control

xx. Centrifuge the tube at 1000rpm for 1 seconds

xxi. Examine the contents of the tubes macroscopically as well as microscopically for the evidence of agglutination

xxii. Presence of agglutination or hemolysis indicates a valid negative test.

3.5.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

3.5.14 Reporting and Interpretation of Results

Result interpretation

Agglutination or hemolysis means Positive; Absence of agglutination or hemolysis means Negative.

Reporting results

Report as “In-direct Coombs test – Positive or Negative”.

3.5.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

i. Hemolysis samples as this may lead to false negative results.
ii. Patients who have had recent multiple transfusions may develop alloantibodies that can interfere with antigen – antibody reactions ***3.5.16 Performance Characteristics*** Refer to method verification.

3.5.17 Supporting Documents

Quality manual, sample collection manual, safety manual and result management.

3.5.18 References

- Pam S. Helekar, D.P. Blackall et.al. American Association of Blood Bank 15 Edition, 1985.
- Anti-Human Serum (Polyspecific) reagent insert, Span Diagnostic Ltd, 0712 ver

CHAPTER 4: HAEMATOLOGY

4.1 PROCEDURE FOR SICKLING SCREENING TEST

4.1.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to provide instruction for performing a screening test to determine abnormal type of Haemoglobin called Haemoglobin S in blood.

4.1.2 Scope

This procedure is used by all trained laboratory staff while performing sickling test.in the Laboratory

4.1.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent Medical Laboratory Scientist, Technologist and Technician are responsible for doing this test procedure.

Section heads are responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure

4.1.4 Principle

When a drop of blood is sealed between a cover slip and a slide, the decline in oxygen tension due to oxidative processes in the blood cells leads to sickling. In this method added with blood drop chemical reducing agents such as sodium met bisulphite. This rapidly reduces oxyhemoglobin to reduced haemoglobin, and then this will be accelerating sickling.

4.1.5 Sample Requirements

3 - 4 ml of venous whole blood collected in EDTA tube (purple top vacuum). Sample must be free from haemolysis, lipemia and icterus.

4.1.6 Equipment

Light Microscope, and Hot plate

4.1.7 Materials

Freshly prepared 2% Sodium Metabisulphite (Diluting 0.2gm in 10ml of distilled water). Vaseline/paraffin wax, Pipette, Cover glass, Glass slide and Applicator stick

4.1.8 Storage and Stability

Processed whole blood is stable at 2^{o}C to 8^{o}C for 3 days.

Reagents are freshly prepared and stored at room temperature on daily basis. Do not use reagents that is more than 24 - hour post preparation.

4.1.9 Safety

Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.1.10 Calibration

Not Applicable

4.1.11 Quality Control

Known positive control samples and negative control samples should be tested the same way as patient sample.

4.1.12 Procedural Steps

i. Place one drop of the blood to be tested in a glass slide. ii. Add 1- 2 drops of freshly prepared 2% sodium met bisulphite to the drop of blood and mix well with an applicator stick.

iii. Place a cover glass on top of the sample and press down lightly on it to remove any air bubbles and to form a thin layer of the mixture. Wipe of the excess sample.

iv. Carefully rim the cover glass with molten paraffin wax or Vaseline, completely sealing the mixture under the cover slip.

v. Incubate for 24 hours at room temperature, or for one hour at 37^0C. vi. Examine the prepared glass slide for the present of sickle cells after one hour using 40 X objective.

vii. If there is negative findings within one hour, allow the prepared slide to stand at room temperature for 24 hours, and examined under microscopy

4.1.13 Biological Reference Interval Not applicable.

4.1.14 Interpretation and Reporting Of Results

- Report **Positive** when the presence RBCs appear as moon shaped or shaped like a “C” showing they are sickle cells.
- Report **Negative** when the presence RBCs appear round Normal looking red cells
- The results should be interpreted along with other clinical features. Further tests might be necessary to confirm the disease condition.

4.1.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Haemolysed samples. Iron deficiency or blood transfusions within the past 3 months can cause a false negative result

4.1.16 Performance Characteristics

Refers to method verification report

4.1.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

4.1.18 References

Monica Cheesbrough Handwrite

4.2 PROCEDURE FOR URIT-12 HEMOGLOBIN METER

4.2.1 Purpose

This procedure is used to describe step by step on how to operate the URIT-12 Haemoglobin Meter using human whole blood sample in the laboratory.

4.2.2 Scope

This procedure is applied in testing hemoglobin parameter using human whole blood sample in the haematology department/section in the laboratory

4.2.3 Responsibility

A trained and competent laboratory scientist, laboratory technologists and assistant laboratory technologists are responsible for performing this procedure.

The head of section or assigned personnel will be responsible for ensuring that this procedure is effectively implemented.

4.2.4 Principle

The URIT-12 Hemoglobin Meter utilizes optical reflectance for determination of the total hemoglobin. A drop of whole blood is applied to the test spot on the strip, blood immediately disperses within the membrane contacting the reagent, then reaction product could absorb spectrum in the range of 500nm – 600nm. The meter's optical detector automatically measures the change in membrane reflectance. The intensity of reflectance is inversely proportional to the hemoglobin concentration. The meter calculates and displays the total hemoglobin concentration in gram/decilitre (g/dL) in 12 seconds based on mathematical conversion.

4.2.5 Sample Requirements

Fresh capillary or EDTA-anticoagulated venous whole blood

4.2.6 Equipment

URIT-12 Hemoglobin Meter

4.2.7 Materials

The materials required in this procedure are Clean gloves, Laboratory coats,

Micropipettes, Cuvetes,Sharp container, Pricker and Alcohol swab

4.2.8 Storage and Stability

Anticoagulated blood is stable up to 72 hours at 2-8 ◦c

4.2.9 Safety

- Personnel Protective Equipment must be worn at all times
- All samples must be treated as potentially infectious.
- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guidline

4.2.10 Calibration

Not Applicable

4.2.11 Quality Control

Use Hemoglobin HQ-A Control Solution or known higher and low concentration made in-houseto run on weekly basis to determine the accuracy of the patient results.

4.2.12 Procedural Steps

i. Massage the patient's middle or ring finger from knuckle up to the tip to stimulate blood flow

ii. Insert the test strip into the strip holder with the notched end in first and the hole facing up. The notched end on the top of strip should no longer be visible when test strip is inserted correctly and fully

iii. Perform finger prick. Avoid "Milking" Apply light pressure to obtain one drop of blood.

iv. Take 13-15µl of whole blood with capillary tube or transfer pipette

v. Rapidly drip the blood into the sample spot on the strip when the meter shows blood symbol and ensure the test strip is covered by blood sample completely. vi. During the test do not disturb or move the meter or strip, even press any key of meter

vii. The test results will be displayed in less than 30 seconds

viii. Record the test results displayed on the machine. ix. Remove the test strip and immediately dispose off into highly infectious waste container.

4.2.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Infant 14.0 - 22.0g/dl, Children 11.1 - 14.1g/dl, Adult male 13.0 -17.0g/dl, Adult female 12.0-15.0g/dl

4.2.14 Interpretation and Reporting Of The Results

Interpretation of results

Interpretation of the results is based on the biological reference intervals.

Reporting of results

The obtained results will be reported in g/dl.

Critical results: HB ≤ (5.07) g/dl is considered as critical and communicate with clinician

4.2.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Only whole blood or EDTA anticoagulated blood should be used.

4.2.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer into method verification report

4.2.17 References

URIT – 12 Hemoglobin meter Operation Manual

4.3 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF HAEMOGLOBIN LEVEL USING HEMOCHROMAX PLUS

4.3.1 Purpose

The procedure provides instructions to laboratory staff on operation of Hemochroma Plus Machine.

4.3.2 Scope

This procedure is applicable when performing quantification of Haemoglobin (Hb) concentration in Hospital Laboratory.

4.3.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent Medical Laboratory Scientist, Technologist and Technician are responsible for doing this test procedure. Section heads are responsible for ensuring the effective implementation of this procedure.

4.3.4 Principle

The hemochroma PLUS analyser utilizes a dual wavelength LED light sources by which the haemoglobin absorbance is detected and converted into an electrical signal.

The signal is direct proportional to the amount of haemoglobin present in the blood sample.

4.3.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood, capillary or venous ant coagulated collected blood into EDTA tube.

4.3.6 Equipment

Hemochroma PLUS machine

4.3.7 Materials

Hemochromax Plus Micro calibrator cuvette, Calibrator ID chip cuvettes, , Gauze, 70% methylated spirit and Blood lancet or prickers

4.3.8 Storage and Stability

Anticoagulated blood is stable up to 3 days at 2-8 ◦c

4.3.9 Safety.

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
- All personnel must be worn protective equipment (PPE) when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.3.10 Calibration

It should be done when the machine is not working properly or when provides a doubt result.

4.3.11 Quality Control

Use commercial IQC materials or known higher and low concentration made inhouse to run on daily basis before performing the patient sample

4.3.12 Procedure

i. Establish good relationship with the patient
ii. Make sure the patient is sitting comfortably
iii. Lightly massage to stimulate circulation. Only use the middle or ring finger. The patient should not wear the ring on that finger iv. Pres lightly and draw finger-prick blood into a micro cuvette by bringing the cuvette in contact with the blood drop on the fingertip and puncture the side to a depth of cuvette.
v. Remove any excessive blood from the outside of the cuvette. vi. Insert the cuvette containing blood sample to the Hb machine
vii. Wait until displaying of the test results and record the findings into the system and register book

viii. Pull the cuvette holder out to its loading position and discard the used microcuvette in sharp box

4.3.13 Biological Reference Interval

Infant 14.0 - 22.0g/dl, Children 11.1 - 14.1g/dl, Adult male 13.0 -17.0g/dl, Adult female 12.0-15.0g/dl

4.3.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

Interpretation of the results is based on the biological reference intervals.

Reporting of results

The obtained results will be reported in g/dl.

Critical results: HB ≤ (5.07) g/dl is considered as critical and communicate with clinician

4.3.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

i. Only whole blood should be used
ii. Air bubbles in the optical eye caused by inadequate filling of the cuvettes may lead into false results

4.3.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report

4.3.17 Supporting Documents

Sample Collection Manual, Safety Manual,

4.3.18 References

Monica Cheesbrough. District laboratory practice in tropical countries, Part 2. 2000.

Hemochromax PLUS package insert

Hemochromax PLUS user manual

4.4 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF HAEMOGLOBIN LEVEL USING HEMOCUE 201+ MACHINE

4.4.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for the performance of Haemoglobin Estimation using Hemocue 201+ machine.

4.4.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all competent laboratory staffs during determination of haemoglobin level by using Hemocue 201+ machine.

4.4.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners in the laboratory are responsible for implementation of this procedure.

4.4.4 Principle

The reaction in the microcuvette is a modified azidemethemoglobin reaction. The erythrocytes are haemolysis to release the haemoglobin. The haemoglobin is converted to methoglobin and the combined with azide to form azide methoglobin. The measurement takes place in the analyser in which the transmittance is measured the absorbance and haemoglobin level is calculated. The absorbance is directly proportional the haemoglobin concentration

4.4.5 Sample Requirements

Capillary whole blood sample or Anti-Coagulated Whole blood (collected in EDTA anticoagulant)

4.4.6 Equipment

Hemocue 201+ machine

4.4.7 Materials

Hemocue Hb 201+ microcuvette, Lancet/Pricker for capillary sample, Pipette or any other transfer device for venous sample or control materials

4.4.8 Storage and Stability

Ant-Coagulated whole blood is stable up to 4 hours at room temperature and up to 24 hours at 4°C– 8°C.

4.4.9 Safety

- Personnel Protective Equipment must be worn at all times
- All samples must be treated as potentially infectious.

4.4.10 Calibration

Not Applicable

4.4.11 Quality Control

The Hemocue Hb 201+ has an electronic self-test daily IQC or the use of known higher and low concentration made in-house can also be applied.

4.4.12 Procedural Steps

i. Establish good relationship with the patient
ii. Make sure the patient is sitting comfortably
iii. Lightly massage to stimulate circulation. Only use the middle or ring finger.
The patient should not wear the ring on that finger iv. Pres lightly on the fingertip and puncture the side to a depth of cuvette.

v. Remove any excessive blood from the outside of the cuvette. vi. Insert the cuvette containing blood sample to the Hb machine

vii. Wait until displaying of the test results and record the findings into the system and register book
viii. Pull the cuvette holder out to its loading position and discard the used microcuvette in sharp box

4.4.13 Biological reference Intervals

Infant 17.0-22.0g/dl, Children 11.0-13.0g/dl, Adult male 13.0 -17.0g/dl, Adult female 12.0-15.0g/dl

4.4.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

Interpretation of the results is based on the biological reference intervals.

Reporting of results

The obtained results will be reported in g/dl.

Critical results: HB ≤ (5.07) g/dl is considered as critical and communicate with clinician

4.4.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- Only whole blood should be used
- Air bubbles in the optical eye caused by inadequate filling of the cuvettes
- Delayement in transfer of filled cuvettes with blood into HB machine

4.4.16 Performance Characteristics

Refers into method verification report

4.4.17 Supporting Documents

Waste Management Procedure /IPC guideline Quality Control Result Procedure

4.4.18 References:

Monica Cheesbrough. District laboratory practice in tropical countries, Part 2. 2000.
Hemocue Hb 201+ cuvette kits insert and use manual.

4.5 PROCEDURE FOR CD 4 COUNT TEST BY USING BD FACS PRESTO

4.5.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to provide detailed information on how to analyse and detect CD4 T Cell enumeration on blood sample by using BD FACS presto.

4.5.2 Scope

This procedure applicable in haematology to analyse and detect CD4 T Cell by using BD FACS presto.

4.5.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent Medical Laboratory Technician and Technologist are responsible for doing this test procedure. Section heads are responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure.

4.5.4 Principle

The BD FACS Presto™ cartridge the CD4/%CD4/Hb cartridge contains dried fluorochrome-conjugated antibody reagents. When blood reacts with the reagents, the antibodies in the reagent bind to the surface antigens on the BD FACS Presto Cartridge: lymphocytes and monocytes. After the incubation period, the cells are analysed on the BD FACS Presto Near-Patient CD4 Counter (the instrument). The software identifies the cell populations of interest and calculates CD4 absolute counts, CD4 percentages of lymphocytes, and haemoglobin concentration. The system measures total haemoglobin by spectrophotometric method, using absorbance at an isobestic point for oxyhemoglobin and deoxy-hemoglobin, with Correction for scatter.

4.5.5 Sample Requirements

Blood sample on K2EDTA vacuum tubes. All K2EDTA samples must be received and set up within 24 hours from collection time.

4.5.6 Equipment

BD FACS Presto

4.5.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
BD FACS presto cartridge	Blue and yellow tips BD FACS presto print out paper BD disposable 100 µl Pipette

4.5.8 Storage and Stability

- Do not refrigerate whole blood SAMPLE before sample preparation.
- Do not use previously fixed and stored samples.

4.5.9 Safety

- Blood samples may contain infectious agents that are hazardous to your health. Observe Standard Universal precautions.
- Ensure the instrument and environment you working are kept clean and free from infectious substance such as human blood to avoid contamination.
- Spills should be immediately disinfected with 0.5% Sodium Hypochlorite Solution.

4.5.10 Calibration Not Applicable.

4.5.11 Quality Control

BD Facs presto has internal electronic self-test for IQC or the use of known higher and low CD4 counts made in-house can also be applied

4.5.12 Procedural Steps

i. Open the cartridge package and label the patient ID on to the cartridge.
ii. Face the inlet port up.
iii. Invert the tube 10 times to mix the contents well.
iv. Use the pipette to obtain the sample.
v. Gently squeeze the bulb on the pipette to form a drop of blood on the tip of the pipette.
vi. Carefully dispense the sample into the inlet port. Hold the cartridge by its ridges only.
vii. Make sure the blood reaches the top of the inlet port. If necessary, gently squeeze the bulb on the pipette to dispense more blood.
viii. Make sure the cartridge is level, with the barcode side up, at all times. Make sure that blood appears in the part of the channel not covered by the channel protector, next to the containment zone.
ix. Discard the pipette into a biohazard us waste container.
x. Close the cartridge cap securely and Set the on-board timer.
xi. Place the cartridge, barcode side up, on the work station
xii. Press the Run Test tab.

xiii. Press Patient ID.

xiv. Enter the patient's ID and press Accept.

xv. The Confirmed Patient ID screen opens.

xvi. Press Accept and Insert the cartridge:

xvii. Select your Operator ID and press Accept. Then cartridge door on the instrument opens will open.

Note: If possible, complete the following two steps within 30 seconds.

xviii. Remove the channel protector from the cartridge.

xix. Hold the cap with the channel facing upwards.

xx. Insert the prepared cartridge into the cartridge door. The cartridge door closes.

xxi. Press Accept to eject the cartridge within 30 seconds.

4.5.13 Biological Reference Interval

Analyte	Gender	Reference interval	SI UNIT
Absolute CD 4 count	Male	462 – 1306	cells/uL
	Female	440 – 1602	cells/uL
%CD4 of lymphocytes	Male	29 – 54	%
	Female	32 – 55	%
HAEMAGLOBIN	Male	13.5 – 18.0	g/dL
	Female	12.0 – 16.0	g/dL

4.5.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

- The results are displayed on the screen and print automatically.

Reporting of Results

- **R**eport the obtained results as displayed on the screen.

Critical values

- If the CD4 count is low (below 200cells/□l for adult and below 450 cells/ □l for children) the result will be regarded as critical and communicate with clinician

4.5.15 Limitations of the procedure and sources of error

- Use the cartridge only with the BD FACS Presto instrument.
- The use of expired cartilage may result into false results
- Improper filling of the test device may not give the proper results

4.5.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to Method verification report

4.5.17 Supporting Documents

Quality Manual, Sample Collection Manual, Safety Manual.

4.5.18 References

4.6 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF CLOTTING TIME

4.6.1 Purpose

The purpose of this standard operating procedure (SOP) is to provide guidelines to be followed for performing clotting time

4.6.2 Scope

This procedure is to be performed at point of care or any health facility to detect the clotting time

4.6.3 Responsibility

The Section heads are responsible section is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure. Qualified, competent and registered Medical Laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

4.6.4 Principle

The presence of activator augments the contact activation phase of coagulation, which stimulates the intrinsic coagulation pathway. Clotting time can be performed manually, whereby the operator measures the time interval from when blood is injected into the test tube to when clot is seen along the sides of the tube.

4.6.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood

4.6.6 Equipment

Stop watch, water bath and thermometer

4.6.7 Materials

Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat, 70% alcohol, Masks, and Sterile lancets

4.6.8 Storage and Stability

Not applicable

4.6.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the facility Safety manual
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
- Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

4.6.10 Calibration

- Perform equipment calibration of the Stop watch, water bath and thermometer as per auxiliary equipment calibration schedule

4.6.11 Quality Control

Not Applicable

4.6.12 Procedural Steps

Two methods can estimate clotting time:

❑ **Capillary method of bleeding time.**

i. Prick the finger with the lancet. ii. Hold the capillary over the blood, and the capillary will fill automatically.
iii. Now, after regular intervals, break the capillary. iv. When a clot starts forming, that is the endpoint and clotting time. ❑ **Test tube method of clotting time.**

i. Perform this test at 37 ° C.
ii. Take 4 ml of blood for the tube method and start the time.
iii. Note the time when there is the first appearance of the clot formation.
iv. This test can be done in multiple tubes to be more accurate.

4.6.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not Applicable

4.6.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

i. The expected range is 4 to 10 minutes.
ii. The glass tube method clotting time is 5 to 15 minutes. iii. Results are given in amount of minutes takes for bleeding time to stop

4.6.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. This test is only prolonged in severe deficiency.
ii. Normal clotting time is despite prolonged bleeding time seen in thrombocytopenia.
iii. This may be normal in patients taking anticoagulant therapy.
iv. This is usually normal when the intrinsic and common pathways are present in an amount not exceeding 1% of the normal plasma level.

4.6.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer the method verification report of the procedure.

4.6.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

4.6.18 References

A manual of laboratory diagnostic tests. Edition 7, Lipipicontt William and Wilkins, by Frances Talaska Fishbach, RN, BSN, MS, and MarshallaBrnet 11, RN, BSN, MS, Ph.D.

4.7 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF THE BLEEDING TIME

4.7.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to provide instructions for investigation of bleeding time.

4.7.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Haematology section when performing bleeding time

4.7.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Haematology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.7.4 Principle

Bleeding time is a medical test done to assess platelet function of a patient. It involves cutting the underside of the subject's forearm, in an area where there is no hair or visible veins. The cut is of a standardized width and depth, and is done quickly by an automatic device. A blood pressure cuff is used above the wound, to maintain venous pressure at a special value. The time it takes for bleeding to stop (i.e. the time it takes for a platelet plug to form) is measured. Cessation of bleeding can be determined by blotting away the blood every several seconds until the site looks 'glassy'.

4.7.5 Sample Requirements

Plasma/whole blood, Serum (2-5ml)

4.7.6 Equipment

Timer, Thermometer, Light Microscope, Sphygmomanometer

4.7.7 Materials

Marker pen, Examination Gloves, Filter paper, 70% alcohol swabs and Sterile lancets

4.7.8 Storage and Stability

Not Applicable

4.7.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.7.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment (Timer and Thermometer) as per calibration schedule

4.7.11 Quality Control

Not Applicable

4.7.12 Procedural Steps

i. Apply the blood pressure cuff to the arm just above the elbow. ii. Inflate the device to 40 mm of mercury and maintain at this level. iii. Clean the anterior surface of the fore arm with 70% alcohol swabs.

iv. Make two clean punctures about 2 mm long and 2 mm deep being careful to avoid underlying veins.

v. Blot the blood with the filter paper every 15 seconds but be careful and make sure you only touch the top of the drop.

vi. start the stop watch as the first drop of the blood appears, immediately when the blood ceases stop the timer and record the time.

vii. Calculate the average of the 2 punctures and record bleeding time.

viii. **If** it's a prolonged bleeding time **then** perform Prothrombin Time (PT), Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time (APTT) and platelets count.

4.7.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not Applicable

4.7.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

i. Interpret results in terms of minutes taken for bleeding to stop. ii. Normal ranges are around 1.5 - 5 minutes.

NOTE; If the bleeding time is greater than 10 minutes, stop the test and apply pressure to the wound. Report the results as greater than 10 minutes.

Reporting of results

Report results as: *Bleeding time (in minutes)* **Critical value:** Findings *greater than 10 minutes.*

4.7.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Anything that alters platelet function can interfere with the bleeding time. Some examples include aspirin, thrombocytopenia, and uremia

4.7.16 Performance Characteristics

Not Applicable

4.7.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

4.7.18 References

4.8 PROCEDUIRE FOR FULL BLOOD COUNT BY USING URIT BH – 40P HAEMATOLOGY ANALYSER.

4.8.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instruction on how to operate urit BH-40P haematology analyser in determining full blood count

4.8.2 Scope

This procedure applies in the Haematology section when performing FBC (Full blood count) analysis using URIT BH - 40P Haematology Analyser.

4.8.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this procedure. The Head Haematology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.8.4 Principle

The URIT BH – 40P Automated Haematology Analyser is a multi-parameter, it can display 21 parameters and 3 histograms. Analyser adopts electrical impedance method for WBC, RBC and PLT test and colorimetric method for HGB test. The electrical impedance method is based on non-conductivity of blood cells. When the blood cells in diluents pass through the ruby aperture, resistance will change, based on that we can get the counting and volume of blood cells. The colorimetric methods

to measure and calculate HGB. Add lyse into the diluents sample, and then RBC will be dissolve and release haemoglobin. Then the haemoglobin combines with lyse to form cyanohemoglobin. Measure the transmission light intensity of this compound in a sample cup through the monochromatic light of 540 nm wavelength and then compare it with the result in blank state to get the haemoglobin concentration (blank state refers to the state that only has diluents in sample cup).

4.8.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood sample in EDTA-K2.2H2O tube.

4.8.6 Equipment

- URIT BH-40 Automated Haematology Analyser
- Perform start up, maintenance, troubleshooting and shut down the URIT BH-40 Automated Haematology analyser as per manufacturer's instrument instructions

4.8.7 Materials

Diluent, Lyse, Probe detergent, Set of Controls kit, Marker pen, Examination Gloves Capillary tube, Plane test tube, Thermal paper, and Gloves

4.8.8 Storage and Stability

- Keep the Set of Controls at 2^oC – 8^oC
- Never use reagent and control beyond its expiration date
- Blood sample be kept at temperature between 2^oC- 8^oC for 7 days.

4.8.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.8.10 Calibration

- URIT calibrates the analyser in factory before shipment.
- Use the user URIT BH-40P to recalibrate the analyser when there is shifts or trends in some parameters

4.8.11 Quality Control

Run all quality controls; QC1 (Low), QC 2 (Normal) and QC 3 (High) before examination of patient samples

4.8.12 Procedural Steps **Running Patient Samples**

i. Pre- diluent peripheral blood mode

- Present the empty sample tube under aspiration probe.
- At main menu screen, click “Drain”; the diluents will be dispensed into the tube.
- Remove the tube, add 20µl of the blood sample to the tube, and gently shake the tube to make them well mixed.
- After that present the well mixed sample under the aspiration probe; make sure the probe touches bottom slightly.
- Press RUN key on the front panel and remove the sample after hearing beep sound. The result will be available after analysis is performed. **ii. Whole Blood Mode**
- Gently shake the tube to well mix the blood sample, then present the sample tube beneath the probe, make sure the probe touches tube bottom slightly.
- Press RUN key and remove the sample after hearing beep sound. The results will be available after analysis is performed.

iii. Ant coagulated Peripheral Blood Mode

- Gently shake the tube to well mix the blood sample, then present the sample tube beneath the probe, make sure the probe touches tube bottom slightly.
- Press RUN key and remove the sample after hearing beep sound. The results will be available after analysis is performed.

4.8.13 Biological Reference Interval See annex 1.

4.8.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

- Normal: if the results are within acceptable range.
- Abnormal (pathological): if the results are out of acceptable range

Reporting of results

Results are automatically printed from the URIT BH-40P and then review by section head. Critical value

WBC > 20 $x10^9$/L, HGB <5g/dL, PLT < 50 or 1000 $x10^9$/L

4.8.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- The test will be affected by hemolysed blood and coagulated blood.
- Samples with extreme lipemic, chylomicrons or extremely high bilirubin concentrations might produce falsely elevated haemoglobin values.

4.8.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

4.8.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

4.8.18 References

URIT BH- 40P Operation manual

4.9 PROCEDURE FOR FULL BLOOD COUNT USING OF ABX PENTRA 80 HAEMATOLOGY ANALYSER.

4.9.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for operation and maintenance of ABX Pentra 80 analyzer for Full blood picture

4.9.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all Full Blood Count tests done on ABX Pentra 80 analyser in the haematology section

4.9.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Haematology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.9.4 Principle

The ABX Pentra 80 is an automated haematologyanalyser used for counting and differentiating the cellular components in whole blood using electrical impedance, cytochemical staining, light scatter and spectrophotometer.

The principle behind cell counting is based on disruption of electric current as particles pass through an orifice. An electric current applies on both sides of this orifice. Cells do not conduct electric current, therefore their passage through the orifice leads to a change of the electric current established between both electrodes. These electric current differences are registered and increment a counter at every cell passage.

A chemical agent is used to separate erythrocyte and leukocyte populations, because of size overlapping and quantities discrepancies. This chemical agent contained in Lysis (ACTI-DIFF) pops the cytoplasmic membrane of the red cells. Erythrocyte population disappears leaving the leukocytes.

A haemoglobin preservative is added in lysing agent to measure haemoglobin scaled down in a 540nm photometric tank at the end of the counting. The haemoglobin measurement is made from the first dilution. The lysing agent has a powerful haemoglobin reducer (potassium cyanide) and then the haemoglobin measurement follows Drabkin method with a 540nm reading. The integration of luminous intensity transmitted is evaluated according to the BEER-LAMBERT formula. An enzymatic liquid (ABX CLEANER) ensures the system cleanliness between every analysis and prevents carryover between samples.

4.9.5 Sample Requirements

2 to 4mls of whole blood collected in K3 EDTA tube

4.9.6 Equipment

ABX Pentra 80 Analyser and Perform start up, maintenance, troubleshooting and shut down the ABX Pentra 80 Haematology analyser as per manufacturer's instrument instruction.

4.9.7 Materials

ABX Pentra 80 analyser reagent pack, Laboratory coat, Biohazard waste container. 0.5% Sodium hypochlorite solution, Distilled water, Protective gloves, Methanol, A4 paper

4.9.8 Storage and Stability

Control kit is stable until expiry date and should be kept at 2^{o}C – 8^{o}C. **B**lood sample be kept at temperature between 2^{o}C- 8^{o}C for 7 days.

4.9.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.9.10 Calibration

Calibrate the ABX Pentra 80 analyser under the following conditions:

i. Change of software
ii. Major component replacement

4.9.11 Quality Control

Run control QC materials (Low, Normal and High) before patient samples

4.9.12 Procedural Steps

i. Click the STAT MODE key.
ii. Then write the patient ID, Age, Gender. iii. Click the VALIDATE key. iv. Mix well the patient sample.
v. Place the sample on the tube holder of analyser. vi. Press the door of analyser inside to run the sample. vii. The patient results will be printed automatically.

4.9.13 Biological Reference Interval See annex 1.

4.9.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

- Normal: if the results are within acceptable range.
- Abnormal (pathological): if the results are out of acceptable range
- Results are automatically printed from the ABX Pentra 80 and then review by section head.
- Communicate the Critical value with clinicians

Test	Critical Value
Haemoglobin	Less than 5 g/dl (50 g/L)
White Blood Count	Less than 2.0 or greater than 18.0 cells/mm^3
Platelet Count	Less than 50,000/ mm^3 or greater than 800,000/mm^3

4.9.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Sickled red blood cells may not be accurately recognised and may give erroneous results
ii. Samples with cold agglutinins may falsely decrease the red cell count. The indices will indicate that the haemoglobin and haematocrit values do not agree. Thin film is recommended. These samples should be incubated for 30 minutes at 37 ^oC and reanalysed. iii. Platelet clumps and neonatal samples may interfere with Drabkins method of haemoglobin determination.
iv. Samples with extreme lipaemia, chylomicrons or extremely high bilirubin concentrations might produce falsely elevated haemoglobin values.
v. Samples with nucleated red blood cells may falsely elevate white cell count. Additionally, presence of nucleated red cells may interfere with white cell differential count. Samples from patients with elevated chylomicrons ad those receiving total parenteral nutrition (TPN) including a high lipid concentration may falsely elevate the platelet count.
vi. Aggregated platelets may falsely elevate the white blood cell count and percentage of lymphocytes.
vii. The presence of immature white blood cells, including blasts, may affect the accuracy of the differential. The instrument will give an << I >> or 'M' error code if the blasts are suspected. A thin film is recommended.

viii. Clinical studies have shown that the Full Blood Count is not affected by presence of malaria parasites, Howell-Jolly bodies, cryogoblins and red cell fragments.

4.9.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

4.9.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

4.9.18 References

ABX PENTRA 80 operator's manual

4.10 PROCEDURE FOR FULL BLLOD COUNT USING SINNOWA HB - 7021

4.10.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for operation and maintenance of ***SINNOWA HB – 7021 Hematology Analyser.***

4.10.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all Full Blood Count tests done on SINNOWA HB – 7021 analyser in the haematology section

4.10.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Haematology section head is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.10.4 Principle

The instrument adopts the method of impedance to measure and count cells. The conductivity liquid (mainly diluents) provides constant current source to the electrode thus they circuit can form a steady impedance circulation. When cells pass through the aperture, the conductive liquid is replaced by cells. Change of circuit resistance produces electrical pulse. The amplitude varies when the cells of different size pass through the aperture. Consequently the number and volume of cells pass through the aperture can be calculated based on the amplitude.

4.10.5 Sample Requirements

2 to 4mls of whole blood collected in K3 EDTA tube

4.10.6 Equipment

- SINNOWA HB – 7021 Haematology Analyzer, Refrigerator
- Perform start up, maintenance, troubleshooting and shut down the SINNOWA HB – 7021 Haematology analyser as per manufacturer's instrument instruction

4.10.7 Materials

Reagents	**consumables**
SINNOWA Diluent Reagent, SINNOWA Lyse Reagent, SINNOWA Detergent, SINNOWA Probe Detergent,	Laboratory coat, Biohazard waste container. 0.5% Sodium hypochlorite solution, Distilled water, Protective gloves, Methanol, Printing paper

4.10.8 Storage and Stability

- Control kit is stable until expiry date and should be kept at $2^{o}C$ – $8^{o}C$
- **B**lood sample be kept at temperature between $2^{o}C$- $8^{o}C$ for 7 days.
- Store reagents as per manufacturer instructions

4.10.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.10.10 Calibration

The SINNOWA HB – 7021Hematology Analyser System requires commercial calibrator material or assayed whole blood for calibration.

Calibrate the SINNOWA HB – 7021Hematology Analyser under the following conditions:

i. Change of software
ii. Major component replacement

4.10.11 Quality Control • Run the three levels of control LOW, NORMAL and HIGH" for "SINNOWA HB

– 7021 Hematology Analyzer to ensure quality of results

• Perform Quality Control:-

i. Before analyzing the samples
ii. After replacement of the reagents
iii. After maintenance component replacement, or a field service action
iv. If there is any doubt in accuracy of the test results
v. After a reagent lot number change
vi. After a software change

vii. Following calibration

viii. According to your laboratory's quality control program

ix. According to manufacturer requirements

4.10.12 Procedural Steps

i. Turn on the power on rear panel and indicator shows red light

ii. The instrument initializes test program

iii. Diluents, lyses and detergent will be sucked and tubing system cleaned

iv. If initialization is finished the display shows all parameters WBC,RBC and PLT

v. Shift to select ID and then press OK

vi. Select the test selection from the drop down menu

vii. Gently mix the sample

viii. Open the sample tube and place it under the Open Mode Probe

ix. Raise the tube until the end of the probe is deeply immersed in the sample. Press the Touch Plate to activate aspiration

x. Remove the tube when the beep sounds and replace the cap.

xi. When the cycle is finished, the results post to the Data log and are displayed in the Run View

xii. Print the results

4.10.13 Biological Reference Interval See annex 1.

4.10.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- Normal: if the results are within acceptable range.
- Abnormal (pathological): if the results are out of acceptable range
- Results are automatically printed from the SINNOWA HB – 7021 and then review by section head.
- Communicate the Critical value with clinicians

Test	Critical Value
Haemoglobin	Less than 5 g/dl (50 g/L)
White Blood Count	Less than 2.0 or greater than 18.0 cells/mm^3
Platelet Count	Less than 50,000/ mm^3 or greater than 800,000/mm^3

4.10.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Keep reagent away from direct sunlight and protect them from evaporation.

ii. Use reagent container cap attached to each inlet tube, the cap will minimize evaporation and contamination.

iii. Never use reagent, control and calibrators beyond their expiration date.

4.10.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

4.10.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

4.10.18 References

• SINNOWA HB – 7021 Hematology Analyser user manual.

4.11 PROCEDURE FOR FULL BLOOD COUNT USING BHA 3000 HAEMATOLOGY ANALYSER

4.11.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for operation and maintenance of BHA 3000 Haematology Analyser.

4.11.2 Scope

This procedure applies in haematology section for performing Full Blood Count tests done on BHA 3000 analyser

4.11.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure. The Haematology section head is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.11.4 Principle

BHA -3000 Automatic Hematology Analyser provides a 3 part differential blood count uses an electrical impedance to count red blood cells, platelets and volume distributions, and uses calorimetry to measure the haemoglobin and relevant parameters will be enumerated.

This system uses electrical impedance method to count red blood cells, platelets and white blood cells. When the absorbed quantitative sample is diluted by a quantitative conductive solution, it is sent to the detection unit of the instrument. The detection unit has a detection aperture, with a pair of positive and negative electrodes on both sides of the aperture, which is connected with a constant current power supply. Due to the bad conductor characteristic of these cells, when the cells in the diluted sample pass through the detection aperture under a constant negative pressure, the DC resistance between the electrodes will change, thus forming a pulse change at both ends of the electrode in portions to the size of the cell volume. When cells continuously pass through the aperture, a series of electrical pulses are generated at both ends of the

electrodes. The number of pulse is equal to the number of cells passing through the aperture. And the pulse amplitude is proportion to the cell volume. Amplify the collected electrical pulses, and calculates the number of electric pulse in the red blood/platelets channel and WBC channel. The pulses are then classified according to different channel voltage threshold, hence determines the cell volume distribution

4.11.5 Sample Requirements

2 to 4mls of whole blood collected in K3 EDTA tube

4.11.6 Equipment

BHA 3000 Haematology Analyzer, Refrigerator

4.11.7 Materials

DIL-3 Diluent and HR-1 Lyse, Controls (Normal level (N), Low- level (L) and High- level (H) Laboratory coat, Biohazard waste container. 0.5% Sodium hypochlorite solution, Distilled water, Protective gloves, Printing paper

4.11.8 Storage and Stability

- Control kit is stable until expiry date and should be kept at $2^oC – 8^oC$
- **B**lood sample be kept at temperature between 2^oC- 8^oC for 7 days.
- Store reagents as per manufacturer instructions

4.11.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.11.10 Calibration

Calibrate the BHA 3000 Haematology Analyzer Analyser under the following conditions:

i. Change of software
ii. Major component replacement

4.11.11 Quality Control

Run the three levels of control LOW, NORMAL and HIGH" for BHA 3000 Haematology Analyzer to ensure quality of results

Perform Quality Control:-

i. Before analyzing the samples
ii. After replacement of the reagents
iii. After maintenance component replacement, or a field service action
iv. If there is any doubt in accuracy of the test results
v. After a reagent lot number change
vi. After a software change
vii. Following calibration
viii. According to your laboratory's quality control program
ix. According to manufacturer requirements

4.11.12 Procedural Steps

i. Turn on the power on rear panel and indicator shows red light
ii. The instrument initializes test program
iii. Diluents, lyses and detergent will be sucked and tubing system cleaned
iv. If initialization is finished the display shows all parameters WBC,RBC and PLT
v. Shift to select ID and then press OK vi. Select the test selection from the drop down menu vii. Gently mix the sample
viii. Open the sample tube and place it under the Open Mode Probe
ix. Raise the tube until the end of the probe is deeply immersed in the sample. Press the press Plate to activate aspiration
x. Remove the tube when the beep sounds and replace the cap.
xi. When the cycle is finished, the results post to the Data log and are displayed in the Run View
xii. Print the results

4.11.13 Biological Reference Interval See annex 1.

4.11.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- Normal: if the results are within acceptable range.
- Abnormal (pathological): if the results are out of acceptable range
- Communicate the following Critical value with clinicians

Test	Critical Value
Haemoglobin	Less than 5 g/dl (50 g/L)
White Blood Count	Less than 2.0 or greater than 18.0 cells/mm^3
Platelet Count	Less than 50,000/ mm^3 or greater than 800,000/mm^3

4.11.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error iv. Keep reagent away from direct sunlight and protect them from evaporation.

v. Use reagent container cap attached to each inlet tube, the cap will minimize evaporation and contamination.
vi. Never use reagent, control and calibrators beyond their expiration date.

4.11.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

4.11.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

4.11.18 References

BHA 3000 Haematology Analyser user manual.

4.12 PROCEDURE FOR PERFOMING PERIPHERAL BLOOD SMEAR

4.12.1 Purpose

The procedure provides instructions on how to examine thin peripheral blood smear.

4.12.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all laboratory practitioners in investigation of blood cell abnormalities.

4.12.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Health Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this procedure. Section heads are responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.12.4 Principle

A stained smear is examined in order to determine the percentage of each type of leucocytes present, and asses the erythrocyte and platelet morphology. Increased in any of the normal leucocytes types or the presence of immature leucocytes or erythrocytes in peripheral blood are important diagnostically in a wide variety of inflammatory disorders and leukemia. Erythrocyte abnormalities are clinically important in varies anemias. Platelet size irregularities are suggestive of particular thrombocyte disorders.

4.12.5 Sample Requirements

Freshly collected venous blood ant coagulated with EDTA

4.12.6 Equipment

Manual counter, Slides, Cover slips/spreader, timer and Microscope

4.12.7 Materials

Reagent

Giemsa stain, Immersion oil, Buffered water, Methanol

4.12.8 Storage and Stability

Venous blood (EDTA) must be stored at 2-8°Crefrigeratorsfor 7days

4.12.9 Safety

Always handle sample with care, as they might be infectious. Consult local environmental authorities for proper disposal. Always wear protective gloves when handling sample.

4.12.10 Calibration

Done annually by engineer

4.12.11 Quality Control

Whole blood smear is prepared and stained by using giemsa stain to see all features of the cell.

4.12.12 Procedural Steps

i. Make a smear and air dry it. ii. Place the smear on a staining rack. Flood it with ethanol for 2 seconds and air dry it, this is the time required for fixation (ethanol acts as a fixative). iii. Place the smear on a staining rack; flood it with 10% giemsa stain

iv. Leave for 10 minutes

v. Add twice the amount of buffered water, pH 7 from a plastic wash bottle.

vi. Wash the stain with buffered water till the smear has a pinkish tinge. vii. Wipe the back of the smear and stand upright to dry. viii. Observe at 10x objective to get a film, and then change to 100x objective lenses

ix. Report the findings

4.12.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

4.12.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results should be made along with patient clinical features. Further investigations might be required to confirm the suspected abnormalities.

Reporting of Results

Report the morphology, size, shape and number of cells (RBC, WBC, platelets)

4.12.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

- Delayed fixing of blood smears causes distortion of cellular morphology. Dried plasma stains the background of the smear a pale blue.
- The staining rack should be leveled.
- Do not let the stain solution dry over the smear.

4.12.16 Performance Characteristics

Not Applicable

4.12.17 Supporting Documents

Result Management procedure, Safety manual and Sample collection manual

4.12.18 References

Cheesbrough, M (2000). Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries (Vol, I & Vol II). Butterworth-Heinemann, London

4.13 PROCEDURE FOR PERFORMING FULL BLOOD COUNT BY USING MS4 HAEMATOLOGY ANALYSER

4.13.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for operation and maintenance of MS4 analyser for Full blood count

4.13.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all Full blood count tests done on MS4 analyser in the Laboratory hematology section

4.13.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained Health Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure. Section head is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

4.13.4 Principle

The MS4-S is an automated haematology analyser used for counting and differentiating the cellular components in whole blood using electrical impedance, cytochemical staining, light scatter and spectrophotometer.

The principle behind cell counting is based on disruption of electric current as particles pass through an orifice. An electric current applies on both sides of this orifice. Cells do not conduct electric current, therefore their passage through the orifice leads to a

change of the electric current established between both electrodes. This electric current difference is registered and increment a counter at every cell passage.

A chemical agent is used to separate erythrocyte and leukocyte populations, because of size overlapping and quantities discrepancies. This chemical agent contained in Lysis (ACTI-DIFF) pops the cytoplasmic membrane of the red cells. Erythrocyte population disappears leaving the leukocytes. A Haemoglobin preservative is added in lysing agent to measure Haemoglobin scaled down in a 540nm photometric tank at the end of the counting. The Haemoglobin measurement is made from the first dilution. The lysing agent has a powerful Haemoglobin reducer (potassium cyanide) and then the Haemoglobin measurement follows Drabkin method with a 540nm reading. The integration of luminous intensity transmitted is evaluated according to the BEER-LAMBERT formula.

An enzymatic liquid (TRANSFLUX) ensures the system cleanliness between every analysis and prevents carryover between samples.

4.13.5 Sample Requirements

2 to 4mls of whole blood collected in K3 EDTA purple top color tube

4.13.6 Equipment

MS4-S Hematology Analyser, and roller mixer

4.13.7 Materials

MS4-S analyser reagent pack, Lab coat, Biohazard waste container, 5-6% Sodium hypochlorite, Distilled water, Protective gloves and Methanol

4.13.8 Storage and Stability

Blood is stable for about 4 hours at room temperature or 24hours at 2- 6oC

4.13.9 Safety

i. Treat all samples as potentially infectious. ii. Keep hands away from the sample carrier when the analysis begins

iii. Some components inside the MS4s have sharp edges or angular corners, therefore operate with caution to avoid cuts to the hands

iv. When performing maintenance procedure, take similar precautions as you would take when handling patient samples

4.13.10 Calibration

All auxiliary equipment should be calibrated annually

4.13.11 Quality Control

Use commercially quality control or in house prepared quality control samples

Running of quality control

i. Take the QC material from the refrigerator and let them stay at room temperature for 15 minutes.

ii. After 15 minutes' mix well the controls one by one by inverting the tube gently at least (x7) seven times without creating bubbles.

iii. Press ANALYSIS key (Tube like symbol) then DOWN arrow (↓).

iv. Select Quality CT (to run controls) then use RIGHT arrow ( ) to select control levels.

v. Select LOW if you start with low control up to High control using UP and DOWN arrows on key board or on machine. (↑) or (↓) vi. Place the control tube on the tube holder

vii. Press ENTER key on keyboard or ( ) on the machine to validate

viii. Repeat the procedure to the Normal and High controls

ix. The QC results will be printed automatically

x. Plot the results of the QC on the Levy-Jennings chart and verify that the QC has passed before running patients' samples.

4.13.12 Procedural Steps

Running of Patient Samples

i. Press Analysis key in the machine

ii. Press RIGHT arrow ( )

iii. Select the gender female or male by using UP and DOWN arrows (↑) or (↓)

iv. Press the ENTER key (using key board) or ( ) on the machine to validate

v. Write the name of the patient (Full Name)

vi. Mix well the sample

vii. Place the sample on the tube holder of the machine.

viii. Press ENTER on keyboard or ( ) on the machine to start running the sample.

ix. The patient results will be printed automatically.

4.13.13 Biological Reference Intervals

See annex 1.

Critical value/results *should be recorded and immediately communicated to the requesting clinician.*

4.13.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Results are reported and communicated through the appropriate locally established procedure

4.13.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

i. Exposing reagents to direct sunlight may cause them to deteriorate
ii. Sickled red blood cells may not be accurately recognised
iii. Samples with cold agglutinins may falsely decrease the red cell count. iv. Platelet clumps and neonatal samples.
v. Samples with extreme lipaemia, chylomicrons or extremely high bilirubin concentrations might produce falsely elevated Haemoglobin values.
vi. Samples with nucleated red blood cells may falsely elevate white cell count.
vii. Samples from patients with elevated chylomicrons and those receiving total parenteral nutrition (TPN) including a high lipid concentration may falsely elevate the platelet count.
viii. Circulating micro megakaryocytes may be counted as white cells ix. Aggregated platelets may falsely elevate the white blood cell count and percentage of lymphocytes.

4.13.16 Performance Characteristics

Method verification should be carried out and its report will be referred to fulfil this requirement.

4.13.17 Supporting Documents

Laboratory quality policy manual, Laboratory safety policy manual and Laboratory sample collection manual

4.13.18 References

MS4S operator's manual, 2013-07

4.14 PROCEDURE FOR FULL BLOOD COUNT BY USING DYMIND DH-36 ANALYSER

4.14.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for determination of full blood picture using the Dymind DH-36 Analyser**.**

4.14.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all competent laboratory staffs who operate the DYMIND DH 36 Automated Haematology Analyser

4.14.3 Responsibility

The Head of haematology is responsible of ensuring that this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained

4.14.4 Principle

Electrical impedance, for determination of total WBC/basophil, RBC, Platelets. Changes electric resistance produced by a blood cell particle suspend in a conductive diluent as passes through aperture of known dimension. This change produce measurable electric pulse, number of pulse is equal to number of blood cell particle and amplitude of each pulse proportional to volume of that particle. Pulse generated being above the WBC/bas, RBC, PLT lower threshold value, it's counted as WBC/BAS, RBC or PLT.

Colorimetric, RBC is lysed, lyse E-1 converts haemoglobin to Hb complex that is measurable at 525nm absorbance.

Laser flow cytometry, used to obtain WBC differential count, blood cells suspension is injected into a flow chamber exposed to laser beam. The intensity of scattered light reflects blood cell size and intracellular density. The Optical detector receives this scattered light and converts it into electric pulses, analyser presents Lym%, Neu% and mixed%.

4.14.5 Sample Requirements

Venous whole blood (VWB), running single sample per time in EDTA tube.

Capillary whole blood (CWB), running single sample per time in centrifuge tube. Predilute (PD), running single sample per time in cryo-tube. Diluted 180µl.

4.14.6 Equipment

Dymind DH-76 analyser**,** Sample mixer/roller

4.14.7 Materials

DIL-E diluent, CLE-P cleanser, LYA-E-1 lysing RBC, Printing papers, Cartilage

4.14.8 Storage and Stability

Store and use reagents as specific instructions for reagent use.

4.14.9 Safety

Samples, controls, calibrators, reagents wastes are potentially biohazards, wear personal protective equipment's.

Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

4.14.10 Calibration

Calibration is done by the engineer during annual maintenance or as needed

4.14.11 Quality Control

Run low, normal and high controls daily as available. Run comparability checks with other instruments in use. In addition, run controls;

i. When reagent lot number changes. ii. Following instrument calibration. iii. When instrument shuts down (i.e., power outages).

4.14.12 Procedure Steps

Starting operation of the analyser;

Turn on the power switch to start-up DH-36 and automatically launch its software. Login software: enter correct username and password in login message box, system will initialize operations automatically (system self-test, fluidics check and cleaning, background check), this process takes 5 minutes. **Equipment Shut Down**

Select shutdown on the screen

Present CLE-P Cleanser on sample probe and the analyser will be cleaned by cleaner solution.

Shut down the analyser by switching off the main switch at the back of the machine.

Exiting Sleep Mode

Press the touch plate (run button) and the analyser will exit sleep mode or double tap the analyser screen

Running Samples

i. Click Sample Analysis on the screen.
ii. Then select “MODE and ID”.
iii. Sub window will open then select mode to use and enter Sample ID.
iv. Click OK.
v. Pre-mix SAMPLE 8-10 times then present sample on sample probe.
vi. Raise the tube so that the end of the probe is deeply immersed in the sample.
vii. Press the touch plate (run button) to start the run cycle (aspiration).

viii. Remove the sample tube after a beep sound is heard after aspiration. ix. Wait for the run cycle to be completed then results will display on the screen.

4.14.13 Biological Reference interval See annex 1.

4.14.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

If the result is out of the normal range, an arrow will be displayed. The direction of the arrow will indicate if it is high or low. Results are reported through a print-out from the equipment.

4.14.15 Limitations of the procedure and sources of error

The equipment will not analyse clotted samples. Samples with minor clots will give false platelet results. Haemolysed samples are not suitable

4.14.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to data for method verification report

4.14.17 Supporting document

Sample collection manual

4.14.18 References

- DH-36 Operator's Manual.
- Essential Laboratory Tests Standard Operating Procedures –AMREF-2008.

CHAPTER 5: CLINICAL CHEMISTRY AND IMMUNOLOGY

5.1 PROCEDURE FOR BLOOD GLUCOSE BY USING ACCUCHECK GLUOCOMETER

5.1.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for use of blood glucose test strips *for* determination of Blood Glucose level. Blood glucose is measured mainly in the diagnosis and maNot applicablegement of diabetes mellitus.

5.1.2 Scope

This procedure will be used for Blood Glucose testing in the laboratory and at point of care testing sites (POCT).

5.1.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent registered and licensed Health laboratory practititioners and Trained health care providers respectively are responsible for doing this test procedure.

The head of clinical chemistry section is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation of this procedure.

5.1.4 Principle

The test strips contain a capillary that sucks up a reproducible amount of blood. Glucose in the blood reacts with an enzyme electrode containing Glucose oxidase (or Glucose dehydrogeNot applicablese).The enzyme is reoxidized with an excess of a mediator ferricyanide ion, a ferrocene derivative or osmium bipyridyl complex. The mediator in turn is reoxidised by reaction at the electrode, which generates an electrical current. The total charge passing through the electrode is proportioNot applicablel to the amount of glucose in the blood that has reacted with enzyme.

5.1.5 Sample requirements

i. Capillary or 1ml Fluoride-oxalate venous anticoagulated blood (fasting, post-prandial, or random samples). Do not collect blood from an arm receiving an I.V. infusion. *Fasting samples:* This refers to blood collected after a period of no food intake. For adults the fasting time is usually 10 to 16 hours. For children the fasting time is 6 hours unless a longer time is

indicated, e.g. when investigating hypoglycaemia. The drinking of plain water is permitted.

ii. *Post-prandial samples:* This describes blood collected after a meal has been taken. The sample is usually taken as a 2 hour post - prandial samples.

iii. *Random samples:* This refers to a blood sample collected at any time, regardless of food intake.

5.1.6 Equipment

Glucometer

Maintenance

Conduct **maintenance** as required by manufacturer instructions

5.1.7 Materials

Glucose test strips, Lancets, Cotton wool or gauze or alcohol swab, Sharp box or Container, waste bin, Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat

5.1.8 Storage and stability

All related materials should be stored as the per manufactures instructions. Sample should be processed within 1hour after collection

5.1.9 Safety

i. All samples must be considered as potentially infectious and must be handled and examined with care. ii. All person applicable protective equipment (PPE) should be worn when performing procedure

iii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

5.1.10 Calibration

Equipment should be calibrated as per schedule.

5.1.11 Quality control

Process internal quality control before examing the patient samples on daily base

5.1.12 Procedure Steps

i. Compare the code number on the chip with the corresponding code number on the label of the test strip container where applicable. ii. The three-digit number on

the code chip (e.g.689) must match the three-digit number on the label. (Leave the meter turned off).

iii. Gently slide the code chip into the slot on the side of the meter. (You must feel the code lock into place)

iv. To turn on the Glucose meter, press the S button and hold it down for more than 3 seconds until the depicted display appears.

v. Wear gloves clean the patient's finger using the alcohol swab and allows it to dry.

vi. Take one strip from the container. Close cap tightly and make sure the yellow color in the round window on the back of the test strip matches the yellow color above 0 mg/dL on the container. If it looks green do not use it.

vii. Insert the test strip, with the orange pad facing up, until it will go no further into the meter. Do not bend the test strip. (The arrow heads are almost no longer visible when the test strip is inserted correctly.)

viii. Make sure the code on the meter matches the code on the test strip container.

ix. When you see the flashing blood drop, hold the lancet device against the side of patient fingertip and press the release button.

x. Gently squeeze patient fingertip to get a drop of blood. xi. Once the the blood drop appears on the screen, you have 2 minutes to apply the drop of blood.

xii. Touch the blood drop to the center of the square orange pad. Do not bend the test strip.

xiii. An hourglass symbol appears on the screen, and then the test result appears.

xiv. To remove the lancet, take off the lancet device cap and point the lancet end away.

xv. Slide out the rejector to discharge the lancet into an appropriate container for sharp objects.

xvi. Applying Blood with Test Strip outside of the Meter. xvii. Take the test strip out of the meter

xviii. Touch the center of the square orange pad to the drop of blood. Do not bend the test strip. xix. Within 20 seconds, insert the test strip, with the orange pad to the drop of blood.

5.1.13 Biological Reference Intervals

	Fasting Blood glucose (mmol/L)	Random Blood Glucose
Blood/Plasma:	3.9 – 5.6 mmol/L (70 - 100 mg/dl)	≤6.9 (125 mg/dl)

5.1.14 Interpretation and reporting of results

i. Results are displayed in either mg/dl or mmol/liter depending on which unit of measurement is selected. Report the value in the agreed SI unit.

ii. If the result is lower than 10mg/dL (0.6mm/L) "Lo" is displayed instead of a result.

iii. “Lo” may indicate that your blood is very low. iv. If the result is higher than 600mg/dL (33.3mmol/L), “Hi” is displayed instead of a result.

v. Fasting blood glucose between 5.6 – 6.9 mmol/L (100 – 125 mg/dl) indicates high risk to diabtes. vi. Two separate test results of 7.0 mmol/L (126 mg/dl) or higher indicate diagnosis of diabetes.

Critical value

Fasting blood glucose <2mmol/L

>20mmol/L

5.1.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Falsely elevated glucose results may be obtained when a person’s blood contains bilirubin (unconjugated) >340 µmol/l (>20 mg/dl), triglycerides >57 mmol/l

ii. Abnormal uric acid levels may also interfere with test results. Caution is needd in the interpretation of neoNot applicablete blood glucose values <2.8 mmol/l (<50 mg/dl).

iii. Abnormal haematocrit values may affect test results. iv. Haematocrit levels below 0.20 may cause falsely low glucose values when the glucose concentration is less than or equal to 11.1 mmol/L. Values above 0.55 may cause falsely low glucose values when the glucose is above 11.1 mmol/l.

5.1.16 Perfomance Characteristics Refer to the verification report

5.1.17 Supporting Document Not applicable

5.1.18 References

*ACCU-CHEK A*ctive user’s manual.

5.2 PROCEDURE FOR TESTING BLOOD GLUCOSE BY GLUCO PLUS

5.2.1 Purpose

This Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) is aimed to describe step by step on how to operate **Gluco plus device**

5.2.2 Scope

This procedure for Gluco-plus device will be used for blood glucose chemistry testing in health facility in Tanzania

5.2.3 Responsibility

Trained, qualified and competent laboratory registered practitioners are responsible for performing this procedure.

The head of section for chemistry is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure .

5.2.4 Principle Not applicable

5.2.5 Sample Requirements Whole blood

5.2.6 Equipment

Perform the procedure for start-up, maintenance, troubleshooting and shut down the Gluco-plus as per manufacturer's instrument instructions

5.2.7 Materials

Test strips and Lancing device

5.2.8 Storage and Stability

- Gluco-plus strips should be stored at room temperature
- All reagents should be protected from direct sunlight, extreme heat, and freezing during shipment and storage.
- Temperatures below 32° F (0°C) may cause reagent layering that changes the tonicity and conductivity of the reagents.
- Sample stability after collection of venous whole blood: ✓ Run Samples within one hour of collection.

5.2.9 Safety

- Decontaminate working surfaces twice daily, in the morning and afternoon
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
- Refer to Manufacturer instruction, National infection prevention and control
- Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

5.2.10 Calibration Not Applicable

5.2.11 Quality Control

Control solution

Test prepared GLUCOPLUS control Solution;

i. Once per week
ii. When opening new strips kit

iii. When you suspect the meter or test strips are not working properly. iv. If you drop/damage the meter.
v. Record results on QC Form.

5.2.12 Procedural Steps

Step	Action
Changing strip code	
1	Check the code on the test strip vial before inserting the test strip.
2	Insert the test strip to turn ON the meter and match the code on the meter with the code on the strips vial.
3	If the code is already matched press OK to go to APPLY SAMPLE screen.
4	If the code in Meter does not match the code on the test strip vial, Press S button until you hear a beep sound. Press **S** or **M** to match the code number on the test strips vial.
Setting time	
1	Switch on the analyser
2	Press **S** button until you hear a beep sound. Press off button to save the strip code.
3	Month number will blink use S and M button to select the required month
4	Press the off button to save month and date number will blink and use S and M button to select the required date.
5	The time hours will blink use S and M to set time .
Performing a Quality Control test	
1	Perform weekly and as per meter (machine) protocol.
2	Control used is **GLUCOPLUS Selected Control solution**.
3	Prepare and Apply Control solution.
4	Touch the sample tip of the test strip to the control drop. Verify check window filled.
5	Meter display will count down from 5 to 1 and then display result.
6	Compare the control solution results with correct Control range printed on test strips vial. (Example; 6.2 – 8.2 mmol/L). If the result are not within control range repeat the control solution test.
Testing Blood	
1	Use lancing device to puncture site, normally fingertip.
2	Insert a test strip into the strip port to turn on meter.
3	Touch the blood sample to the sample tip at the end of the test strip.
4	The meter display will count down from 5 to 1 and then display result.
5	If the “HI” or “LO” message appears on the meter, the result is above 33.3 or below 1.1. Repeat test to verify.
Error Codes	
E-1	Problem with Meter – Do not use the meter
E-2	Meter or strip Problem – Repeat the test with New strip.

E-3	Meter was not ready – Repeat the test with a new strip. Apply SAMPLE or CONTROL appears on the display.
E-4	Strip Problem – Repeat test with a new strip.
E-5	Strip problem or Sample too small – Repeat the test with a new strip and new sample.
HI.E	Temperature too high—repeat test in a cooler area.
LO.E	Temperature too low—repeat test in a warmer area.
E-6	Battery LOW — replace battery soon.

5.2.13 Biological Reference Interval

	Fasting Blood glucose (mmol/L)	Random Blood Glucose
Blood/Plasma:	3.9 – 5.6 mmol/L (70 - 100 mg/dl)	≤6.9 (125 mg/dl)

5.2.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results vii. Results are displayed in either mg/dl or mmol/liter depending on which unit of measurement is selected. Report the value in the agreed SI unit.

viii. If the result is lower than 10mg/dL (0.6mm/L) “Lo” is displayed instead of a result.

ix. “Lo” may indicate that your blood is very low.

x. If the result is higher than 600mg/dL (33.3mmol/L), “Hi” is displayed instead of a result.

xi. Fasting blood glucose between 5.6 – 6.9 mmol/L (100 – 125 mg/dl) indicates high risk to diabtes. xii. Two separate test results of 7.0 mmol/L (126 mg/dl) or higher indicate diagnosis of diabetes.

Critical value

Fasting blood glucose	<2mmol/L
	>20mmol/L

5.2.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

If the “HI” or “LO” message appears on the meter, the result is above 33.3 or below

5.2.16 Perfomance Characteristics

Refer the method verification reports from for this procedure and equipment manufacturer user manual

5.2.17 Supporting document

Sample Collection Manual, Safety Manual, Quality Manual

5.2.18 References

1. User manual for Gluco-plus

2. Manufacturers package insert

5.3 PROCEDURE FOR URIT 50 (URINE CHEMISTRY ANALYZER)

5.3.1 Purpose

This procedure is provides description for performing urine biochemistry by using URIT 50 semi-automated Urine analyser.

5.3.2 Scope

This procedure is applied for testing Urine sample at the health facilities in Tanzania.

5.3.3 Responsibility

A trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for performing this procedure. The head of section of biochemistry and parasitology is responsible of ensuring the implementation of this procedure.

5.3.4 Principle

The analyser measures change of the reflectance of reagent strips pads, A detector integrated in the system is composed of light source and a light receiver, the light from which goes through in the spherical integrator and reflect to the reagent pads on strip. The absorbance (reflectance) varies according to the color of reagent pads, the darker of the reagent pads higher the absorbance is and less light is reflected. Conversely the lighter the reagent pad is the lower the absorbance is and more light is reflected degree of color developed is direct proportion to the concentration of analyte in urine" .

5.3.5 Sample Requirements

4mls of uncentrifuged mild stream urine sample is used.

5.3.6 Equipment

Urit-50

5.3.7 Materials

Disposable gloves, Laboratory coats, Urine container, Waste container, Marker pen, Urine strips from urit G10, G11 or G14, Gauze

5.3.8 Storage and Stability

i. Store urine sample at room temperature for 30 minutes to 2 hours or 24 **hours** in refrigerator.
ii. Reagent strips and calibrator should be stored to free and clean area at

37°C iii. Control materials should be stored as per the manufacturers instructions

5.3.9 Safety

Samples and control materials at this section should be treated as infectious material and should be handled careful.

5.3.10 10.0. Calibration Not applicable

5.3.11 Quality Control

i. Put on PPE
ii. Install the strip holder into machine
iii. Switch on the machine and wait the machine for initialization
iv. Put the dry or calibrator strip on the strip holder till D sound
v. Wait the machine to scan and print result
vi. Record the QC result.

Note: Return calibrator strip into its container and discard other used materials according to standard operating procedures

5.3.12 Testing Procedures

i. Deep the reagent strips of G series into urine sample and put it on the dry gauze to remove excess urine on the back of the strip.
ii. Put the sample strip on the strip holder till D sound
iii. Read the patient result on the machine
iv. Record result to the register

5.3.13 Biological Reference Intervals See annex 3.

5.3.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Refer to the insert which present on the reagents strips of G series G10, G11, G14. Report result according to insert present on the reagent strip bottle

5.3.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

The test relies on correct collection of sample by the patient, and if this is not done properly the results may not be accurate

5.3.16 Performance Characteristics Refer to method verification

5.3.17 Supporting Documents URIT 50 user amnual

5.3.18 References

URIT 50 urine user manual.

5.4 PROCEDURE FOR (URIT-560) URINE ANALYZER

5.4.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for determining urine biochemical test using the URIT-560 analyzer

5.4.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Clinical chemistry section of the user when performing urine using the URIT-560 analyzer

5.4.3 Responsibility

The section head of Clinical Chemistry is responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained

5.4.4 Principle

The analyzer measures changes in reflectance of the reagent strips pads. A detector integrated in the system is composed of a light source and a light receiver, the light from which goes through spherical integrator and reflect at the reagent pads on the strips. The absorbance varies according to the color of the reagent pads. The darker the reagent pads is the higher the absorbance is and less light is reflected. Conversely, the lighter the reagent pad is the lower the absorbance is, and more light is reflected; ie. The degree of color development is proportion to the concentration of analyte in urine.

The reflected light goes in to the optical-electronic detector system, which transforms the optical into electrical. The strength of the electricity correlates which reflectance. Then the electrical cables will be processed by CPU after being transformed by I/V converter, and the test results can be printed out by printer.

5.4.5 Sample Requirements

Dry, wide-necked, leak proof container 10-20 ml of urine sample.

5.4.6 Equipment

URIT-560, Printer

5.4.7 Materials

Urine strips (URIT G Series), Printer thermal paper, Urine container, Gloves

5.4.8 Storage and Stability

Sample is stable for 2hrs at room temperature or 24hrs at 2-8^{0}C

5.4.9 Safety

i. Personnel Protective Equipment must be worn at all times
ii. Samples must be treated as potentially infectious.

5.4.10 Calibration

Perform calibration as per manufacturer instructions

5.4.11 Quality Control

Currently no control

5.4.12 Procedural Steps.

i. Give the patient a sterile, dry, wide-necked, leak proof container and request10-20 ml of urine sample. ii. Explain to the patient the need to collect the urine with as little contamination as possible i.e. a clean-catch sample.

iii. On the instrument, press (image test) to enter into the image test interface.
iv. Insert or Pour urine on the test strip, put test strip into test strip holder until the sound of alarm raised.
v. Then wait the printer out results.

5.4.13 Biological Reference Intervals.

Parameter	Abbreviation	Biological Reference Intervals
Urobilinogen	URO	Normal
Glucose	GLU	Negative
Bilirubin	BIL	Negative
Ketones	KET	Negative
Specific gravity	S.G	1.003-1.029
Occult blood	BLD	Negative
Ph	Ph	4.5 - 7.8
Protein	PRO	Negative
Nitrite	NIT	Negative
Leukocytes	LEU	Negative

5.4.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Results are automatically printed from the machine. Attach results printout with report form

5.4.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors.

- Urine must be processed within 2hr to avoid growth of bacteria which consuming glucose and developing ammonia in urine, loose of ketone bodies, Increase of PH
- Urine if not processed on time store in refrigerator 2^{o}C – 8^{o}C for 24

5.4.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer into method verification report

5.4.17 Supporting Documents

Equipment maintenance form, sample collection manual, quality manual

5.4.18 References

- URIT-560 operator's manual

5.5 ROCEDURE FOR PERFORMING URINE BIOCHEMISTRY BY USING CYBOW READER 300

5.5.1 Purpose

This Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) is aimed to describe step by step on how to operate the CYBOW™ **READER 300** semi-automated Urine analyser using Urine sample at the health facilities in Tanzania

5.5.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all staff who works in parasitology section on performing urinalysis test.

5.5.3 Responsibility

A trained, qualified and competent laboratory registered practitioner are responsible for performing this procedure. The head of sections is responsible for ensuring the implementation of this procedure.

5.5.4 Principle

The **CYBOW** reader 300 are reflectance photometer. The strip is illuminated by white light, and the reflected light from the strip is detected by the sensor. The RGB signal is digitized, and this digitized image is interpreted by the processor. The intelligent image analyser SW locates the strip and the pads, and based on this colour data the parameter values are determined. The results including the date and the time of measurement, sequence number and the ID are stored printed out by the internal printer.

5.5.5 Sample Requirements

10-20mls of mild stream urine sample collected in sterile wide mouth container is required for performing this test. **Do not** centrifuge urine sample before bio chemical test.

5.5.6 Equipment

Perfom the **CYBOW^{TM} READER 300** procedure for start-up, maintenance, troubleshooting and shut down the urine analyser as per manufacturer's instrument instruction.

5.5.7 Materials/REAGENTS

Gloves, Marker pen, Laboratory coat, Waste container, Gauze, Urine container and CYBOW strip.

5.5.8 Storage and Stability

Sample, reagents, calibrators and control materials should be stored as per the manufacturer instructions.

5.5.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
- Front cover of machine should be covered during operation to avoid sample contamination.
- Used only power cord specified for CYBOWTM READER 300
- Avoid excessive dust, wet/damp condition and provide proper ventilation.
- Do not wipe the body clean with benzene, thinner, gasoline. This may discolour

5.5.10 Calibration

The calibration of instrument should be done prior to first time use and then the 2nd calibration process is recommended **in every 4 weeks** with calibration strip provided in the package.

5.5.11 Quality Control

Run internal Quality Control samples daily before examing patient samples to ensure quality of examination results. Other conditions that drive controls include:

After a reagent lot number change

After maintenance, component replacement, or a field service action ✓ After a software change ✓ Following calibration. According to regulatory requirements

5.5.12 Procedural Steps

- Check if the urine was received within 1 hour of collection and in a sterile universal container
- Mix the urine by swirling the container and dip a CYBOW strip into urine, making sure that the entire measuring region of the strip is immersed then running strip on instrument.

Mode of running strip on CYBOW™ READER 300

1. General mode • Select the general mode by pressing direction key(◄) and press Enter button to return to the standby mode.

- After the 1st strip dipped in urine and placed on a plate, press start key(►).
- Put 1st-10th (max.) strip on the plate one by one after dipping each in selected urine.
- Once last reagent strip on batch is placed, press Enter button
- After incubation time of the 1st strip, it will start to loading the results of the strip on by one.

2. **One by one mode**
    - Select one by one mode by pressing **Direction** key (◄) and press **Enter** button.
    - After the 1st strip is placed on the loading plate press **start** key (►).
    - Press direction key whenever each of the next strip is placed on the plate one by one.
    - Once last strip is place on strip loading plate, press **Enter** button.
    - After incubation time of the 1ststrip, it start to read and print result of the strip one by one.
3. **Quick mode**
    - Select the quick mode by press direction key(◄) and press **Enter** button
    - Put the strips (incubation is done) once strip loading plate continuously.
    - Once the last strip is placed on the loading plate, press **Enter** button.
    - Test result is shown on the LCD and automatically saved in the memory

5.5.13 Biological Reference Intervals See annex 3.

5.5.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Chemical urinalysis

Report the reading when the immersed strip is compared to the colours on the strips container

Macroscopic examination

Report whether the urine is Clear, Slightly cloudy, Cloudy or turbid. Report the colour of the urine which will range from Light yellow, Yellow, Amber, Red to Brown

Microscopic examination of urine sediment

- **White Blood Cells/Pus Cells/ leucocytes.**
  Report the average number of cells per High Power Field, example 2-5 WBCs/HPF
- **Red Blood Cells**
  Report the average number of cells per High Power Field, example 2-5 RBCs/HPF
- **Casts**
  Identify the type of cast and report as number per High Power Field
- **Crystals**
  Identify the type of crystals and report their presence • **Epithelial cells**
  Identify the type whether squamous, transitional or renal epithelial cells, quantify them and report per high power field. Otherwise report the presence of epithelial cells if can't be identified.
- **Trichomonas Vaginalis**
  Report as "seen" or "not seen"
- **Yeast**
  Report as "seen" or "not seen"
- **Spermatozoa**
  Report for males and not for females

5.5.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Urine samples should be tested within one hour of collection

If any delay happen put the urine sample in the refrigerator to avoid bacterial growth.

Do not use urine dipsticks beyond expiry date

5.5.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure

5.5.17 Supporting Documents

Safety manual and Sample collection manual

5.5.18 References

Manufacturer's Package Insert in multistrips kit

Cheesbrough, Monica Health Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries

Graff's Text Book for Urinalysis and body fluids, Second edition, Lillian A. Mundt and Kristy Shanahan

5.6 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF ALT BY USING DIRUI-DR 7000 CHEMISTRY ANALYZER

5.6.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for determining Alanine Aminotransferase (ALT) using the DIRUI-DR7000 Analyzer

5.6.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Clinical chemistry section for analysing ALT using the DIRUI-DR7000 clinical chemistry Analyzer.

5.6.3 Responsible personnel

Qualified, trained and competent Health Laboratory Assistant technologists, Technologists, and Scientists are responsible for performing this procedure.. The section head of Clinical Chemistry is responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained.

5.6.4 Principle

Kinetic method for the determination of ALT activity according to the recommendations of the Expert Panel of the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry (IFCC). Without pyridoxalphosphate activation. ALT is measured by the reagent rate analysis by the coupled reaction with lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) to reduce NADH (measured at a wavelength of 340nm) to NAD+. The rate of decrease in absorbance at 340 nm due to NADH depletion is proportional to the ALT activity in the sample.

5.6.5 Sample requirement

30µl serum or plasma, sample free from hemolysis.

5.6.6 Equipment

DIRUI DR7000 Semi Automated Chemistry Analyzer, Centrifuge machine

5.6.7 Materials

Reagent Kits, Calibrator/Stsndard, Control Kits (LEVEL I and II), Disposable gloves Laboratory coat, Sample Cups, Reaction Wells, Transfer Pipettes

5.6.8 Storage and stability

Refer to the facility laboratory sample collection manual

5.6.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the facility laboratory Safety manual/IPC guidline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

5.6.10 Calibration

i. Perfom equipment calibration when; - ii. There is a change in the reagent lot number. iii. If the QC result falls outside the acceptable ranges. iv. The machine blinks on the QC-calibration indicating that the calibration is expired.

v. There is a change in the system software
vi. System maintenance/ component replacement procedure is performed

5.6.11 Quality control

QC shluld be performed before patient samples, after calibration of reagent

5.6.12 Procedure Steps

Running the Calibrator, controls or samples;

i. Label the tubes for blank, calibrator, Controls or samples
ii. Prepare the working reagents as indicated by the industrial manufacturer
iii. Pipette the working reagents R1 480µl into the labelled tubes
iv. Pipette 30µl of distilled water into the tube labelled blank.
v. Incubate for 300s
vi. Add 120µl of R2 reagent
vii. Incubate for 60s
viii. Read the result

5.6.13 Biological reference intervals See annex 4.

5.6.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

Perfomed results will be displayed on the machine screen

Result reporting

Once all of the results are accepted or validated, a final report will automatically be printed out.

5.6.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Hemolyed, lipemic samples, icterus and anticoagulants such as citrate, oxalate and fluoride (for other tests except Glucose) and drugs such as hydroxocobalamin and Cephalosporin antibiotics.

5.6.16 Performance Characteristics Refer to the verification report

5.6.17 Supporting document

Sample collection manual, quality manual

5.6.18 References

DIRUI-DR7000 Chemistry analyser user manual

5.7 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF AST BY USING DIRUI-DR7000 CHEMISTRY ANALYZER

5.7.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for determining ASAT using the DIRUI-DR7000 Analyzer

5.7.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Clinical chemistry section of the user when performing blood analysis using the DIRUI-DR7000 clinical chemistry Analyzer

5.7.3 Responsibility

The section head of Clinical Chemistry is responsible for ensuring this procedure is effectively implemented and maintained.

5.7.4 Principle

Kinetic method for the determination of Aspartat-Aminotransferase (AST) activity according to the recommendations of the Expert Panel of the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry (IFCC). Without pyridoxalphosphate activation. AST is measured by the reagent rate analysis by the coupled reaction with Malate dehydrogenase (MDH) to reduce NADH (measured at a wavelength of 340nm) to NAD+. The rate of decrease in absorbance at 340 nm due to NADH depletion is proportional to the AST activity in the sample.

5.7.5 Sample Requirements

Serum or plasma, sample free from hemolysis and not contaminated

5.7.6 Equipment

DIRUI DR7000 Semi Automated Chemisry Analyzer•

Cleaning and Maintenance

i. Use a large amount of distilled water to rinse the tubing by click the rinse interface.
ii. And drain the liquid from the tubing if necessary. iii. Remove the waste liquid bottle from the back of the analyzer. iv. Keep the instrument vertical during move and transport.
v. Try best to avoid vibration. vi. And check and debug the instrument before use.

5.7.7 Materials

Reagent Kits, Calibrator/Standard,Control Kits (LEVEL I and II), Supplies, Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat, Sample Cups, Reaction Wells and Transfer Pipettes

5.7.8 Storage and Stability

- Reagent Should be kept at temperature of 2-8°C and sealed in dry place without sunshine. The shelf life is 18 months .
- Under condition of 2-8°C, the open vial stability is 30 days

5.7.9 Safety

Personnel Protective Equipment must be worn at all times and samples must be treated as potentially infectious.

5.7.10 Calibration

It is suggested to use supplementary calibrator as instructed. When lot number is changed or QC is invalid, calibration shall be conducted again. Procedures for reagent, Calibration, QC and Sample preparation

5.7.11 Quality Control

It is suggested to use QC products produced by DIRUI.

5.7.12 Procedural steps

i. Label the tubes for blank, calibrator, Controls or samples
ii. Prepare the working reagents as indicated by the industrial manufacturer
iii. Pipette the working reagents R1 480µl into the labelled tubes
iv. Pipette 30µl of distilled water into the tube labelled blank.
v. Incubate for 300s

vi. Add 120µl of R2 reagent
vii. Incubate for 60s
viii. Read the results

5.7.13 Biological Reference Intervals.

See annex 4.

5.7.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Reporting of results

Results are automatically printed from the machine Attach results printout with report form.

5.7.15 Limitations of the procedure and sources of error. Gross hemolysis, Lipemic AND Icterus sample

5.7.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer verification report

5.7.17 Supporting Documents

Equipment Maintenance Form.

18.0 References

DIRUI DR7000 Analyser operator's manual

National standard guard line for Health Laboratory 2007 Edition

5.8 PROCEDURE FOR SA-30 SEMI AUTOMATED CHEMISTRY ANALYZER

5.8.1 Purpose

This Procedure describes step by step on how to operate the SA-30 a semiautomated chemistry analyser to perform basic chemistry tests using human serum, plasma or cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) sample.

5.8.2 Scope it is applied in testing biochemistry parameters using human serum or plasma sample in the biochemistry department/section.

5.8.3 Responsibility

All qualified, trained and competent laboratory scientist, laboratory technologists and assistant laboratory technologists are responsible for performing this procedure. The head of section of biochemistry is responsible of ensuring the implementation of this procedure.

5.8.4 Principle

The principle of the instrument is based on the phenomenon of different wave band absorbance from substance, which is in line with Lambert-Bill Law.

(The greater the concentration of the sample, the more light is absorbed, the less light is transmitted, and the darker of the color)

5.8.5 Sample Requirements

The 2 - 4ml of whole blood collected in plain tube (red top) for serum or EDTA (purple top) for plasma or in heparinized tube free from hemolysis. Cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) when required.

5.8.6 Equipment

SA-30 semi- automated chemistry analyser, Centrifuge

5.8.7 Materials

Micropipettes and tips, Marker pen, Thermal paper and PPE

5.8.8 Storage and Stability

i. Store serum/plasma at room temperature 25 – 35 °C for 8 hours

ii. Tested sample stored at 2 -8 °C to 7 days. iii. Store reagent,calibrator and controls per manufacture recommendation

5.8.9 Safety

Treat all Samples and control materials as infectious material and should be handled careful as per IPC guidelines

5.8.10 Calibration

Quality Control procedure is the same as analytic procedure of unknown sample

(Use Randox Calibrator (pipette 500µl of reagent to tube and add 25µl calibrator mix gently and incubate at 37^0C for 8-10 minutes for end point test method, no need of extra incubation for kinetics method)

5.8.11 Quality Control

Quality Control procedure is the same as analytic procedure of unknown sample (Use Randox QC ,pipette 500µl of reagent to tube and add 25µl control mix gently and incubate at 37C for 8- 10 minutes end point test method, no need of extra incubation for kinetics test method)

5.8.12 Procedural Steps

i. Prepare for sample and reagent. ii. For End point test method, Add R1 + R2 + Sample in ratio and mix thoroughly and incubate at 37℃ for 8 – 10 Min (refer to reagent user manual)

iii. For kinetics test method, Add R1 + R2 + Sample in ratio and mix thoroughly, no need of extra incubation**.**

iv. For HDL, LDL add R1 + Sample in in ratio, mix them thoroughly incubate at 37℃ in 2 min then add R2 and incubated them in 5-7 Min,

v. Click “Test” on main menu to enters next page to start testing.

vi. Press PUSH button to aspirate distilled water, to calibrate AD value. The AD value should be 45000 to 60000.

vii. Click “Continue” to test reagent blank. viii. Select “YES” to aspirate reagent blank to test reagent blank absorbance.

ix. Press PUSH button to aspirate reagent blank to test reagent blank absorbance.

x. Click “Continue” to test STD

xi. Select “NO”, device will use last factor and perform the sample test directly. Select “YES”, device will aspirate standard to test STD xii. Press PUSH button to aspirate standard, then device will test standard absorbance and calculate factor automatically

xiii. Click “Continue” to next to test the sample directly or perform control test. xiv. Press PUSH button to aspirate sample or control, then device will test the sample or control and display test result automatically

5.8.13 Biological Reference Intervals See annex 4.

5.8.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Interpretation

i. If the result of the particular parameter lies within the established reference range, it means that the patient has normal particular parameter.

ii. If the result of the particular parameter lies below or above the established reference range, it means that the patient has abnormal particular parameter and requires intervention as per the clinical history and the laboratory findings. **Reporting results**

Report the results as they are displayed on the screen of the machine

5.8.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

i. Avoid using the haemolysed and lipemic sample as this will cause falsely elevated values. In this case inform the requesting physician and ask for another sample.

ii. Avoid exposure of the freshly dissolved substrate to strong sunlight, since the reagent is light sensitive. The change in absorbance will increase with an increase in temperature, since the pH of the reagent will be different at different temperatures
iii. Serum must be separated by centrifugation as soon as possible after collection of the patient's blood sample, preferably <2 hours, otherwise, phosphate present in erythrocytes will be released into the serum causing falsely elevated values
iv. Grossly bloody CSF may give spuriously elevated values. Undue delay in analysis may give low values. The report to the requesting physician should include the appearance of the CSF before and after centrifugation.

5.8.16 Performance Characteristics Refer to method verification report

5.8.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual, Safety manual, Quality manual

5.8.18 References

SA-30 semi automated chemistry analyser user manual

5.9 PROCEDURE FOR OPERATING CLINDIAG FA 200 CHEMISTRY TEST

5.9.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for determining basic Chemistry tests using Clindiag FA 200 analyzer.

5.9.2 Scope

This procedure is used at Clinical chemistry section for processing basic chemistry tests using Clindiag FA 200 analyzer.

5.9.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained Health Laboratory Personnel are responsible for doing this test procedure.

5.9.4 Principle

The test principle of the biochemistry analyser is mainly based on the lambert Beer law.

The reagents and the samples to be tested are mixed at a certain proportion. The mixture is placed in a calorimetric dish at a certain temperature for incubation, its

absorption of light of specific wavelength is continuously measured, and finally the concentration of the measured substance is automatically calculated according to the value of absorbance (change).The procedure uses **Lambert Beers Law** which state that the absorptive capacity of a dissolved substance is direct proportional to its concentration to the solution.

5.9.5 Sample Requirements

Serum is most preferred sample

Refer to the facility Laboratory sample collection manual.

5.9.6 Equipment

Clindiag FA200 Chemistry analyser.

5.9.7 Materials

Reagent kits, cleaning solution, HD- high efficiency cleaning agent, Sample cups, Calibrators and controls, Gloves, Laboratory coat, A4 paper, Micropipette, Micropipette tips

5.9.8 Storage and Stability

Samples are stored at 2-8^{o}C after testing for 3days.

5.9.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual. ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iv. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health care.

v. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.

vi. Do not use kit beyond the expiration date. vii. Do not reuse the test device. viii. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

5.9.10 Calibration

Machine should be calibrated when

- There is a change in the reagent lot number.
- If the QC result falls outside the acceptable ranges.
- There is a change in the system software
- System maintenance/ component replacement procedure is performed

5.9.11 Quality Control

Follow the following steps to run internal Quality Control.sample i. Click on task.

ii. Click on add Quality control(QC.)
iii. Click on ADD
iv. Select QC batch number.
v. Select a QC item in QC list
vi. Select type of container
vii. Input the position of QC material on the sample plate
viii. Click on OK
ix. Allow the amchine to perfom test till final results

5.9.12 Procedural Steps

i. Click Task
ii. Click Add sample
iii. Click ADD
iv. Enter patient information
v. Select the test item
vi. Select the sample cup number
vii. Click OK
viii. Click Test on left side ix. Select test sample
x. Then click start test
xi. When sample processing is complete, Select the results from the menu bar, patient result review will display, select name of patient on the left side.
xii. All the undone tests will be shown on the results as NA with a reason on the right side. xiii. Re-running patient sample, repeat the patient order with no change in a sample cup number

5.9.13 Biological Reference Intervals See annex 4.

5.9.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Results interpretation

Click on <Results> then <sample Results>. The results appear on the computer screen, from here you can select the desired results and release them.

Reporting of the results

To print the results, select the sample interface in browse result and click print the test results. Results. **Critical results**

Critical results should be immediately communicated to the clinicians requested the examination. Refer to the annex …. For more details on critical results for clinical chemistry assays.

5.9.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Do not proces hemolysed samples as they might lead to falsely high results of potassium and low results for glucose.

Samples for glucose investigation should be processed within 2 hours of collection; any delay would cause falsely low results.

Potential operator errors and clindiag FA 200 system technology limitations.

Communicate the following Panic/Critical values to the clinicians

5.9.16 Performance Characteristics

Method verification of this procedure should be done and that the report should be referred to verify compliance to this requirement.

5.9.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

5.9.18 References

Refer to equipment instruction manual Clindiag FA 200

5.10 PROCEDURE FOR DETERMINATION OF IMMUNOASSAYS BY USING GETEIN 1100 IMMUNOANALYSER

5.10.1 Purpose

This procedure provides description on determination of immunoassays by using Getein 1100 Immunofluorescence Quantitative analyser.

5.10.2 Scope

This procedure is used for processing and analysis of immunol assay tests in the biochemistry department/section at the hospital laboratory.

5.10.3 Responsibility

A qualified,trained and competent laboratory scientist, laboratory technologists and assistant laboratory technologists are responsible for performing this procedure. The head of section of biochemistry is responsible of ensuring the implementation of this procedure.

5.10.4 Principle

The detection element scans the binding area and converts the optical signal to electrical signal. The voltage variation between the test line and background has a

linear relationship with the antigen concentration which can be used to calculate the concentration. In conclusion the antigen concentration in whole blood, plasma, serum, urine can be calculated quantitatively according to optical signal of the test line.

5.10.5 Sample Requirements

The 2 - 4ml of whole blood collected in plain tube (red top) for serum or EDTA (purple top) for plasma or in heparinized tube free from hemolysis. urine sample will be collected in urine container if required.

5.10.6 Equipment

Getein1100 Immunofluorescence Analyzer, stop watch

5.10.7 Materials

Disposable gloves, Micropipettes and its tips, Containers for waste segregation, Marker pen, Getein test card

5.10.8 Storage and Stability

Store unproceesed samples at room temperature for 12 hours. Store performed samples at 2 - 8°c up to 7 days.

Calibrator, controls and test kit devices should be stored as per manufactures instruction

5.10.9 Safety

i. Samples and control materials should be treated as infectious material ii. Worn PPE all of the time while working

5.10.10 Calibration

Calibration of the assay should be peformed as per manufacturer instruction.

5.10.11 Quality Control

Use commercial available controls or inhouse controls to run QC as per schedule

5.10.12 Procedural Steps

i. Refer to the user manual or material data sheet to specific items including reaction time and sample volume carefully for accurate information
ii. Add patient information including ID, name, age, gender, types of sample and test mode to be used
iii. Click start after inserting the card, test item will be auto-recognized and the result will be shown on the screen. User can also see the voltage waveform by slide to the left side

iv. Normally, the test card will auto-quit after testing if not please click on “Quit” icon to quit manually

5.10.13 Biological Reference Intervals See annex 4.

5.10.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Interpretation of results

If the result of the particular parameter lie within established reference range, it means that the patient has normal particular parameter

If the results of the particular parameter lie below or above established reference range, it means that the patient has abnormal particular parameter and requires intervention as per the clinical history and the laboratory finding**.**

Reporting of results

Report the result as they are displayed on the screen of the machine.

5.10.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Only used for in vitro analysis of human whole blood, serum, plasma, urine or stool freezed samples can not be used for testing due to loss of enzyme or hormone activities

5.10.16 Performance Characteristics

Reffer to verification report.

5.10.17 Supporting Documents

- Sample collection manual
- Material data sheet or reagent manual
- Safety manual

5.10.18 References

Getein 1100 user manual

5.11 PROCEDURE FOR OPERATING FIA 8000 ANALYSER

5.11.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for operating FIA 8000 Quantitative Immunoassay Analyzer for biomarkers.

5.11.2 Scope

This FIA8000 is an analyzer that used to measure biomarkers in human whole blood, serum, plasma or urine samples.

5.11.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent registered Health Laboratory practititioners are responsible for doing this test procedure. The head of section of chemistry is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure.

5.11.4 Principle

The combination of the antigensin the sample, the gold-labelantibodyin the colloidal gold pad or nitrocellulose membrane, and theantibody pre-coated on the test linecan form a purplish red streak on the test line. The colour intensity of the test lineis proportionate to the quantity of antigens detectedin the sample. The analysersystem can obtain the photo-electric signal intensity of the complexby scanning the test line with a photo-electric component. Then the voltage difference between the voltage of the test line and the background is obtained. The voltagedifference has a linear relationship with the antigen concentrationwhichcan be used to calculate the antigen concentration. The relationship has been established and varying from the measured parameter. In conclusion, the antigen concentration in whole blood, plasma, serum, urine can be calculated quantitatively in one-step according to the colour intensity of the test line.

5.11.5 Sample Requirements Centrifuged Serum and plasma

5.11.6 Equipment

FIA 8000 Quantitative Immunoassay Analyzer

5.11.7 Materials

Test kit, Power source, Printing paper, QC Card, QC SD, Gloves

5.11.8 Storage and Stability

Fresh sample is preferred however if can not be done sample can be stored at 2-8ºC not more than 3days.

5.11.9 Safety

i. Decontaminate working surfaces twice daily, in the morning and afternoon ii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

iii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

iv. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
v. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
vi. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution
vii. Decontaminate the biohazpus waste before disposal.

5.11.10 Calibration

Perfom equipment calibration when; -

i. There is a change in the reagent lot number.
ii. If the QC result falls outside the acceptable ranges.
iii. The machine blinks on the QC-calibration indicating that the calibration is expired.
iv. There is a change in the system software
v. System maintenance/ component replacement procedure is performed

5.11.11 Quality Control

Quality Control (QC) card should be run before processing patient sample for each day

5.11.12 Procedural Steps

i. Centrifuge collected whole blood samples to obtain serum or plasma.
ii. Mix urine samples thoroughly before testing. iii. Allow samples to reach room temperature before testing. iv. Turn on the analyser and select the test.
v. Touch the screen to turn on the analyzer.
vi. Select the test you want to perform from the list of available tests.
vii. Insert the test card. viii. Open the test card slot.
ix. Carefully insert the test card into the slot, making sure that the arrows on the test card are pointing in the same direction as the arrows on the analyzer.
x. Close the test card slot.
xi. Add the sample. xii. Follow the on-screen instructions to add the sample to the test card. Be careful not to overfill the sample well.
xiii. Touch the screen to start the test. xiv. The analyzer will automatically begin to process the sample. xv. Read the results. xvi. The analyzer will automatically read the results and display them on the screen.
xvii. The results may be displayed in a variety of formats, such as quantitative results, qualitative results, or graphs.

5.11.13 Biological Reference Intervals See annex 4.

5.11.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Interpretation of results

Interpretate results based on the Biological reference interval.

Normal results are patient results which fall within the reference range for the particular test. Abnormal results are those that fall below or above the reference range. The test report is labeled H: High and L: Low to show the abnormality obtained.

Reporting of results

Report the obtained and displayed results in request form/register **Critical results** See annex 5.

5.11.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Haemolyzed sample should not be used since the color changes caused by haemolysis may result to wrong results. Refer to package insert for interfering substances for specific test

5.11.16 Performance Characteristics Refer to the method verification report.

5.11.17 Supporting Documents Sample collection manual

5.11.18 References

User manual for FIA 8000 Analyser.

5.12 PROCEDURE FOR OPERATING ALERE AFFINION AS100ANALYSER

5.12.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to provide instructions on how to operate ALERE AFFINION AS100 analyser for HbA1c, Lipid panel and C - reactive protein.

5.12.2 Scope

This procedure is used in Clinical chemistry section for processing HbA1c,Lipid panel and C-Reactive Protein.

5.12.3 Responsibility

A trained, qualified and competent laboratory registered practitioners are responsible for performing this procedure. The head of section for chemistry is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure .

5.12.4 Principle

A Test Cartridge with patient sample or control is placed in the cartridge chamber of the Analyzer. By manually closing the lid, the Test Cartridge is transported into the analysis compartment of the Analyzer. Test and lot-specific information is obtained from the barcode label (Figure 2). When the Test Cartridge enters the Analyzer, the integrated camera reads the barcode. The calibration data for the actual lot are read, which then initiates the processing of the Test Cartridge. The sample and reagents are automatically transferred between the wells. An integrated camera monitors the entire process. Light-emitting diodes (LEDs) illuminate the reaction area, which can be either a colored membrane or a reaction well. The camera detects the reflected or transmitted light, which is converted to a test result and displayed on the touch screen. When the user accepts the result, the lid covering the cartridge chamber opens automatically and the used Test Cartridge can be removed and discarded. The Analyzer is then ready for the next run.

5.12.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood/Serum / plasma as specified in the reagents insert or as stated in the sample collection manual.

5.12.6 Equipment

Alere Affinion AS100

5.12.7 Materials

Test cartridge, Calibrators, Controls, PPEs, Pipette tips 100 -200ul, Pipette tips 100, 1000ul, Sample container rack, waste bin

5.12.8 Storage and Stability

- Test cartridge should be stored in refrigerator at 2-8^{o}C in sealed foil pouches and only stable until expiration date. If not refrigerated they can be stored at room temperature(15-25^{o}C) for four weeks.
- Test cartridges should not be exposed to direct sunlight at relative humidity below 90%.
- Whole blood samples can be stored refrigerate at 2-8^{o} C for 3 days. Plasma and serum samples can be refrigerated for 10 days or frozen up 1 year if the tubes are properly sealed.

5.12.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guidline

ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

5.12.10 Calibration

Perform calibration as per Alere Afinion™ AS100 user manual.

5.12.11 Quality Control

Quality control should be done as prescribed in the quality management procedure. Use commercial or in-house made quality control materials to perform on daily basis before testing patient samples. Commercially available quality materials should be used to verify performance of the procedure at least after 100 patient samples have been tested. Lot to lot verification should also be used to check performance acceptability of reagents.

5.12.12 Procedural Steps Analyzing a patient/control sample

1		Touch to enter the patient sample mode. Touch to enter the control mode. A “C” in the upper lef corner indicates that the Analyzer is in the control mode. The lid opens automatically. *If the lid is left open from the previous run and “Insert Cartridge is displayed, this step is omitted and you can start with step 2.*
2		Insert the Test Cartridge with the barcode label facing left. *Be sure that the Test Cartridge is correctly placed in the cartridge chamber.*
3		Close the lid manually. The Analyzer will start processing the Test Cartridge. *The processing time depends on the test in use.*
4		Touch and enter the patient ID. Touch to confirm. Touch and enter the control ID or Alere Afinion™ Contro Data. Touch to confirm. *Entering the patient ID, control ID or Alere Afinion™ Control Data will not interrupt the processing.*

5		Record the result, then touch ✓ to accept. If a printer is connected, touch  to print the result. The lid opens automatically. *The result will be saved in the result records.*
6		Remove the used Test Cartridge from the cartridge chamber and discard it in a suitable waste container. Insert a new Test Cartridge or close the lid manually. *Keep the lid closed to protect the cartridge chamber when the Analyzer is not in use.*

5.12.13 Biological Refences See annex 4.

***5.12.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results* Interpretation of results**

- Interpretation of results is based on the Biological reference interval;
- Normal results are patient results which fall within the reference range for the particular test.
- Abnormal results are those that fall below or above the reference range.

Reporting of Results

Report the displayed/printed results into register/request form

5.12.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Icteric samples that appears with yellow colour of the serum or plasma due to bilirubin accumulation.
ii. Samples tested after 24 hours may give unreliable results Avoid using lipemic samples

5.12.16 Performance Characteristics Refer the method verification reports .

5.12.17 Supporting Document

i. Sample Collection Manual, Safety Manual, Quality Manual

5.12.18 References

ALERE AFFINION AS100analyzer user manual

Manufacturer package insert

CHAPTER SIX: SEROLOGY

6.1 PROCEDURE FOR SYPHILIS ANTIBODIES RAPID TEST

6.1.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for Qualitative detection of antibodies of all isotopes against *Treponema pallidum*

6.1.2 Scope

The procedure is used in all Laboratory areas for screening syphilis infection

6.1.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained Medical Laboratory Technicians, Technologists and Scientist are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.1.4 Principle

The syphilis Ab Rapid test strip (Serum/plasma) is a lateral flow chromatographic immunoassay based on the Principle of the double antigens–sandwich technique, In this test syphilis recombinant antigen is immobilized in the test line region of the strip test device, After sample is added to the sample well of the device it react with syphilis recombinant antigen coated particles in the test. This mixture migrates chromatographically along the length of the test strip and interacts with immobilized syphilis antigens.

If the sample contains syphilis antibodies a coloured line will appear in the test line region indicating positive results. If the sample does not contain syphilis antibodies a coloured line will not appear in the region, indicating a negative result

6.1.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood/plasma sample in purple tube (EDTA) Serum from clotted blood sample in plain tube**.**

6.1.6 Equipment

Centrifuge, Timer, Micropipette

Maintenance

Maintenance of the equipment should be performed as per schedule

6.1.7 Materials

Reagents	**Consumables**
Syphilis Ab Rapid Test Strips kit Known Positive control, Known Negative control	Marker pen Examination Gloves

6.1.8 Storage and Stability

- The kit should be stored at 2-30 ^{o}C until the expiry date printed on the sealed pouch or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- Do not freeze the kit or exposing it over 30^{0}C.
- Store Serum and plasma sample at 2-8^{0}C for up to 3 days.
- For long term storage, serum/plasma should be kept below -20^{o}C

6.1.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
ii. All personnel protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.1.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment as per calibration schedule

6.1.11 Quality Control

A known Negative and Positive in-house controls once every week and whenever a new kit is opened.

6.1.12 Procedural Steps

i. Bring the test kit and sample to room temperate before use.
ii. Remove the test from its sealed pouch, and use it as soon as possible.
iii. Place the test strip on a clean, dry flat surface
iv. Label the test strip with the Patient ID
v. For serum or plasma sample;
vi. Hold the dropper vertically and transfer 2 drops of serum or plasma (approximately 60µl) onto the sample pad of the test strip.
vii. Read test results in 15 minutes. Do not interpret results after 15 minutes. viii. For whole blood sample; ix. Hold the dropper vertically and transfer 2 drops of whole blood (approximately 50ul) onto the sample pad of the test strip.
x. Then add 1 drop of buffer (approximately 30ul) and start the timer.

xi. Read test results in 15 minutes. xii. Do not interpret test results after 15 minutes

6.1.13 Biological Reference Interval Not applicable

6.1.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results Interpretation of results

Negative - Only one coloured band appears on the control(C) region. No apparent band on the test (T) region

Positive - In addition to a pink coloured control (C) band, a distinct pink coloured band will also appear in the tests (T) region

Invalid – a total absence of colour in both regions or no coloured line appears on the control (C) region is an indication of procedure error or the tests deterioration. Repeat the test with a new kit. **Reporting of results**

Report results as: Syphilis - Negative or syphilis – Positive **Critical value**

Not applicable

6.1.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. The syphilis Ab rapid test strip should be stored at room temperature (15-30°c) ii. Humidity and temperature can adversely affect results.
iii. Do not use test if pouch is damaged or broken
iv. Do not use it beyond expiration date.
v. Do not perform the test in a room with strong air flow. i.e. an electric fan strong air-condition
vi. Test is for single use only. Do not re use test.

6.1.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacture kit insert for specificity and sensitivity.

6.1.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual, Safety manual

6.1.18 References

Manufacturer Kit insert for syphilis

6.2 PROCEDURE FOR (HIV) TESTING BY USING BIOLINETM HIV 1/2 3.0 TEST

6.2.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to describe the method of performing Bio line HIV1/HIV-2 rapid test assay.

6.2.2 Scope

This procedure is applicable to all HIV-1/HIV-2 rapid test using Bio line HIV-1/HIV-2

6.2.3 Responsibility

Qualified, registered, licenced and trained Medical personnel are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head of Serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.2.4 Principle

SD Bioline HIV-1/HIV-2 is a rapid HIV qualitative immune-chromatographic assay used to detect antibodies to HIV in human blood, serum or plasma as the sample had been added to sample pad. As the sample migrates through the conjugate pad, it reconstitutes and mixes with the selenium colloid-antigen conjugate. This mixture continues to migrate through the solid phase to the immobilized recombinant antigens and synthetic peptides at the sample window site. If antibodies to HIV-1 and/or HIV-2 are present in the sample, the antibodies bind to the antigen-selenium colloid and to the antigen at the client window, forming a red line at the client window site. If antibodies to HIV-1 and/or HIV-2 are absent, the antigen selenium colloid flow past the client window and no red line is formed at the client window site.

6.2.5 Sample Requirements

2-3mls Whole blood/plasma/ serum

6.2.6 Equipment

Timer, Centrifuge, Micropipette, Refrigerator.

Maintenance

Maintenance of equipment should be performed as per schedule

6.2.7 Materials

Abbott Bioline TM HIV 1/2 3.0 Test/kit, Assay diluent, Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat

6.2.8 Storage and Stability

The test kit should be stored at a temperature between 1^{o}C and 30^{o}C or as per manufacturer claims

Whole blood; If the blood sample is not immediately tested, it should be refrigerated at 2-8^{0}C for 3days

Plasma or serum; If plasma or serum sample is not tested immediately, it should be refrigerated at 2-8^{0}C for 7 days

For storage period longer than 2week, freezing below -20^{0}C is required. They should be brought to room temperature 15-30^{0}C prior to use.

6.2.9 Safety

Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the facility Safety manual /IPC guideline

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infectious.

6.2.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment as per calibration schedule

6.2.11 Quality Control

Run known Negative and Positive in-house controls daily before performing patient samples or when new test kit is opened.

6.2.12 Procedure Steps

i. Bring reagents and samples to room temperature before use. ii. Tear off the desired number of test strips from the 10-test card by bending and tearing off along the perforated line.

iii. Label the strips with sample identification number or patient/client identification number.

iv. Peel the foil cover from the reagent area of the test strips.

For serum or plasma samples;

v. Apply 10 µl of sample using a precision pipette to the sample pad (marked by the arrow symbol).

vi. In the absence of precision pipette apply 1 drop of sample using plastic Pasteur pipette provided by manufacture in the kit.

vii. Then apply 4 drop of buffer to the sample pad. viii. Wait for a 10 to 20 minutes and read results.

For whole blood collected by finger prick method; ix. Apply 20 µl of sample (collected by EDTA capillary tube) to the sample pad (marked by the arrow symbol).

x. In the absence of precision pipette or EDTA capillary tube, apply 1 drop of sample using plastic Pasteur pipette provided by manufacture in the kit.

xi. then apply 4 drops of buffer to the sample pad. Wait for 10 to 20 minutes and read results.

For whole blood collected by venepuncture method; xii. Apply 20 µl of sample using a precision pipette to the sample pad (marked by the arrow symbol).

xiii. Then apply four (4) drops of buffer to the sample pad.

xiv. Wait for 10 minutes (up to 20 minutes) and read results.

6.2.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not applicable

6.2.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Result interpretation

Negative Result

The presence of only control line(C) within the result window indicate a negative result

Positive Result

The presence of two lines as C and T -1(1) within the window indicates positive results for HIV-1

The presence of two lines as C and T -2 (2) within the window indicates positive results for HIV-2

The presence of three lines as C, T-1(1) and T-2(2) within the result window indicates a positive result for HIV-1 and/or HIV -2

Invalid results

No presence of control line (C) or/and pink/purple band observed in the result window Indicate an invalid result. The direction may not have been followed correctly or the test may have deteriorated. It is recommended that the sample be retested.

Reporting of results

i. Reactive test Results will be reported as POSITIVE

ii. Non-reactive test results will be reported as NEGATIVE

Critical value

Not applicable

6.2.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- Avoid haemolysed sample and beware of lipemic samples
- Samples other than blood have not been validated to give accurate results.
- Intensity of the patient bar does not necessarily correlate to the titre of antibody
- A negative result with BIOLINE HIV-1/2 does not exclude the possibility of an infection with HIV.

6.2.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

6.2.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection Manual, HIV rapid testing algorithm

6.2.18 References

Package insert Abbott Bioline ^{TM} HIV-1/2 3.0

6.3 PROCEDURE FOR PERFORMING (HIV) BY USING UNIGOLD TEST

6.3.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to describe the method of testing HIV-1and HIV-2 using Trinity Biotech Uni-Gold test assay.

6.3.2 Scope

This procedure is applicable in all sites that perform Trinity Biotech Uni-Gold HIV test

6.3.3 Responsibility

Qualified, registered, licenced and trained Medical personnel are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.3.4 Principle

Recombinant proteins representing the immune-dominant regions of the envelope proteins of HIV-1 and HIV-2, glycoprotein gp-41, gp120 (HIV-1) and glycoprotein gp36 (HIV-2) respectively are immobilized at the test region of the nitrocellulose strip. These proteins are also linked to colloidal gold and impregnated below the test region of the device. A narrow band of the nitrocellulose membrane is also sensitized as a control

region. Antibodies to HIV-1 and HIV-2 react with the colloidal gold linked antigens. The antibody protein-colloidal gold complex moves chromatographically along the membrane to the test and control regions of the test device.

6.3.5 Sample Requirements

Whole blood/plasma sample collected in purple tube (EDTA)

Serum from clotted blood sample in plain tube

Centrifuge sample at 3000rpm for 5 minutes to obtain serum of plasma.

6.3.6 Equipment

Stop watch, Micropipette, Centrifuge, refrigerator

6.3.7 Materials

Uni-Gold™ HIV test-kit, Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat, 70% alcohol

6.3.8 Storage and stability

Uni-Gold™ HIV test device and wash solution should be stored between 2-27^{0}C or as per manufacturer instructions

Whole blood sample should be stores at 2-8^{0}C for up to 3 days at -20^{0}C or below

6.3.9 Safety

- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.3.10 Calibration

Perform equipment calibration as per Schedule

6.3.11 Quality Control

Run known Negative and Positive in-house controls once a week.

The test strips contain a control line, which turns colored if the run is valid.

6.3.12 Procedure Steps

i. Bring reagents and samples to room temperature at least 20 minutes before use.
ii. Remove the test device from its protective wrapper. iii. Label the device with sample identification number or patient/client identification number.
iv. Peel the foil cover from the reagent area of the test strips.

v. For serum or plasma or whole blood collected by finger prick or venipuncture samples;
vi. Using one of the disposable pipettes supplied with the kit, fill it with the sample.
vii. Holding the pipette over the sample port, add two drops of sample (approximately 60 µl) carefully to the sample port of the test device.
viii. Add two drops (approximately 60 µl) of wash reagent to sample port and start the timer.
ix. Wait for a minimum of 10 minutes (up to 12 minutes) and read results

6.3.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not Applicable

6.3.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Results interpretation Reactive test results

Two pink/red lines of the intensity in the device window, the first adjacent to letter 'T' (test) and the second adjacent to 'C' (control). **Non – reactive test results**

A pink/red line of the intensity adjacent to the letter 'C' (control). But no pink/red line adjacent to 'T' (test) this indicates a Non-Reactive result. **Invalid results**

No pink/red line appears in the device window adjacent to the letter "C" (control) irrespective of weather or not a pink /red line appears in the device window adjacent to "T" (test). This is an **INVALID** result that cannot be interpreted. An invalid result must be repeated

Results reporting

- **Reactive test results:** Report as **HIV TEST POSITIVE**
- **Non-reactive test results-**repeat 1st and 2nd tests following the national HIV testing algorithm
- If the test results are still discordant report - **INCONCLUSIVE** then inform the patient for retesting after 14 days
- If after 14 days, the test is still discordant report - **INCONCLUSIVE**

Collect fresh venous blood sample, refer the sample for ELISA testing

Critical Values Not Applicable

6.3.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Avoid hemolyzed sample and beware of lipemic samples when interpreting results.

ii. The BIOLINE HIV-1/2 test is designed to detect antibodies to HIV-1 and HIV-2 in human serum, plasma and whole blood. Other body fluids or pooled samples may not give accurate results.
iii. Intensity of the patient bar does not necessarily correlate to the titer of antibody in the sample. iv. A negative result with BIOLINE HIV-1/2 does not exclude the possibility of an infection with HIV.

6.3.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report

6.3.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

HIV rapid testing algorithm

6.3.18 References

Manufacture package insert (Trinity Biotech Uni-Gold HIV)

6.4 PROCEDURE FOR URINE PREGNANCY TEST

6.4.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for Qualitative detection of HCG in urine

6.4.2 Scope

The procedure is used in the serology section in detection of pregNot applicablency

6.4.3 Responsibility

Qualified,trained and competent Medical Laboratory Technicians, Technologists and scientist are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.4.4 Principle

The Human Chorionic GoNot applicabledotropin One Step PregNot applicablency Test Strip (urine) is rapid chromatographic immunoassay for the qualitative detection of Human Chorionic GoNot applicabledotropin in urine to aid in early detection of pregNot applicablency. The test uses two lines to indicate results. The test line is pre coated with a monocloNot applicablel Human Chorionic GoNot applicabledotropin antibody to selectively detect elevated level of Human Chorionic GoNot applicabledotropin. The control line is pre coated with goat anti-mouse IgG antibody.

The test also includes a burgundy coloured conjugate paid containing another monocloNot applicablel HCG antibody conjugated with colloidal gold. The assay is conducted by immersing the test strip in a urine sample and observing the formation of coloured lines .The sample migrate via capillary action along the membrane to reach with coloured conjugate. Positive sample reacts with the specific antibody HCG coloured conjugate to form a coloured line at the test line region of the membrane. Absence of this coloured line suggest a negative results

6.4.5 Sample requirements

Fresh Urine collected from either morning,evining or any other time

6.4.6 Equipment

Stop watch

Refrigerator

6.4.7 Materials

Reagents	Consumables
HCG test kit	Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat

6.4.8 Storage and stability

Test strips reagent are stable at 2 to 30^{o} C up to expiration date or as per manufacturer instruction

If sample canot be tested within 1 hour of collection, it should be stored at 2 - 8^{o}C for 24hrs

6.4.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline. ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.4.10 Calibration

Perform equipment calibration as per schedule

6.4.11 Quality control

Run known Negative and Positive in-house controls (known patient or EQA sample) once a week or when the new kit is opened

6.4.12 Procedure Steps

i. Remove the test strip from the sealed pouch and use it as soon as possible.
ii. With arrow pointing towards the urine sample immerse the test strip vertically in the urine sample for at least 10 to 15 seconds. Do not pass the maximum line (MAX) on the test strip when immersing the strip.
iii. Place the test strip(s) on the non absorbent flat surface, start the timer and wait for the colored line(s) to appear. The results should be ready in 5 minutes.

6.4.13 Biological reference intervals

Not applicable

6.4.14 Interpretation and reporting of results

Results interpretation

POSITIVE: two distinct colored lines appear. One line should be the control line region (C) and another line should be on test line region (T).

NEGATIVE: one colored line appears in control line region (C) no apparent colored line appears in the first line (T).

INVALID: control line fails to appear in both the control region. **Reporting of results**

Report results as PregNot applicablency test Negative or PregNot applicablency test Positive.

6.4.15 Limitations of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. The hCG one step pregnancy test strip (urine) is preliminary qualitative test therefore neither the quantitative nor the rate of increase of hCG can be determined by this test.
ii. Very dilute urine sample as indicated by low specific gravity may not contain representative level of hCG. If pregnancy is still suspected the first morning urine sample should be collect 48 hours later and tested.
iii. first trimester pregnancies terminate for natural reasons, a test result that is weakly positive should be confirmed by retesting with first morning urine sample collected 48 hours later.
iv. This test may produce false positive results. A number of conditions other than pregnancy including trophoblastic disease and certain non trophoblastic neoplasms including testicular tumours, prostate cancer, breast cancer and lung cancer, causes elevated level of hCG. Therefore the presence of hCG in the urine should not be used for the diagnosis pregnancy unless this condition has been ruled out.
v. This test may produce false negative results. False negative results may occur when the levels of hCG are below the levels of sensitivity level of the

test. When pregnancy is still suspected a first morning urine sample should be collected 48 hours later and tested. In case pregnancy is suspected and the test continue to produce negative result see a physician for further diagnosis.

6.4.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure

6.4.17 Supporting documents

Sample collection manual

6.4.18 References

HCG package insert

6.5 PROCEDURE FOR HEPATITIS C ANTIBODY RAPID TEST

6.5.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to give instructions on how to perform Hepatitis C Virus Antibody (HCV Ab) rapid test.

6.5.2 Scope

This procedure is applicable to all site perform hepatitis C Virus Antibody rapid tests

6.5.3 Responsibility

It is the responsibility of the Head of serology Section to ensure effectively implemented by all personnel working in the serology section.

6.5.4 Principle

The HCV Ab Rapid test Strip is a lateral flow chromatographic immunoassay based on the Principle of the double antigen- sandwich technique. The test strip consists of 1) a burgundy colored conjugate pad containing HCV antigens conjugated with colloidal gold (HCV Ag conjugates) and rabbit IgG-gold conjugates, 2) a nitrocellulose membrane strip contain a test band (T band) and a control band (C band). The T band is pre-coated with non- conjugated HCV antigens, and the C band is pre-coated with goat anti-rabbit IgG. When an adequate of test sample is dispensed into the sample well of the strip, the sample migrates by capillary action across the strip. The antibodies: either the IgG, the IgM, or the IgA, to HCV if present in the sample will bind to the HCV Ag conjugates. The immunocomplex is then captured on the membrane by the pre coated HCV antigens, forming a burgundy colored T band,

indicating a HCV Ab positive test result. Absence of the T band suggests a negative result. The test contains an internal control (C band) which should exhibit a burgundy colored band of the immunocomplex of goat anti rabbit IgG / rabbit IgG-gold conjugates regardless the presence of any antibodies to HCV. Otherwise, the test result is invalid and the sample must be retested with another device.

6.5.5 Sample requirement

2-3mls whole blood/serum/plasma. To obtain serum, Centrifuge blood collected in plain red top tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes. To obtain Plasma, Centrifuge blood collected in EDTA tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes

6.5.6 Equipment

Timer, Centrifuge and Refrigerator

6.5.7 Materials

Reagents	Consumables
HCV Ab test kit (Test strips, disposable dropper and HCV Ab buffer)	Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat Micropipette

6.5.8 Storage and stability

a. The test device in the sealed pouch can be stored at 2-40^{0}C or as instructed by manufacturer up to the expiration date. The test device must remain in the sealed pouch until use. DO NOT FREEZE
b. Store whole blood at 2-8^{0}c for up 3 days
c. Serum and plasma maybe stored at 2-8^{0}c for up 7 days, for long term storage, serum and plasma specimens should be kept at-20^{0}c or below.

6.5.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.5.10 Calibration

Listed equipment will be calibrated as per calibration schedule.

6.5.11 Quality control

Run known Negative and Positive in-house controls once a week or when new test kit is opened

6.5.12 Procedure Steps

Allow test strip, sample, buffer and/or controls to equilibrate to room temperature prior to testing.

i. Remove the test device from the foil pouch and use it as soon as possible. best results will be obtained if the assay is performed within one hour.
ii. Place the test device on a clean and level surface.
iii. Label the test device with sample ID
iv. **For venepuncture** whole blood samples; Hold the dropper vertically and transfer 2 drops of venipuncture whole blood (approximately 50ul) to the sample pad of the strip, then add 1 drop of buffer (approximately30ul) and start the timer.

For finger stick whole blood sample; allow 2 hanging drops of fingerstick whole blood (approximately 50ul) to fall into the center of the sample pad on the test strip, then add 1 drop of buffer(approximately 30ul) and start the timer.

For serum or plasma sample; Hold the dropper vertically and transfer 1 drop of serum or plasma(approximately30ul) to the sample pad of the test strip, then add 1 drop of buffer (approximately 30ul) and start the timer.

v. Wait for the red line(s)to appear. the result should be read in 15 minutes.do not interpret the result after 15 minutes

6.5.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not Applicable

6.5.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results **Interpretation of results**

Positive; two colored lines should be observed. The line in the test region (T) is the prone line; The line in the control region (C) is the control line, which is used to indicate proper performance of the device.

Negative; The control line appears in the test, but the test line is not visible.

Invalid; No line appears in the control region. Under no circumstances should a positive sample be identified until the control line forms in the viewing area if the control line does not form, the test result is inconclusive and the assay should be repeated

Reporting of results

Reactive test result - HCV Ab rapid test **positive**

Non - reactive test results - HCV Ab rapid test **Negative**

6.5.15 Limitations Of The Procedure And Source Of Error

i. The HCV Ab Rapid Test cassette (whole blood, serum, plasma) is for in vitro diagnostic use only. This test should be used for the detection of antibodies to HCV in whole blood, serum or plasma sample.
ii. The HCV Ab Rapid Test cassette (whole blood, serum, plasma) will only indicate the presence of antibodies to HCV in the sample and should not be used as the sole criteria for the diagnosis of hepatitis C viral infection. iii. A negative result can occur if the quantity of the antibodies to HCV present in the sample is below the detection limits of the assay, or the antibodies that are detected are not present during the stage of disease in which a sample is collected.

6.5.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report of this procedure

6.5.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

6.5.18 References

HCV Ab Package inserts

Kit manufacturer paper insert

6.6 PROCEDURE FOR CRYPTOCOCCAL ANTIGEN RAPID TEST PROCEDURE

6.6.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to give instructions on how to perform cryptococcal antigen rapid test.

6.6.2 Scope

This procedure will be used by all staff and students perform CrAg test

6.6.3 Responsibility

It is the responsibility of the Head of serology Section to ensure effectively implemented and maintained.

6.6.4 Principle

The CrAg Lateral Flow Assay is a dipstick sandwich immune-chromatographic assay. Specimens and sample diluent are added into an appropriate reservoir, such as a test tube, and lateral flow device is placed into the reservoir. The test uses sample wicking

to capture gold- conjugated, anti-Crag monocloNot applicablel antibodies and gold conjugated control antibodies deposited on the test membrane. If Crag is present in the sample, then it binds to the gold conjugated, anti-CrAg. The gold labelled antibody antigen complex continues to pick up the membrane where it will interact with the test line, which has immobilized ant Crag monocloNot applicablel antibodies. The gold labelled antibody-antigen complex forms a sandwich at the test line causing a visible line o form. With proper flow and reagent reactivity, the wicking of any sample, positive or negative, will cause the gold- conjugated control antibody to move to the control line. Immobilized antibodies at the control line will bind to the gold conjugated control antibody and form a visible control line. Positive test results create two lines (test and control). Negative test results from only one line (control). If control line fails to develop then the test is invalid.

6.6.5 Sample Requirement

2-3mls serum, plasma, whole blood (venous and finger prick) and cerebral spinal fluid;

NOTE 1: To obtain serum, Centrifuge blood collected in plain red top tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes

NOTE 2: To obtain Plasma, Centrifuge blood collected in EDTA tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes

6.6.6 Equipment

Timer, Centrifuge and Refrigerator

6.6.7 Materials

Reagents	Consumables
CrAg test kit (CrAg LF Test strip, LF Specimen diluents, LF titration diluents,	Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat
CrAg positive control)	Micropipette

6.6.8 Storage And Stability

i. If a delay is encountered in sample processing, store at 2-8ºc for up to 72 hours is permissible.
ii. CSF, plasma, serum may be stored for longer period at -20ºc provided they are not repeatedly thawed and refrozen
iii. Whole blood in transit should be maintained at 2-8ºc not -20ºc.

6.6.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.6.10 Calibration

Perform Equipment calibration as scheduled.

6.6.11 Quality Control

i. To ensure assay validity, a procedural control bar is incorporated in the assay device.
ii. Run known positive and negative in-house controls weekly and when the new kit of test strips is opened to verify kit.

6.6.12 Procedure Steps

i. Add one drop /40µ pipette LF Sample diluents to an appropriate labeled reservoir. (Test tube) it is also a good practice to label the strip. ii. Add 40µ of sample to the reservoir and mix.

iii. Submerge the white end of a CrAg LF test strip into the sample.
iv. Wait 10 minutes after inserting the strip
v. Read and record the results

6.6.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

6.6.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Interpretation of results

Positive Results

Two red bands appear on the membrane. One band appear on the control region (C) and another band appears on the test region (T) **Negative Results**

Only one red band appears on the control region C. No apparent red band appears in the test region T.

Invalid Results

No visible band at all or there is visible band only in the test region and not in the control region, Repeat the procedure.

Reporting of results

For the positive result report **as Cryptococcal antigen rapid test Positive**

For the Negative result report **as Cryptococcal antigen rapid test Negative**

6.6.15 Limitations Of The Procedure And Source Of Error

- **i.** The assay Performance Characteristics have not been established for matrices other than serum, plasma, whole blood and CSF
- **ii.** Depending on the disease and organism prevalence, testing should not be performed as screening procedure for general population. The predictive value of a positive or negative serologic result depends on the pre-test likelihood of cryptococcal disease being present. Testing should only be done when clinical evidence suggests the diagnosis of cryptococcal disease
- **iii.** Testing hemolyzed serum samples could lead false negatives due to the high background color on the strip
- **iv.** This assay was not evaluated for potential interference related to sample pre-treatment with 2-mercatoethanol or with specimens including the following substances: Vaginal cream, caffeine, ascorbic acid, intraconazole, amphotericin B, acetaminophen, or acetylsalicylic acid

6.6.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report of this procedure

6.6.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

6.6.18 References

6.7 PROCEDURE FOR ANTISTREPTOLYSIN - O (ASOT) LATEX SLIDE TEST

6.7.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Antistreptolysin - O Latex Test**.**

6.7.2 Scope

This procedure will be used by all staffs in the laboratory.

6.7.3 Responsibility

It is the responsibility of the Head of serology Section to ensure effectively implemented and maintained.

6.7.4 Principle

ASO test method is based on an immunologic reaction between streptococcal exotoxins bound to a biologically polystyrene inert latex particles coated with purified and stabilized streptolysin–O (Antigen) and its corresponding Antistreptolysin –O streptococcal (Antibodies) in the test sample. Visible latex agglutination occurs when increased antibody level is present in the test sample.

6.7.5 Sample Requirement

2-3mls fresh serum,

NOTE 1: To obtain serum, Centrifuge blood collected in plain red top tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes

6.7.6 Equipment

Timer, Centrifuge, Refrigerator and Shaker

6.7.7 Materials

ASO Latex Reagents, ASO Positive control, and Negative Control, ASO test card or glass, slide, Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat, Micropipette and Applicator stick

6.7.8 Storage and Stability

Store serum at 2-8ºc for up to 7 days. Reagent kits at 2-8ºC and are stable until their expiration dates.

6.7.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.7.10 Calibration

As per equipment calibration schedule.

6.7.11 Quality Control

In-house positive and negative controls are run once a week or before running patient sample

6.7.12 Procedure Steps

i. Allow all the reagent as well as the sample to reach room temperature
ii. Using disposable plastic dropper place one drop of the test sample in a circled area of the slide provided in the kit
iii. Add one drop of ASO latex antigen to the above drop and mix well with the disposable applicator stick
iv. Rock the slide gently back and forth for two minutes or put on shaker for 1 minute and examine for agglutination do not examine beyond two minutes.
v. For positive and negative controls follow the same procedure as mentioned above by taking control serum from respective vials

6.7.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not Applicable

6.7.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Interpretation of results

A negative reaction is indicated by a uniform milky suspension with no agglutination as observed with ASO Negative control. A Positive reaction is indicated by any observable agglutination in the reaction mixture. The sample reaction should be compared to the ASO Negative control **Reporting of results**

Report results as “ASOT – Reactive” in the presence of agglutination, or “ASOT – Non reactive” in the absence of agglutination**.**

6.7.15 Limitations Of The Procedure And Source Of Error

- Results should be read within two minutes after the mixing of the reagent on the slide. A reading obtained after this period of time may be incorrect
- An elevated ASO titre may be observed in condition like acute glomerulonephritis, for sample showing very high titre of ASO in the initial phase successive testing after 10 to 12 days should be carried out.

6.7.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report of this procedure

6.7.17 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual

6.7.18 References

ASOT Test Kit insert: Atlas Medical, ASOT Test Kit “BEACON”

6.8 PROCEDURE FOR PERFORMING (HBsAg) RAPID TEST

6.8.1 Purpose

The purpose of this procedure is to give instructions on how to perform Hepatitis B Virus Surface Antigen Rapid test in human whole blood, plasma or serum.

6.8.2 Scope

This procedure is applicable in all sites that perform Hepatitis B Virus surface antigen in whole blood ,serum or plasma sample qualitatively.

6.8.3 Responsibility

It is the responsibility of the Head of serology section and all laboratory personnel to ensure effective implementation of this procedure.

6.8.4 Principle

HBsAg is an antibody sandwich immunoassay. Colloidal gold conjugated monoclonal antibody reactive to HBsAg is dry-immobilized onto a nitrocellulose membrane strip. When the sample is added, it migrates by capillary diffusion through the strip rehydrating the gold conjugate. If present, HBsAg will bind with the gold conjugate antibody to form particles. These particles will continue to migrate along the strip until the test zone (T) where they are captured by ant-HBs antibody immobilized there and a visible red line appears. If there is no HBsAg in sample, no red line will appear in the T zone. The gold conjugate will continue to migrate alone until is captured in the control zone (C) by immobilized goat, ant-mouse IgG antibody aggregating a red line, to serve as an internal process control, a control band should always be seen after test is completed. Absence of a colored control line in the control region is an indication of an invalid result.

6.8.5 Sample requirements

2-3mls Whole blood, centrifuged Serum or plasma samples

6.8.6 Equipment

i. Timer
ii. Refrigerator
iii. Centrifuge

6.8.7 Materials

Reagents	Consumables
HBsAg test kits (HBsAgDevice, disposable sample droppers) Assay diluent	Disposable gloves, Laboratory coat Micropipette

6.8.8 Storage And Stability

a. The test device in the sealed pouch can be stored at 2-40^{0}C or as instructed by manufacturer up to the expiration date. The test device must remain in the sealed pouch until use.DO NOT FREEZE.
b. Store whole blood at 2-8^{0}c for up 3 days
c. Serum and plasma maybe stored at 2-8^{0}c for up 7 days, for long term storage, serum and plasma specimens should be kept at-20^{0}c or below.

6.8.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.8.10 Calibration

Perform Equipment calibration as scheduled.

6.8.11 Quality Control

Run known Negative and Positive in-house controls once a week or when new test kit is opened .

6.8.12 Procedure Steps

i. Remove the test strip from foil pouch and use as soon as possible. **Note: Check and verify the device's integrity before and after opening the foil pouch**
ii. Label the test device with patient ID **Whole blood sample:**
iii. Hold the dropper vertically and transfer 2 drops of whole blood (approximately 50-60 ul) to the sample area, then add one drop of buffer

Serum/ plasma;

i. Immerse the strip into the sample tube with the arrow end pointing towards the sample.
ii. Let it stay immersed until you see liquid traveling up past the MAX word.
iii. Lay the strip (MAX side facing up) flat on a clean, dry, non-absorbent surface
iv. If cassette; Add 60µl (2 drop) of serum or plasma in to the sample window and allow to soak in.
v. Read the results at 15-20 minutes. Ensure that the background of the test area is white before interpreting the results

6.8.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not Applicable

6.8.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

Interpretation Of Results

NEGATIVE: if only one line (control line) appears in result line area, interpret the result as negative. This shows that the concentration of HBsAg in the sample is under the detection limit.

POSITIVE: if only two line (control line and test) appears in result line area, interpret the result as positive.

INVALID: Control line fails to appear. Insufficient sample volume or incorrect procedural technique is the most likely reasons for control line failure. Review the procedure and repeat the test with a new test strip.

Reporting of results

Reactive test Results. Report as HBsAg rapid test positive

Non-reactive test results: Report as HBsAg rapid test negative

6.8.15 Limitations Of Procedure And Source Of Error

i. HBsAg Rapid Test Kit detects HBsAg in human serum or plasma and is only screening test. All reactive samples should be confirmed by supplemental assays like PCR OR ELISA.
ii. A non -reactive result does not exclude the possibility of exposure or infection with Hepatitis B virus.
iii. Patients with auto-immune liver diseases may show falsely reactive results.
iv. This test is standardized to work best when the test procedure mentioned in the package insert is strictly followed. Any deviation from the test procedure may lead to erroneous results.

6.8.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report of this procedure

6.8.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

6.8.18 References

HBsAg Package insert kit

6.9 PROCEDURE FOR SARS-COV-2 ANTIGEN RAPID DIAGNOSTIC TEST

6.9.1 Purpose

The purpose of this standard operating procedure (SOP) is to provide guidelines to be followed for performing Rapid Antigen Detection Test for COVID-19 using the Standard COVID-19 Ag detection assay kit

6.9.2 Scope

This procedure is to be performed at point of care or any health facility

6.9.3 Responsibility

The Head of Serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure

Qualified, competent and registered Medical Laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

6.9.4 Principle

It is a rapid chromatographic immunoassay for qualitative detection of specific antigens to SARS-CoV-2. When the liquid sample is dropped on the sample pad, the antigen in the sample forms an immunocomplex with the antibody labelled with colloidal gold. Its complex moves along with the liquid sample, and makes a contact with the antibody immobilized on the membrane, followed by forming an immunocomplex with the immobilized antibody, resulting in generation of a coloured red purple line. Appearance of red purple line on the membrane indicates the presence of antigen in the sample. Since the liquid of the sample migrates through the membrane very fast, it makes it possible to detect the presence or absence of antigen within 15 minutes.

6.9.5 Sample Requirements

Nasopharyngeal swab sample collected from nostril of the suspect individual. Oropharyngeal swab sample collected from the posterior pharynx and tonsillar area of the suspect individual.

6.9.6 Equipment

Stop watch, Micropipette/Supplied capillary

6.9.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Test devices Buffer	Disposable gloves Laboratory coat 70% alcohol Mask

6.9.8 Storage And Stability

Store Covid 19 rapid kit devoice 2-30^{O}C Protected from sunlight and should not be frozen

6.9.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the facility Safety manual
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. **iv.** Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste **management and safety practice.**

6.9.10 Calibration

Perform equipment calibration as per schedule

6.9.11 Quality Control

Run known Negative and Positive in-house controls once a week.

The test strips contain a control line, which turns coloured if the run is valid.

6.9.12 Procedural Steps

i. Peel off the aluminium foil seal from the sample processing tube containing the extraction buffer.
ii. After the sample collection, plunge the swab up and down in the sample processing tube for at least 15 seconds, taking care not to spill the contents out of the tube.
iii. Remove the swab while pinching wall of the tube with the swab and rotating the swab, to extract the liquid from the swab. iv. Firmly attach the dropper lid to the top of the sample processing tube.
v. Remove the test cassette from the sealed pouch.
vi. Sample adding: Reverse the sample processing tube, holding the tube upright, and slowly add 3-4 drops to the sample ole (S) of the test cassette then start the timer.
vii. Timing observation: judge the result 15 minutes after sample adding; do not observe the results after 30 minutes later.
viii. After the test, put the medical wastes into the biosafety bag.

6.9.13 Biological Reference Interval Not Applicable

6.9.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Results interpretation

A Positive: Two distinct coloured bands appear on the strip.

Negative: Only one distinct coloured band on the strip.

Invalid: If no control band is seen.

Reporting of results

Report negative results as SARS-COV-2 – Negative.

Report positive result as SARS-COV-2 – Positive

Critical value

Any positive results

6.9.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. The kit is not intended for testing liquid sample such as wash or aspirate sample or swab in transport media as a result can be compromised by over dilution.
ii. Insufficient sample volume or incorrect procedural techniques are the most likely reason for control line failure

6.9.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer reagent kit insert for sensitivity and specificity

6.9.17 Supporting DocumentsS

Sample collection manual

6.9.18 References

Manufacture package insert kit for SARS COV-2

6.10 PROCEDURE FOR DENGUE VIRUS ANTIBODY DETECTION RAPID TEST

6.10.1 Purpose

This procedure provides details instruction for screening of dengue IgG, IgM antibody by using rapid test strip as an aid in the diagnosis of infection with Dengue virus

6.10.2 Scope

This procedure is used in serology section when performing rapid *Dengue* antibody rapid tests.

6.10.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.10.4 Principle

Dengue test utilizes immunochromatography whereby mouse anti- human IgM and human IgG antibodies are immobilized on the nitrocellulose membrane respectively, as two individual test lines (IgM line and IgG line) in the test window of the test device. The IgG line in the test window is closer to the sample well and followed by IgM line.

As the test sample flows through the membrane within the test device, the coloured-dengue specific recombinant antigen-colloidal gold conjugate complexes with specific antibodies (IgM and or IgG) of dengue virus if present in the sample. This complex moves further on the membrane to the test region where it is captured by the anti-human IgM and or human IgG antibodies coated on the membrane leading to formation of a coated band, which indicates a positive test results. Absence of the coloured band in the test window indicates a negative test result. A built in control line will always appear in the test window when the test has performed properly regardless of the presence or absence of anti-Dengue virus antibodies in the sample.

Dengue NSI antigen test is a solid phase immunochromatographic assay. As the test sample flows through the membrane within the test device and mobilize the gold anti-NSI conjugate that it is coated on the conjugate pad if NSI it is present then the result it is the formation of coloured band of the test (T)line region

6.10.5 Sample Requirements

Plasma/whole blood, Serum (2-5ml)

NOTE 1: To obtain serum, Centrifuge blood collected in plain red top tube at 3000rpm/RCF per 3 minutes

NOTE 2: To obtain Plasma, Centrifuge blood collected in EDTA tube at 3000rpm/RCF per 3 minutes

6.10.6 Equipment

Timer ,Centrifuge ,refrigerator and Thermometer

6.10.7 Materials

Reagents	**consumables**
• Dengue IgG/IgM antibody and NSI antigen Cassette • Buffer • Transfer pipette for dengue NSI • Capillary pipette for Dengue IgG/IgM • Known Positive control, • Known Negative control	• Marker pen • Examination Gloves • Gauze

6.10.8 Storage and Stability

i. The test kit should be stored at 15-25ºC in the sealed pouch for the duration of the shelf-life (refer to manufacturer instruction)
ii. If the samples are not to be tested they should be refrigerated immediately at 4 - 8 ºC
iii. If storage periods > 5 days the sample should be frozen at -20^{0}C

6.10.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.10.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment (Timer ,Centrifuge ,refrigerator and Thermometer)as per calibration schedule

6.10.11 Quality Control

i. Control samples weather commercial or in-house made are run the same way as patient sample on weekly bases and whenever a new kit is opened.
ii. Serology Section head should review Quality control records

6.10.12 Procedural Steps

i. Bring the samples and the test components to room temperature if refrigerated or frozen. Mix the sample well prior to assay
ii. Remove the test strip from the foil pouch and use it as soon as possible
iii. Use transfer pipette to transfer sample by depressing the bulb of the pipette
iv. If capillary used withdraw 5ul of sample, the black bar near the opening end of pipette indicates the required 5ul of sample.
v. Drop the sample in the corner pointed by S1»
vi. Hold the pipette in a vertical position over the left “S” sample well on the device
vii. Transfer 2 drops of sample into well
viii. Dispense 2 drops of sample buffer to the right ”S” sample well
ix. Read result at the end of 20 minutes

6.10.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not Applicable

6.10.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

NEGATIVE

- If only the “C” line is developed, the test indicates that no detectable antibodies to dengue are present in the sample

POSITIVE

- Lines showed to control and NSI –NS1 POSITIVE during window period
- Lines showed to control and IGM-IgM Positive Chronic dengue
- Lines Showed to control and IgG- IgG Positive during early infections BUT has been treated

INVALID

If NO line is developed at “C”, the assay is invalid regardless of colour development on the “T” line. Repeat the test **Reporting of results**

Report results as: *Dengue* - Negative or *Dengue* – Positive

Critical value

Positive findings

6.10.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

This kit is intended ONLY for testing of individual samples. Don’t use it for testing of cadaver samples, saliva, urine or other blood samples or pooled (mixed) blood

6.10.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacture kit insert for specificity and sensitivity. Also Method verification of this procedure should be done and that the report should be referred to verify compliance to this requirement. for Dengue rapid test procedure

6.10.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

6.10.18 References

Dengue IgG/IgM antibody + NSI antigen Cassette Test Rapid Test Strip Package insert.

6.11 PROCEDURE FOR PLAGUE RAPID TEST

6.11.1 Purpose

This procedure provides details instruction of detecting acute bacterial infection caused by Yersinia pestis

6.11.2 Scope

This procedure is used in serology section when performing rapid *Plague* rapid tests(F1RDT)

6.11.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.11.4 Principle

F1RDT detect pathogen-specific antigens (the F1 capsular antigen, which is part of the outer surface of *Yersinia pestis*, the bacteria causing plague) in a small quantity of different body fluids through lateral flow immunochromatography. The test is simple to perform and provides a result within 15 minutes. It can be performed in the pus contained in the buboes (swellings), or in the sputum (mucous coughed up from the respiratory tract) of people with suspected pneumonic plague.

6.11.5 Sample Requirements

Bubo aspirate, urine, and sputum,serum

6.11.6 Equipment

Centrifuge, timer, thermometer

6.11.7 Materials

Reagents	**Consumables**
F1RDT test kit	• Marker pen • Examination Gloves • Gauze

6.11.8 Storage and Stability

Refer to manufacturer storage instructions of test devices and samples

6.11.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.11.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment (Timer ,Centrifuge and Thermometer)as per calibration schedule

6.11.11 Quality Control

Refer to manufacturer insert package

6.11.12 Procedural Steps

Refer to manufacturer insert package

6.11.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not Applicable

6.11.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

Refer to manufacturer insert package **Reporting of results**

Report results as: *Plague* - Negative or Plague – Positive Critical value

Positive findings

6.11.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

F1RTD test needs to be combined with other laboratory evaluations to confirm the diagnosis

6.11.16 Performance Characteristics

Method verification of this procedure should be done and that the report should be referred to verify compliance to this requirement. of this procedure

6.11.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

6.11.18 References

Chanteau S, Rahalison L, Ratsitorahina M, Mahafaly, Rasolomaharo M, Boisier P, et al. Early diagnosis of bubonic plague using F1 antigen capture ELISA assay and rapid immunogold dipstick. *International Journal of Medical Microbiology* 2000;290(3):279-83.

6.12 PROCEDURE FOR HELICOBACTER PYLORI ANTIGEN TEST

6.12.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for the rapid detection of *Helicobacter pylori* antigen in human stool sample.

6.12.2 Scope

This procedure is used in serology section to all rapid *H. pylori* antigen tests.

6.12.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained, and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.12.4 Principle

This is a ready to use test that is based on the homogeneous membrane system technology with latex microspores to perform the test, an aliquot of diluent sample is added to sample well of the test cassette. The sample flows through a label pad containing Pylori antibody coupled to red –colored colloidal gold. In the presence of antigens, they bind to the antibody coated on the colloidal gold particles to form antigen-antibody-gold complexes. These complex moves on the nitrocellulose membrane by capillary action towards the test line region on which Pylori specific to the antibody on the membrane in the form of a line. A second red control line will always appear in the results windows to indicate that the test has been correctly performed and the test device functions properly. If pylori is not present or lower than the detection limit of the test, only the control line will be visible. If the control line does not develop, the test in invalid.

6.12.5 Sample Requirements Stool sample.

6.12.6 Equipment

Timer

6.12.7 Materials

Reagents	**consumables**
Test cassette dilution buffer -Known Positive control, -Known Negative control	Marker pen Examination Gloves

6.12.8 Storage and Stability

I. Store un opened test device at 2- 30℃.if stored at 2-8℃, ensure that the test device is brought to room temperature before opening. Do not freeze the kit or expose the kit over 30℃. (refer to manufacturer instruction)

II. Store sample at 2-8℃ for up to 72 hours.

6.12.9 Safety iv. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline

v. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

vi. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.12.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment as per calibration schedule

6.12.11 Quality Control

Analyse known Negative and Positive in-house controls once every week and whenever a new kit is opened.

6.12.12 Procedural Steps

i. Remove the test device from its foil pouch by tearing along the notch and use as soon as possible

ii. Unscrew the cap of the sample collection tube. **iii.** Randomly stab the sample collection stick into the fecal sample at list 6 different sites

iv. Return the sample collection stick into the sample tube and tighten the cap

v. Shake the sample collection tube vigorously to mix the sample and the extraction buffer

vi. Hold the sample collection tube upright and break off the tip of the sample collection tube, invert the sample collection tube and transfer two drops of the mixture into the sample pad of the test strip then start timer

vii. Wait 10-15 minutes and read the results for the colored lines to appear

viii. Do not read result after 15 minutes

6.12.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not Applicable

6.12.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

Negative - Only one coloured band appears on the control(C) region. No apparent band on the test(T) region

Positive - In addition to a pink coloured control (C) band, a distinct pink coloured band will also appear in the tests(T) region

Invalid – a total absence of colour in both regions or no coloured line appears on the control (C) region is an indication of procedure error or the tests deterioration.

Repeat the test with a new kit.

Reporting of results

Report results as: H pylori - Negative or H pylori – Positive

6.12.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

1.1. The test is a qualitative assay and is not for quantitative determination of antibodies concentration levels in human stool only

1.2. The results obtained should only be interpreted in conjunction with other diagnostic results and clinical information.

1.3. A negative result can occur if the quantity of the. Pylori antigen presence in the sample below the detection limits of the assay, or the antigen that are detected are not present during the stage of diseases in which a sample is collection.

6.12.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacture kit insert for specificity and sensitivity. Also Method verification of this procedure should be done and that the report should be referred to verify compliance to this requirement. for H pylori procedure

6.12.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

6.12.18 References

Manufacturer Kit insert for H pylori

6.13 PROCEDURE FOR HELICOBACTER PYLORI ANTIBODY RAPID TEST

6.13.1 Purpose

Rapid chromatographic immunoassay for the qualitative detection of antibodies (IgG) anti-Helicobacter pylori (H. pylori) in human serum or plasma. It is used as an aid in the diagnosis of infection with *H. pylori*

6.13.2 Scope

This procedure is used in serology section when performing rapid *H. pylori* antibody tests.

6.13.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head serology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.13.4 Principle

The *H. Pylori* rapid Test device is a lateral flow chromatographic assay based on the Principle of the antibody – sandwich technique. The membrane is pre coated with *H.pylori* Antigen on the test line region of the test. During testing *H. pylori* Antibodies in the serum or plasma sample reacts with coated antigen and migrates upward on the membrane chromatography by capillary action to the membrane and generate a colored line. The presence of this colored line in the test region indicates a positive result, while its absence indicates a negative result

6.13.5 Sample Requirements

Plasma/whole blood, Serum (2-5ml)

NOTE 1: To obtain serum, Centrifuge blood collected in plain red top tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes

NOTE 2: To obtain Plasma, Centrifuge blood collected in EDTA tube at 3000rpm per 3 minutes

6.13.6 Equipment

Timer, Centrifuge, refrigerator and Thermometer

6.13.7 Materials

Reagents	**consumables**
Test cassette/strips buffer -Known Positive control, -Known Negative control	Marker pen Examination Gloves

6.13.8 Storage and Stability

III. Store unopened test device at 2- 30℃. If stored at 2-8℃, ensure that the test device is brought to room temperature before opening. Do not

freeze the kit or expose the kit over 30℃. (refer to manufacturer instruction)

IV. Store sample at 2-8℃ for up to 72 hours.

6.13.9 Safety vii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual/IPC guideline

viii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

ix. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

6.13.10 Calibration

Perform calibration of equipment (Timer, Centrifuge, refrigerator and Thermometer)as per calibration schedule

6.13.11 Quality Control

i. Analyse known Negative and Positive in-house controls the same way as sample testing procedure once every week and whenever a new kit is opened.

ii. Serology Section head should review Quality control records

6.13.12 Procedural Steps

i. Remove the test device from its foil pouch by tearing along the notch and use as soon as possible

ii. Place the test strip on a clean and level surface, hold the dropper vertically and transfer 1 drop of plasma/serum to the sample pad.

iii. Add 1 drop of buffer, then start the timer

iv. Read the results in 10-15 minutes

6.13.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not Applicable

6.13.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

14.1 Interpretation of results

Negative - Only one coloured band appears on the control(C) region. No apparent band on the test(T) region

Positive - In addition to a pink coloured control (C) band, a distinct pink coloured band will also appear in the tests(T) region

Invalid – a total absence of colour in both regions or no coloured line appears on the control (C) region is an indication of procedure error or the tests deterioration.

Repeat the test with a new kit.

14.2 Reporting of results

Report results as: *H pylori* - Negative or *H pylori* – Positive

14.3 Critical value

Not applicable

6.13.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- The test is for in vitro diagnostic use only
- The test should not be used as the sole criteria for the diagnosis of pylori infection since it only indicates the presence of antibodies in the sample

6.13.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacture kit insert for specificity and sensitivity. Also Method verification of this procedure should be done and that the report should be referred to verify compliance to this requirement. for H. pylori procedure

6.13.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

6.13.18 References

Manufacturer Kit insert for H pylori

6.14 PROCEDURE FOR BRUCELLA ANTIBODY DETECTION

6.14.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for Qualitative detection of antibodies of all isotopes against Brucella species.

6.14.2 Scope

The procedure is used in the serology section in the diagnosis of brucellosis.

6.14.3 Responsibility

Qualified, registered and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure. Section heads are responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.14.4 Principle

This test is based on antigen /antibody reaction. The smooth, attenuated stained Eurocell antigen suspensions are mixed with the patient's serum. Specific antibodies to Brucella antigens if present in the patient serum will react with the antigen suspensions to produce an agglutination reaction. No agglutination indicates the absence of specific antibodies to Brucella antigens.

6.14.5 Sample Requirement

Serum sample is prefarable for this procedure. Allow blood to clot and Centrifuge the sample at 3000rpm for 5 minutes

6.14.6 Equipment

Centrifuge, Pipettes, Shaker and Stop watch

6.14.7 Materials

Stained Eurocell-A/ Eurocell -M Antigen suspensions, Slide Test, 70% alcohol, Known Positive control, Known Negative control, Marker pen, Examination Gloves.

6.14.8 Storage and Stability

Reagent should be stored at 2-8°C. Sample can be stored at room temperature for 4hrs then can be stored at 2-8°C If serum separated can be stored at -20°C for 1year.

6.14.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the facility Safety manual
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iv. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health care services in Tanzania

6.14.10 Calibration

Calibration of Centrifuge should be done as per schedule.

6.14.11 Quality Control

Run the positive and negative controls sample daily before performing patient samples or run QC Parallel with patient sample.

6.14.12 Procedural Steps

i. Prior to the start bring all reagents to room temperature (20 to 25˚C). ii. Shake and mix the Eurocell antigen suspension well before dispensing.
iii. Place one drop of positive and negative control onto the reaction circle of glass slide.
iv. Place 80ul of saline onto the next reaction circle of the glass slide.
v. Place 80ul of patient serum to be tested onto the next reaction circle. vi. Add one drop of the appropriate Eurocell antigen suspensions in each of the above circles. vii. Mix contents of each circle uniformly over the entire circle with

separate mixing sticks. viii. Gently rock the slide back and forth/observe for agglutination macroscopically for one minute

6.14.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not applicable

6.14.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

Agglutination is a **POSITIVE** test results and indicates the presence of specific antibodies to Brucella in the patient's serum. No agglutination is a **NEGATIVE** test results

Reporting of results

Report results as Brucella antibody – NEGATIVE or Brucella antibody – POSITIVE

6.14.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

The test cannot distinguish between past infection and current infection

6.14.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the verification report of this procedure

6.14.17 Supporting Document

Result management procedure

6.14.18 References

Monica Cheesbrough: District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries, Vol 1, Tropical Health Technology, 1998.

URIT 560 Urine Analyzer– User Manual for Urine Chemistry Analyzer

Practical Laboratory Manual-Jane Carter and Orgenes Lema

6.15 PROCEDURE FOR SALMONELLA TYPHI ANTIBODIES QUANTIFICATION METHOD

6.15.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for in vitro detection and quantitative estimation of specific antibodies to salmonella present in Human serum

6.15.2 Scope

The procedure is used in serology section when performing widal test by slide method.

6.15.3 Responsibility

Qualified full registered and competent laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head of serology section is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

6.15.4 Principle

This test is based on the Principle of direct agglutination reaction. The smooth suspension of killed salmonella bacilli carries homologous O and H antigens. When patient serum (containing antibodies to *S typhi* and *S paratyphi)* is incubated with respective antigens, visible agglutination occurs. Arising titre of antibodies is indicative of Enteric fever

6.15.5 Sample Requirements

Serum sample is preferable for this procedure. Allow blood to clot

Centrifuge the sample at 3000rpm for 5 minutes

6.15.6 Equipment

Timer, Centrifuge, Pipettes, Water bath

6.15.7 Materials

Stained salmonella antigen set, Stained salmonella antigen S typhi “O”, Stained salmonella antigen S typhi “H”, Disposable gloves, pipettes, White Tile or slide, Sample rack, Test tube rack, 5%Sodium hypochlorite to wipe and disinfect the spills and Marker Pen

6.15.8 Storage and Stability

Reagent should be stored at 2-8°C

Sample can be stored at room temperature for 4hrs then can be stored at 2-8°C if serum separated can be stored at -20°C for 1year.

6.15.9 Safety

i. Decontaminate working surfaces twice daily, in the morning and afternoon ii.

iii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the facility Safety manual

iv. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

v. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections. vi. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health care services in Tanzania,

6.15.10 Calibration

Centrifuge should be calibrated as per schedule.

1.1. Maintenance

Maintenance of Centrifuge should be done as planed

6.15.11 Quality Control

Analyze the positive and negative controls sample daily before performing patient samples or run QC Parallel with patient sample.

6.15.12 Procedural Steps

Rapid slide test (Widal screening test)

i. Clean the glass slide or white tile provided in the kit and wipe
ii. Place 1 drop of undiluted serum to be tested in each of the first two circle (1-2)
iii. Add one drop of antigen “O” and “H” in circles 1,2 respectively
iv. Mix the contents of each circle with separate stick and spread to fill the entire circle area
v. Rock the slide for one minute and observe for agglutination
vi. If agglutination is visible within one minute then proceed for quantitative estimation **Quantitative slide/white tile test**

Circle	**Serum Volume**	**Appropriate Antigen Drop**		**Titre**
01	0.08ml	1 drop	Mix and Rotate for one minute and observed agglutination	1:20
02	0.04ml	1 drop		1:40
03	0.02ml	1 drop		1:80
04	0.01ml	1 drop		1:160
05	0.005ml	1 drop		1:320

6.15.13 Biological Reference Interval

- When value of O and H antigen are less than 1:160 NEGATIVE
- When value of O and H antigen are greater than 1:160 POSITIVE

6.15.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

i. Salmonella typhi O: 1:(Respective titre)
ii. Salmonella typhi H: 1 :(Respective titre)

Rapid/ white tile widal test

Granular agglutination in case of “O” and flocculating agglutination in case of “H” indicate positive reaction **Quantitative slide/white tile test**

A diagnostic titre of 1:80 suggest positive results

6.15.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Rapid slide tests or quantitative slide tests are non-specific type of test. The positive results should be further confirmed by tube test and other microbiological investigations

6.15.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer data for verification report

6.15.17 Supporting Documents

Not applicable

6.15.18 References

Reagent package insert for widal test

6.16 PROCEDURE FOR RHEUMATOID FACTOR TEST

6.16.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Qualitative determination of Rheumatoid Factor

6.16.2 Scope

The procedure is used for performing Qualitative determination of Rheumatoid Factor at serology section

6.16.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Assistant Medical Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for **implementing this procedure**

6.16.4 Principle

Rheumatoid Factor is based upon the agglutination reaction between Rheumatoid Factor (RF) of a patient Sample or control serum and human immunoglobulin G (Ig

G) coated onto polystyrene latex particles. The positive reaction is indicated by a distinctly visible agglutination of the latex particles in the test cell of the slide.

6.16.5 Sample Requirements

Serum collected from blood in plain tube (Red top) and centrifuged at 3000 rpm for 5 minutes

6.16.6 Equipment

Centrifuge and Shaker (automated rotator)

6.16.7 Materials

- RF latex reagent (white cap)
- Positive Control serum (red cap)
- Negative Control serum (green cap)

Supplies

- Disposable Gloves
- Micropipette
- Timer/stop watch
- Slide/ opaque tile

6.16.8 Storage and Stability

Serum; stability: up to 24 hours at 2-8^0 C, and up to 4 weeks at -20^0 c Reagents storage: 2 – 8 ^{0}C

6.16.9 Safety

- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All Samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
- Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice

6.16.10 Calibration

- Auxilliary equipment should be calibrated annually performed by TBS as per schedule

6.16.11 Quality Control

- Positive control and Negative control are to be used with each series. Their results should be compared with the unknown Sample to distinguish possible granularity from agglutination.
- **Positive control** –distinct agglutination within 2 minutes

- **Negative control** – smooth suspension with no visible agglutination after 2 minutes

6.16.12 Procedural Steps

a. Bring latex reagent, controls and serum samples to room temperature.
b. Place 1 drop (40ul) serum sample/controls onto respectively separate cells of the card.
c. Add 1 drop of latex reagent
d. Mix with separate sticks and spread the fluid over the entire area of the particular cell.
e. Tilt the slide back and forth for 2 minutes.
f. At the end of the 2 minutes read the results under bright light.

6.16.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicable.

6.16.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

- Distinct agglutination indicates a RF content of more than 20IU/ml in the nondiluted serum Sample.
- Sera with positive results in the screening test should be re-tested in the titration test

6.16.15 Limitations Of The Procedure And Sources Of Error

Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damage pouch. Use only clear, non-hemolyzed sample

6.16.16 Performance Characteristcs

Refer to method verification report

6.16.17 Supporting DocumentsS

Sample collection manual and safety manual

6.16.18 References

Manufactures User manual

6.17 PROCEDURE FOR CHORELA RAPID DIAGNOSTIC TEST

6.17.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing rapid Bioline Cholera Ag O1/ 0139 test

6.17.2 Scope

The procedure is used for performing rapid Bioline Cholera Ag O1/ 0139 test in Microbiology section.

6.17.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for performing this test

6.17.4 Principle

Cholera antigen test contains a membrane strip which is precoated with mouse monoclonal anti- *vibrio cholera* O1 antibody on test line O1 region and with the device. These line in result window are not visible before applying any sample. The control line is used for procedural control. Control line should always appear if the test procedure is performed properly and the test reagents of control line are working.

A purple test line will be visible in the result window if *vibrio cholera* O1 and/or O139 antigens are present in the sample.

When a sample is added to the test, vibrio cholera O1 and O139 antigens in the sample react with colloidal gold-labelled *V. Cholerae* O1 and *V. Cholerae* O139 specific antibodies and form a complex of antigen-antibody colloidal gold conjugates. As this complex migrates along the length of the result window by capillary action, the complex is captured by the mouse monoclonal *V. cholerae* 01 antibody on test line 01 (O1) and mouse monoclonal *V. cholerae* 0139 antibody in the test line 0139 (0139) across the result window and generates a colored line. In the absence of *V. cholerae* 01 and 0139 antigen in specimens, a complex is not formed and no colored test line appears in the result window of test device.

6.17.5 Sample Requirement

Human stool sample

6.17.6 Equipment

Refrigerator

6.17.7 Materials

Disposable gloves, Timer, Biohazard bag, Test device, Sample collection tube with extraction buffer, Sample collection swab for solid stool samples and Sample collection dropper for liquid stool samples

6.17.8 Storage and Stability

a) ***For best result stool sample should be tested as soon as possible after*** collection.
b) Extracted stool sample is stable for 72 hours when store in 2-8ºC
c) Do not use stool sample in transport media or preservatives

6.17.9 Safety

a) Wear protective gloves while handling sample and wash hands after testing
b) Do not mix or interchange different specimens
c) Decontaminate and dispose all sample test kits and potentially contaminated materials in a biohazard container as if they were infectious.
d) Do not mix reagents of different lots or those of other products.

6.17.10 Calibration

Not applicable

6.17.11 Quality Control

a) the cholera antigen rapid test has three test lines O1, O139 and control line. The control line is used for procedural control and shows that the diluent has been applied successfully and that the active ingredients of main components on the strip are functional.
b) Use samples with known results (positive and negative) to test each test kit batch before use and ensure the results correlate with the respective control samples.

6.17.12 Procedural Steps

Specimen Collection

In case of solid stool sample.

a) Loosen the filter cap of the sample collection tube.
b) Collect the sufficient stool sample (about 50mg) from different 4-5 sites of stool specimens using the sample collection swab.
c) Immediately place the swab into the sample collection tube.
d) Vigorously mix the solution by rotating the swab at least 10 times against the side of the sample collection tube.
e) Release as much liquid as possible from the swab by squeezing the sides of the swab as the swab is withdrawn.
f) Discard the swab and then assemble filter cap on the sample collection tube.

In case of liquid stool sample.

a) Loosen the filter cap of the sample collection tube.
b) Draw liquid specimens up to the fill line (about 300ul) using disposable dropper.
c) Immediately transfer liquid sample into the sample collection tube.

d) Discard the dropper and then assemble filter cap on the sample collection tube.

6.17.13 Testing Procedure.

a) Bring the test device and sample to reach a temperature between 15-30ºC for at least 30 minutes in case they were refrigerated.
b) Remove the test device form the foil pouch and place it on a flat, dry surface.
c) Shake the collection tube thoroughly to ensure proper mixing of the sample with extraction buffer.
d) Loosen the nozzle cap of the sample collection tube.
e) Hold the collection tube vertically and dispense 3 drops(70ul) into the sample well of test device.
f) Wait a minimum of 15 minutes then read results. Do not read test results after 15 minutes; reading results after 15 minutes can yield false results.

6.17.14 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

6.17.15 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results

A coloured control line will appear in the left section of the result window to show that the test is working properly.

Coloured lines will appear in the middle and right section of the result window. These lines are test line 0139 and test line 01 (0139, 01).

Negative Result: The presence of only control line (C) within the result window indicates a negative result.

Positive Result: The presence of two lines as control line (C) and test line 01 (O1) within the result window indicates a positive result for *V. cholerae* 01 antigen. The presence of two lines as control line (C) and test line 0139 (0139) within the result window indicates a positive result for *V. cholerae* 0139 antigen.

The presence of three lines as control line (C) test line 01 (O1) and test line 0139 (0139) within the result window indicates a positive result for *V. cholerae* 01 and 0139 antigen.

Caution: The presence of any line, no matter how faint, the result is considered positive.

Invalid Result: If the control line (C) is not visible within the result window after performing the test, the result is considered invalid.

6.17.16 Limitations Of The Procedure And Sources Of Error

a) A negative result does not exclude the possibility of *V. cholerae* 01 and/or 0139 infection in a patient. Failure to detect *V. cholerae* 01 and/or 0139 may be a result of factors such as collection of specimens at an improper time in the disease when few bacteria are present and improper sampling or handling of the sample.
b) A positive result does not preclude the presence of other enteric pathogens. While the relationship between cholera and gastroenteritis is well established, concurrent infection with other microbial pathogens is possible. Additional microbiological tests should be performed in parallel with Bioline Cholera Ag O1/ 0139 test kit in order to exclude other possible causes of the illness.
c) Test results should be interpreted in conjunction with information available from epidemiological studies, clinical symptoms of the patient and other diagnostic procedures.

6.17.17 Performance Characteristics

Refer to manufacture user manual

6.17.18 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

6.17.19 References

Refer to manufacture user manual

CHAPTER 7: BACTERIOLOGY AND MYCOLOGY

7.1 POTASSIUM HYDROXIDE (KOH) WET MOUNT PREPARATION

7.1.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for examination of wet preparations that is mainly used to examine samples and cultures for motile bacteria, C.S.F for capsulated yeast cells and for fungi.

7.1.2 Scope

This procedure applies to the microbiology section and health laboratory practitioners in the laboratory settings.

7.1.3 Responsibility

Competent Health Laboratory Practitionersare responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head of Microbiology/who asned is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

7.1.4 Principle

A KOH preparation is used for Samples such as skin scrapings, nail, infected hairs, or for other Samples such as sputum to clear out background debris that may be confused with fungal elements. KOH dissolves proteinaceous tissues, including keratin, and renders them transparent. This enables fungi to be visualized more easily. The use of KOH is not necessary for Samples such as CSF where background debris is minimal.

7.1.5 Sample Requirements

KOH preparation is used ideally in suspected cases of dermatophytosis, i.e., fungal infection of skin, hair, or nails. Also used for sample such as sputum, pus, and urine sediment.

7.1.6 Equipment Microscope

7.1.7 Materials

Potassium hydroxide 10 or 20%, Potassium hydroxide 10 g, Glycerol 10ml, Deionized water 80ml, (optional) helps prevent the KOH mount from drying. Dispense working solution in a dropper bottle. Microscope slides, 24 x 50 mm cover slips, sterile forceps, mounting needle

7.1.8 Storage and Stability

Potassium hydroxide, 10 or 20% solution is stable for one year at room temperature

7.1.9 Safety

Observe standard safety precautions when handling Samples. Refer to Safety Manual Discard all used materials (e.g., sticks, pipettes, disposable forceps) in a bucket containing bleach.

7.1.10 Calibration Not applicable

7.1.11 Quality Control

Fungal spores may contaminate the KOH solution, and may give false positive results. Solution must be examined for signs of contamination (e.g., turbidity) before each use.

7.1.12 Procedure Steps

i. Place the material to be examined on a glass slide, add a drop of 10% KOH
ii. Place a cover slip over the preparation. iii. Let stand for five to ten minutes. iv. If clearing is not complete, an additional ten minutes is necessary.

Note: Keratinous (skin, nails) Samples should be left at room temperature for 20 to 30 minutes to allow digestion and "clearing" of the keratin, after clearing, press coverslip gently to make a thin mount.

v. Examine the slide microscopically on low power and confirm observations with high power. Observe for hyphae, conidia, budding yeasts, spherules or sclerotic bodies, etc. Consult photomicrographs in appropriate references when necessary, to identify fungal structure.

7.1.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicalbe

7.1.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation

Dermatophytes in skin or nail are seen as branching hyphae or arthrospores and often appear slightly greenish in color, with hyphae running across the colorless host cells. Most hyphae will be parallel-sided and around 2 µm in width. Yeasts are present as budding cells, pseudohyphae, or yeast mycelium.

In infections caused by dematiaceous fungi, the hyphae are often brown (dematiaceous septate hyphae).

Artifacts, such as fibers, may be distinguished from hyphae from the lack of septa, tapering ends, and size differences.

Reporting of Results

Report the type of fungal structure seen. Do not report quantity.

Examples: "Fungal elements seen (septate hyphae)"

"Fungal elements seen (yeast cells and pseudohyphae)"

Report negative results as: "No fungal elements seen"

Report as: "Fungal elements seen (*Malassezia* spp.)"

7.1.15 Limitations of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

i. Cotton swabs should not be used in preparing these slides as the cotton strands may resemble hyphae. ii. The contrast between unstained fungal elements that may be present and the background mounting fluid can be accentuated by narrowing the iris diaphragm to reduce the amount of incident light; or use of phase-contrast microscopy that can greatly enhance visualization of organisms. iii. KOH preparations are presumptive and should not be substituted for culture and further identification.

iv. KOH should not be stored in a glass bottle as it will leach minerals from the glass. The minerals will result in a cloudy, flocculant solution. This can be avoided by storing the KOH in plastic, polystyrene or other non-glass container.

v. Gentle heating may speed the activity of the KOH, but it may be harmful to the sample if overdone.

vi. KOH preparations are not permanent; the reagent will eventually destroy the fungi. The addition of small amount of glycerol to the preparation will preserve it for several days.

vii. KOH combined with calcofluor white is a more sensitive method, but a fluorescent microscope with appropriate filter is required.

viii. India ink, added to the KOH, stains fungal elements and helps them stand out against the background. Reagent is prepared as follows: Make a 10% KOH solution in Parker Super Quink Ink, permanent blue black (50 ml of ink + 5 g of KOH pellets). Centrifuge KOH-ink solution at 2,000 x g for ten minutes. Pour supernatant into plastic (not glass) sterile tube. Store at room temperature.

7.1.16 Performance Characteristics Not applicable

7.1.17 Supporting Documents Not applicable

7.1.18 References

Lynne S. Garcia, Henry D. Isenberg. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. 3rd edition.

American Society for Microbiology. Washington DC, USA. 2010.

Guidelines on Standard Operating Procedures for Laboratory Diagnosis of HIV/AIDS Opportunistic Infections in Patients. WHO Regional Office for Southeast Asia. New Delhi. June 2001

Bailey and Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology. 13th edition. Mosby, Inc. St. Louis, Missouri, USA. 2013.

7.2 PROCEDURE FOR ZIEHL NIELSEN (ZN) STAIN

7.2.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Ziehl-Nielsen stain of sputum or other body fluid samples.

7.2.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for detection of Acid Fast Bacilli in sputum or other body fluid samples in the Laboratory

7.2.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.2.4 Principle

This procedure is used to stain mycobacterium tuberculosis and mycobacterium leprae. These bacteria are also called acid fast bacilli. They stain with carbolfuschin, which is a red dye. They retain the dye when treated with acid, which is because of the presence of mycolic acid in their cell wall.

7.2.5 Sample Requirements

The Sputum and body fluids such as CSF, synovial, pericardial, synovial, ascitic, blood, pus, bone marrow, tissue biopsies or pleural fluid samples.

7.2.6 Equipment

Centrifuge (when necessary), Bunsen burner/spirit lamp, Light Microscope and Biosafety cabinet

7.2.7 Materials

ZN stains reagents: 1% Carbol Fuchsin stain, 20% Sulphuric acid and 0.125% Methylene blue. Acid Fast Bacilli Positive and negative Control slides for zn.

Personal protective gears, Gauze, Glass slides, Staining racks, Drying rack, Clean Glass slides, Applicator stick, Micropipette or Pasture pipettes,sputum container,timer

7.2.8 Storage and Stability

Sputum samples should be proccesed within 3days if stored at room temperature and if not possible store it at 2 to 8°C for 10 days.

7.2.9 Safety

Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines.

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

7.2.10 Calibration

Centrifuge and safety cabinety should be calibrated as per schedule

7.2.11 Quality Control

Perform IQuality control by Smearing and staining known Negative and positive sample /EQA before examining any patient sample every day. Perform lot to lot for every new batch of reagent received

7.2.12 Procedure Steps

i. Place the fixed slides with smear upwards on a staining rack over a sink about 1 cm apart.
ii. Flood the smear with filtered carbol fuchsin staining solution.
iii. Prepare a torch by dipping its cotton wool end in burning spirit and light it.
Use only a few drops on acid alcohol or 70% v/v ethanol or methanol.
iv. Heat the slide keeping the torch a little below the slide and moving it continuously forth and back along the line until steam arises, repeat twice at intervals of 3-5 minutes. Do not overheat. Allow slides to stand for at least 30 minutes.
v. Tilt the slide using forceps to drain off the staining solution.
vi. Rinse the slide well with clean water from a beaker (or running tap water).
vii. Pour the 20% Sulphuric acid or 3%Hcl over the smears, covering them completely. Allow to act for 3 minutes.
viii. Tilt the slide with forceps to drain off the acid solution; then gently rinse the slide again with clean water.

ix. Repeat covering by sulphuric acid or Hcl solution and rinsing once for smears that are still red.

x. Flood smear with methylene blue solution for 1 minute.

xi. Tilt the slide with forceps draining off the Methylene blue solution. xii. Wash with clean water.

xiii. Using forceps take the slide from rack, drain off water and stand the slide on the edge to air dry on the drying rack.

xiv. Examine the smear microscopically first with the 40x objective to see the distribution of material, then with the oil immersion objective to look for Acid Fast Bacilli . Open fully the condenser iris when using the oil immersion lens. After examining a positive smear, the oil immersion objective must be wiped clean.

Note: The stained smear should show a light blue colour from methylene blue. If the smear is dark blue, it usually indicates that the smear is too thick.

7.2.13 Biological Reference interval

Not applicable

7.2.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Acid Fast Bacilli appears as Red, straight or slightly curved rods, occurring singly or in small.

If any definite red bacilli are seen, report the smear as Negative If no red bacilli are seen in at least 100 fields and 'Acid Fast Bacilli positive' if give an indication of the number of bacteria present as follows:

More than 10 AFB/HPF field	Report + + + OR +3
1 – 10 AFB/HPF field	Report + + OR +2
10 - 99 AFB/100 fields	Report + OR +1
-9 AFB/100 fields	Report the exact number/100
If no red bacilli are seen in at least 100 fields	Report as negative

7.2.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Re use of containers or positive slides.

ii. Contaminated stain prepared with water containing environmental mycobacteria.

iii. Use of scratched slides.

iv. Acid Fast Bacilli floated off one slide and became attached to another during staining procedure because of no distance between each slide.

v. Poor quality of staining solutions.

vi. Taking improper portion of sample for smear preparation. vii. Improper focal distance for examination.

viii. Use of poorly prepared staining solution. ix. Overheating during fixing.

x. Too long interval between staining and reading, especially when slides not kept in dark or poorly stained.

7.2.16 Performance Characteristics Not applicable

7.2.17 Supporting Document

Patients Results Register - TB 05

Internal Quality Control review form

7.2.18 References

Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.

Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.

WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.

Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.

7.3 PROCEDURE FOR AURAMINE O PHENOL STAINING

7.3.1 Purpose

The Auramine O staining technique applies to identification of Acid Fast Bacilli in patient sample using fluorescence Microscopy which increase the rate of detection compared to the light microscopy.

7.3.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for detection of Acid Fast Bacilli in sputum or other body fluid samples in the Laboratory by using Auramine O reagents.

7.3.3 Responsibility

Competent Health Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure

7.3.4 Principle

The fluorochrome dye, Auramine-Rhodamine, forms a complex with mycolic acids contained in the acid fast cell wall of organisms which resist decolorization by acidalcohol. The counterstain, Methylene blue 0.3%, renders tissue and its debris non fluorescent, thus reducing the possibility of artifacts. The cells visualized under ultraviolet light appear bright yellow or reddish orange.

7.3.5 Sample Requirements

Mucoid, purulent or blood stained samples.

7.3.6 Equipment

Biosafety cabinet, Fluorescent microscopes, Timer, Bunsen burner/ Spirit lamp

7.3.7 Materials

Auramine –O phenol 0.1%, Hydrochloric acid in Alcohol 0.5%, Methylene blue 0.3%, Microscopic slides, Slide holding box, Gloves, Gauze/Cotton wool, Beaker, Forceps Applicator sticks/Disposable, Pencil, Dry rack, Slide racks, wide mouth sputum container for routine samples or Falcon tube 50ml for referral samples.

7.3.8 Storage and Stability

Sputum samples should be proccesed within 3 days if stored at room temperature and if not possible store it at 2 to 8°C for 10 days.

7.3.9 Safety

Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines.

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

7.3.10 Calibration

Centrifuge and safety cabinety should be calibrated as per schedule

7.3.11 Quality Control

Internal Quality Control should be done by smearing and staining known Negative and positive sample before examining any patient sample every day. Perform lot to lot for every new batch of reagent received/prepared.

7.3.12 Procedure

Film Preparation

i. Label the slides properly using a unique laboratory number

ii. Place the labeled slides, the samples and the applicator stick /Pasteur pipette in the Biological safety cabinet

iii. Match each slide with the corresponding sputum or sample container. iv. Proceed to smearing, taking the labeled slides and opening containers one by one, do the smearing from the center of the slide, outwards making small coil – like movements (A thin smear ,allow to air dry).

v. Select a small portion of purulent or muco-purulent material with the applicator stick for a direct sputum smear and then transfer it to the slide, if a stick is used, break it in two pieces and used ragged ends for dissecting sputum and for smearing.

vi. Spread the material carefully over the area equal to about 2×1 cm using repeated coil like movements, without touching the margins of the slides and should be in the middle.

vii. Make the smear as even as possible by continuing this process until no thick parts remain. Remove excess material with the second stick and discard in the biohazard bag.

viii. The thickness of the smear should be such that a newspaper can bared bye read through the dried smear held about 10cm above it (Translucent).

ix. Warm the slides on the slide warmer in the biological safety cabinet to dry and fix the smear for at least 30minutes.

x. Re-fix the smears by passing a flame under the slides before staining. xi. If the slide warmer is not functioning, air dry the smear then fix them by passing a flame under the smear ,the smear should face upward ,do not over heat ,or else Acid Fast Bacilli staining will be poor.

Fluorescent Microscopy Staining Procedure

Place the slides on staining rack. IT IS A MUST to keep distance of at least 1cm between every slide. Otherwise there is a possibility that acid fast bacilli may cross contaminate the negative smears due to over flooding or splashes from positive smear to a negative smear

i. Cover the smear completely with filtered 0.1% auramine solution **Do not heat**

ii. Leave for 15 minutes

iii. Wash the slides well with distilled water or running water

iv. Pour the acid alcohol solution over the slides.

v. Allow to act for 2- 3 minutes.

vi. Gently rinse each slide with distilled or running water. vii. Repeat decolourization if macroscopically visible stains are still visible.

viii. Flood smear with 0.5% methylene blue counter solution for 1 minute .Time is critical because counterstaining for longer time may quench the acid fast bacilli

ix. Gently wash off counterstain with distilled or running water.
x. Stand the slides on edge to drain and air dry on the slide rack away from direct sun light.

Examination

i. Keep stained smears in the dark (box or folder) till reading, and read as soon as possible (within 24hours) since fluorescence fades quickly out of the box.
ii. Use 20 x objectives for scanning and 40x confirmation; scan the stained smear systematically from one side to another side
iii. One length has to be scanned before reporting a Negative. iv. Acid-fast bacilli appear bright yellow against the dark background material.
v. Store the slides in a slide box according to the study, following the laboratory Number as they will be needed for EQA.

Note: Acid fast bacilli appear bright yellow against dark background, report as possible for Acid Fast Bacilli if at least one acid-fast bacillus was seen in a well stained smear, even if you think they might be other mycobacterium other than tubercle bacilli. Tubercle bacilli are quite variable in shapes from very short fragments to elongated types. They may be uniformly stained or with one or many gaps, or even granular. They occur singly or in small groups (coded), and rarely in large clumps. The typical appearance of bacillli are usually rather long and slender, straight or slightly curved rods.

7.3.13 Biological Reference interval Not applicable

7.3.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

If fluorescent Acid Fast Bacilli are seen, report the smear as Acid Fast Bacilli positive, and give an indication of the number of bacilli present in plus signs (+ to +++).

The results have to be reported on the working sheet and on patients result register (MTB Register 05 if available).

If no fluorescent rods are seen, report the smear as (NO AFB SEEN).

Report	**Fluorescence (200magnigication, one length 20x=field 200=HPF**	**Fluorescence (400magnigication, one length 40x =field 200=HPF**
Negative	Zero AFB/1 length	Zero AFB/1 length
Scanty	1-29 AFB/1 Length	1-19 AFB/1 Length
1+	30-299 AFB/1 Length	20-199 AFB/1 Length on average
2+	10-100 AFB/ 1field on average	5-50 AFB/1 field on average
3+	>100 AFB/ Field on average	>50 AFB/ Field on average

Critical values

Presence of Acid Fast Bacilli

7.3.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Direct reagents to Sun light
ii. Poor reagent quality
iii. Using wrong reagent Concentration
iv. Using unfiltered reagent
v. Using expired reagent
vi. Poor sample quality

7.3.16 Perfomance characteristics Not applicable

7.3.17 Supporting documents

Patients Results Register - TB 05 Internal Quality Control

7.3.18 References

International union against tubercle and lung diseases. The public health service national tuberculosis Reference laboratory and the national laboratory Network ,Paris 1998

Smithwick R.W laboratory Manual for acid fast microscopy .US Department of Health ,Education and Welfare,CDC,1979

Angra P, Becx-Bleumink M,Glipin C,et al,Ziehl Neelsen staining ,strong red on week blue, or weak red under strong blue Int J Tuberic Lung Dis 2007:11:1160-1

7.4 PROCEDURE FOR GRAMS STAINING

7.4.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions on the steps to be followed when performing Gram staining

7.4.2 Scope

This procedure will be used by all laboratory personnel perform gram staining to identify bacteria

7.4.3 Responsibility

It is the responsibility of the Head of Microbiology Section to ensure effectively implemented and maintained .

7.4.4 Principle

Gram stain based on the ability of bacteria cell wall. When the bacteria are stained with primary stain (crystal violet) and fixed by the mordant (Iodine), Gram Positive bacteria retain the primary stain when decolorized by ethanol (alcohol) because the cell walls of gram positive bacteria have THICK layer of protein-sugar components called

peptidoglycan and low lipid contents. Upon decolourization Gram positive bacteria causes thick cell wall to dehydrate and shrink, which closes the pores in the cell wall and prevent the stain from existing the cell, therefore ethanol cannot remove crystal Violet-Iodine complex that is bound to the thick layer which peptidoglycan and appears BLUE. While Gram Negative bacteria are decolorized by ethanol. For the gram negative bacteria cell wall takes up the crystal violet-iodine complex but due to the thin layer of peptidoglycan and thick outer layer with form of lipids, crystal violate- iodine complex gets washed off, when they are exposed to decolorizer dissolves the lipids in the cell walls which allow the crystal violet-iodine complex to lead out of the cells then when again stained with counterstain (safranin) they pick up the safranin and appears red in color.

7.4.5 Sample Requirement

Fresh collected Pus, urine sediment, CSF, sputum, other body fluids

7.4.6 Equipment

Microscope, Timer, Bunsen burner/hot plate

7.4.7 Materials

Reagents	Consumables
• Crystal violet as primary stain • Lugol's iodine as mordant • 10% Acid/Acetone as decolourizer • Neutral red/safranin as counter stain	• Gloves • Gauze • Waste bins • Grass slides • Applicator stick

7.4.8 Storage and Stability

i. Samples are stable at 2-8^{0}C for 7 daysdays
ii. store reagentas instructed by manufacturer

7.4.9 Safety

i. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Facility Safety manual/ IPC guideline
ii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iii. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

7.4.10 Calibration

Perform Equipment calibration as scheduled.

7.4.11 Quality Control

Quality control is done daily when receiving/preparing a new batch of reagents. A known sample ATCC for gram positive Staphylococcus aureus and for gram negative Escherichia coli bacteria respectively are used.

7.4.12 Procedural Steps

Smear preparation and staining

i. Slide with one end frosted should be used for making smears so that a lead pencil can be used to label the slide clearly.
ii. Use a sterile applicator stick to add one drop of normal saline on the slide.
iii. Use a sterile applicator stick to transfer one pure colony on the slide and make a smear iv. Allow smear to air dry on a flat safe place.
v. Flood the fixed smear with crystal violet for 30 seconds
vi. Decant crystal violet and rinse gently slide with running tap water
vii. Flood the slide with Lugol's iodine for 30 seconds
viii. Rinse off iodine gently with flowing tap water ix. Decolorize by letting the reagent flow over the smear while the slide is held at an angle or tilt slide.
x. Adjust decolourisations time to thickness of smear
xi. Remove excess decolorizer with gentle flow of tap water
xii. Flood with neutral red for 30 seconds
xiii. Remove excess neutral red with gentle flow of tap water
xiv. Drain slide and air dry in an upright position

Reading smears

Place the slide on the microscope and ensure that the smear is facing upward

7.4.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not Applicable

7.4.14 Interpretation And Reporting Of Results **Interpretation of results**

- If Bacteria pick the color of the counter stain (Neutral red/dilute Carbolfuschin/safranin) THEN report as Gram Negative (Cocci, Bacilli/Rod depending on morphological observed/identified cells)
- IF stained bacteria pick the color of the primary stain (crystal violet) THEN report as Gram Positive (Bacilli/Rods or cocci depending on observed identified cells)

Reporting of results

- Results should be reported as Gram Positive Rods or Cocci according to the morphology of the bacteria or
- Gram NEGATIVE Rods or Bacilli according to the shape of bacteria

7.4.15 Limitations Of The Procedure And Source Of Error

Avoid over staining, Avoid over decolourization Do not use expired reagent.

7.4.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report of this procedure

7.4.17 Supporting Document Sample collection manual

7.4.18 References

Districtlaboratory practice in tropical countries. Part 2: AuthorMonica Cherbourg 6th edition

7.5 PROCEDURE FOR INDIAN INK STAIN

7.5.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Indian ink stain to demonstrate cell capsules through microscopic examination eg Cryptococcus neoformans in human.

7.5.2 Scope

This procedure is used in microbiology departmentto demonstrate cell capsules through microscopic examination.

7.5.3 Principle

*Cryptococcus neoformans*affects immunocompromised hosts predominantly and is the most common cause of fungal meningitis. Preparations of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in India ink will allow the presumptive identification of encapsulated cryptococcal cells. This stain is also suitable to use on other body fluids and urine. The cryptococcal polysaccharide capsule is present on nearly all *Cryptococcus* spp. and is resistant to coloration by India ink. The capsular material of cryptococci displaces the colloidal carbon particles of the ink so that the capsule appears as a clear halo around the microorganisms against a black background. This procedure is not a staining technique but a method that creates the illusion of dark-field microscopy.

7.5.4 Responsibility

Qualified trained and competent laboratory staff can perform this test.

Head of section is responsible to ensure implementation and competence assessment for all staff.

7.5.5 Sample Requirements CSF, other body fluids, urine

7.5.6 Equipment

Microscope, Centrifuge. **Maintenance**

Maintenance of equipment should be performed as planned.

7.5.7 Materials

India Ink, aqueous suspension. Nigrosin stain may also be used.

Microscope slides, 24 x 50 mm coverslips, sterile loops, sterile transfer pipettes, sterile disposable centrifuge tubes.

7.5.8 Storage and Stability

Sample and in-house prepared IQuality control can be stored in a -20^{O}C for one year.

7.5.9 Safety

Treat all samples and slides as potential infectious. Adhere to Safety manual and IPC guidline.

7.5.10 Calibration

Calibration of equipment should be performed as planned

7.5.11 Quality Control (Quality control)

- Ensure that all media and supplies used have passed the required Quality control and are used within their expiry date.
- India ink controls should be run simultaneously with the sample being tested. Record results on Quality control form.
- Stain Control: Place a drop of India ink on a slide, cover with coverslip, and examine for signs of contamination. Do not use if extraneous material or organisms are present in the stain control slide.
- Positive Control: One drop of *Cryptococcus neoformans* suspension + one drop India ink.
- Negative Control: One drop of *Candida albicans*suspension + one drop India ink.
- Record results on Quality control form.

7.5.12 Procedure Steps

i. Make the preparation in the center of a clean, grease-free glass slide.

ii. Put one small drop of India ink on the center of the slide. iii. Put one drop of the sample close to the drop of the stain. iv. Mix the two drops well with a sterile loop or wooden applicator stick.

v. Hold the coverslip vertically such that one edge just touches the fluid on the side. The fluid will spread on the edge by surface tension.

vi. Keeping the edge in contact with the fluid surface, drop the coverslip gently on the fluid.

vii. If there are air bubbles, the surface of the coverslip may be gently tapped by a needle point, to move the bubbles towards the edge, but this should be avoided as far as practicable.

viii. Examine slide immediately under the bright field microscope.

ix. Examine the entire coverslip under low power and high power magnification.

x. Too much stain makes the background too dark. If the staining appears too dark, add a drop of water on one side of the coverslip and gently tap the coverslip. This dilutes the stain to some extent.

xi. The edges of the coverslip should be especially examined. While placing the coverslip, the yeast cells tend to move towards the periphery along with the fluid. For this reason, the practice of draining the extra fluid from the sides should be avoided.

7.5.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicale

7.5.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results **Interpretation**

- Encapsulated yeast cells are seen under low power as luminous dots in an otherwise dark background. Under high power (100x to 200x), the cells can be seen containing refractile nuclei, and surrounded by the unstained thickness of the capsule.
- The capsules of cryptococci are usually sharply outlined and the well-defined yeast cell wall is centrally located within the capsule.
- Capsules may be broad or narrow. The yeast cells may be round, oval, or elongate; buds may be absent, single, or, rarely, multiple. The buds may be detached from the mother cells but enclosed in a common capsule.
- Besides the classical budding-yeast form, various unusual forms can also be seen including elongated forms that look like pseudohyphae; this is mainly due to the very high multiplication rate of the organism in HIV/AIDS patients.
- In the very late stage in progressive AIDS, it may be difficult to differentiate the capsules of individual cells; the organism may remain enmeshed in a matting of the capsular material.
- False positive reactions may occur with air bubbles or monocytes. Air bubbles, under the high power, will be hollow and will not show the typical cell with characteristic nuclei. Monocytes have a crenated margin, and will not show the characteristic nuclei, and the luminous halo around the cell is not well demarcated

Reporting of Results

- Preparations showing budding encapsulated yeast cells should be reported out as:
- "Positive – Encapsulated yeast cells seen."
- Preparations showing no encapsulated yeast cells or where questionable structures are seen should be reported out as:
- "Negative - No encapsulated yeast cells seen.”

- India ink preparation is a presumptive test. Results obtained with a presumptive test must be consistent with other information regarding the yeast (e.g., colony and cell morphology) and the clinical sample from which the yeast was isolated.
- Characteristics of *C. neoformans*:
  - *Culture (SDA)**:*** Colonies are cream-colored smooth and mucoid.
  - *Microscopy***:** Globose to ovoid budding yeast-like cells 3.0-7.0 x 3.3-7.9 µm.
  - *Plate Culture on Cornmeal with Tween 80 Agar***:** Budding yeast cells only. No pseudohyphae present.
  - *Bird Seed Agar***:** Colonies turn dark brown in color as colonies selectively absorb a brown pigment from this media
  - *Germ Tube test*: Negative o *Hydrolysis of Urea:* Positive o *Growth on Cycloheximide medium:* Negative. o *Growth at 37°C:* Weakly Positive

7.5.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

- Positive India ink smears may be used as a presumptive diagnosis only. Definitive diagnosis must be accomplished by culture and/or antigenic detection (Cryptococcal latex antigen test).
- In case of HIV positive patients, > 90% of the cases may be positive by the India ink test, whereas in non-HIV cases, < 60% positivity is seen.
- Non-pathogenic Cryptococci and other yeast spp. may produce capsules.
- Micro- or non-capsulated varieties of the organism are also reported on rare occasion. In such cases, Gram stain of the sample is helpful in identification.
- If the protein content of the CSF is too high, India ink sometimes may form floccules, which make it difficult to demonstrate the capsule.
- In case of Nigrosin stain, the preparation dries up quite fast, which is a problem in hot climatic conditions, so quick examination is essential.

7.5.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification of the test.

7.5.17 Supporting Documents

Safety manual, Sample collection manual.

7.5.18 References

- Isenberg, H.D. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. 3rd edition American Society for Microbiology. Washington DC, USA. 2010.
- Guidelines on Standard Operating Procedures for Laboratory Diagnosis of HIV/AIDS Opportunistic Infections in Patients. WHO Regional Office for Southeast Asia. New Delhi. June 2001
- Bailey and Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology. Mosby, Inc. St. Louis, Missouri, USA. 13th ed. 2013

7.6 PREPARATION OF CULTURE MEDIA

7.6.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for preparing media

7.6.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used in preparation of different media in Microbiology section

7.6.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Laboratory practitioners are responsible for doing this test procedure. The section heads of microbiology are responsible for ensuring the effective implementation for this procedure.

7.6.4 Principle

The principle of media preparation in microbiology is to provide a nutrient-rich environment for the growth of microorganisms. This involves combining the necessary ingredients in the correct proportions and sterilizing the medium to remove any contaminating organisms.

7.6.5 Sample Requirements Not Applicable

7.6.6 Equipment

Electronic balances, Autoclave

7.6.7 Materials

Material

- Gloves, Autoclavable tape, Petri dishes

Reagents

- Desoxycholate Citrate Agar (DCA),
- MacConkey Agar, Selenite F broth,
- Sorbitol MacConkey (SMAC) *E. coli* O157: H7
- Blood agar Plate (BAP)
- Thiosulphate Citrate Bile Salt Sucrose Agar (TCBS),
- Xylose Lysine Desoxycholate Agar (XLD),
- Chocolate agar, Ethyle methylene blue agar

7.6.8 Storage and Stability

- **Reagents:** Store according to manufacturer's specifications.
- **Kits:** Refer to manufacturer's specifications
- Media should be refrigerated as per manufacturer instructions

7.6.9 Safety

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for healthcare services in Tanzania, February 2007.

7.6.10 Calibration Not Applicable

7.6.11 Quality Control

For BA, MCA,

Test prepared media for sterility, ability to support growth, and ability to produce appropriate biochemical reactions. Record results on Quality Control Form. If Quality control results are acceptable, label all media bags with Quality control labels.

Do not use media with unacceptable Quality control results. Document Quality control failures and corrective action taken. Inform tech-in-charge of all Quality control failures.

For KIA/TSI

Incubate 10% of the TSI/KIA agar tubes in the incubator at 35^{o}C overnight to check for sterility. Store the prepared TSI/KIA tubes in the refrigerator.

For quality control the following organisms should be inoculated and checked for confirmation of biochemical reactions:

a) *Escherichia coli* should give an acid slant and butt, with the production of gas but no H_2S.

b) *Shigella flexneri* should give an alkaline slant, acid butt, without production of gas or H_2S.

c) *Proteus spp* should cause blackening of the media indicating production of H_2S.

For XLD

• Known *Salmonella typhimurium* and Shigella spp are inoculated in the media and should show the required reactions. *E. coli* is inoculated to show the colour changes.

7.6.12 Procedural Steps **Preparation of Media**

7.6.12.1 Sheep Blood Agar (BA)

i. Weigh the blood agar base according to the instructions given on the label of the media powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If necessary, heat with frequent agitation and boil for I minute to completely dissolve the powder.

II. Autoclave at 121°C for 15 minutes. Cool the medium to 50°C then add sterile defibrinated sheep blood. Mix well gently.

III. Aseptically pour into sterile petri dishes. Allow media to cool at room temperature to remove excess moisture. **Do not leave lids ajar because this medium is easily contaminated**. Note: Media dispensing is best done inside the BSC to minimize contamination.

iv. The prepared sheep blood agar plate should appear a bright red colour. If the plates appear dark red, the blood has been added when the agar was too hot; if this happens, the medium should be discarded and a new batch prepared.

v. Label plates with media name and preparation date. vi. Wrap plates in plastic bags, 10 plates per bag. Leave appropriate number of plates outside for quality control (Quality control). Label media bags with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature. VII. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

viii. Perform media Quality control.

Storage

Store wrapped plates at 2° to 8°C for up to 8 weeks.

Prior to inoculation with patient samples, prepared media that have been refrigerated should be removed from refrigeration and equilibrated to room temperature. This is to allow water of condensation to evaporate or dissipate and to avoid temperature shock to the inoculum.

7.6.12.2 Chocolate Agar

i. Weigh the blood agar base according to the instructions given on the label of the media powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If necessary, heat with frequent agitation and boil for I minute to completely dissolve the powder.

ii. Autoclave, and cool to 50°C in a water bath.

iii. Add 5% sterile defibrinated sheep blood (5ml blood per 100 ml agar). Mix well gently then place in a hot water bath at no more than 80°C for 15 minutes or until a chocolate colour is achieved. Cool media to 50°C. iv. Haemoglobin solution may be used if sheep blood is not available: Prepare a solution of 2% haemoglobin (5g in 250 ml distilled water). Mix the haemoglobin in 5-6 ml of distilled water to from a smooth paste. Continue mixing as the rest of the water is added. Autoclave, and cool to 50°C. Add the sterile haemoglobin solution to 250 ml agar base and continue to hold at 50°C.

v. Aseptically pour into sterile petri dishes. Allow to cool at room temperature to remove excess moisture. **Do not leave lids ajar because this medium is easily contaminated**. Note: Media dispensing is best done inside the BSC to minimize contamination.

vi. Label plates with media name and preparation date.

vii. Wrap plates in plastic bags, 10 plates per bag. Leave appropriate number of plates outside for quality control (Quality control). Label media bags with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

viii. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

ix. Perform media Quality Control.

Storage

- Store wrapped plates at 2º to 8ºC for up to 8 weeks.
- Prior to inoculation with patient samples, prepared media that have been refrigerated should be removed from refrigeration and equilibrated to room temperature. This is to allow water of condensation to evaporate or dissipate and to avoid temperature shock to the inoculum

7.6.12.3 MacConkey Agar (MCA)

i. Weigh the MAC agar according to the instructions given on the label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If required, heat with frequent agitation and boil for I minute to completely dissolve the powder.

ii. Autoclave and cool the medium to 50ºC. Aseptically pour into sterile petri dishes. Media dispensing is best done inside the BSC to minimize contamination. Allow to cool at room temperature to remove excess moisture.

iii. Label plates with media name and preparation date. iv. Wrap plates in plastic bags, 10 plates per bag. Leave appropriate number of plates outside for quality control (Quality control). Label media bags with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

v. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

vi. Perform media Quality control

Storage

Store wrapped plates at 2o to 8oC for up to 8 weeks. Prior to inoculation with patient samples, prepared media that have been refrigerated should be removed from refrigeration and equilibrated to room temperature.

This is to allow water of condensation to evaporate or dissipate and to avoid temperature shock to the inoculum.

7.6.12.4 Cysteine Lactose Electrolyte Deficient (CLED)

i. Weigh the CLED agar according to the instructions given on the manufacturer's label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If required, heat with frequent agitation and boil for one minute to completely dissolve the powder.

ii. Autoclave and cool the medium to 50ºC. Aseptically pour into sterile petri dishes. Allow to cool at room temperature to remove excess moisture.

iii. Label plates with media name and preparation date.

iv. Wrap plates in plastic bags, ten plates per bag. Leave appropriate number of plates outside for quality control (Quality control). Label media bags with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

v. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

vi. Perform media Quality control

Storage

Wrapped plates at 2^{o} to 8^{o}C for up to 8 weeks.

Prior to inoculation with patient samples, prepared media that have been refrigerated should be removed from refrigeration and equilibrated to room temperature. This is to allow water of condensation to evaporate or dissipate and to avoid temperature shock to the inoculum.

7.6.12.5 Lysine Iron Agar (LIA)

i. Weigh the lysine iron agar according to the instructions given on the label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If required, heat with frequent agitation and boil for I minute to completely dissolve the powder.

ii. Dispense into tubes and autoclave with screw caps loosened. iii. Cool tubes in a slanted position to form slants with deep butts. iv. Tighten tube caps. Label tubes with media name and preparation date.

v. Place tubes in a carton box. Label media box with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

vi. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

vii. Perform media quality control (Quality control).

Storage

Stored at 4°C for up to 6 months. Make sure caps are tightly closed to prevent evaporation.

7.6.12.6 UREA

i. Weigh the urea agar base according to instructions given on the label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If necessary, heat with frequent agitation and boil for I minute to completely dissolve the powder. ii. Autoclave media then cool to 50oC in a water bath. Add appropriate amount of sterile 40% urea solution.

iii. Dispense into sterile screw-cap tubes then allow to cool. For Christensen's agar, allow to cool in a slanted position for use as slants.

iv. Tighten tube caps. Label tubes with media name and preparation date.

v. Place tubes in a carton box. Label media box with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

vi. Record media preparation on appropriate form. **vii.** Perform media quality control (Quality control).

Storage

Store at 4°C for up to 6 months. Make sure caps are tightly closed to prevent evaporation.

7.6.12.7 Muller Hinton Media

i. Weigh required amount of culture media powder (as per manufacture's instruction).

ii. Add required volume of distilled water. iii. Mix by swirling to dissolve the powder and then boil on the hot plate to complete dissolve the contents.

iv. Autoclave the medium at 121˚C for 15 minutes.

v. Allow the media to cool according to manufacturer's instruction.

vi. Dispense the media at correct volume into Petri dishes.

vii. Let the media solidify then store the media in refrigerator for further use.

To Prepare Mueller Hinton Agar with Sheep Blood (MHB):

i. Cool medium to 50oC and aseptically add 5% sterile defibrinated sheep blood. Mix well.

ii. Check the pH of each batch of MHA and MHB when the medium is prepared. The agar medium should have a pH of 7.3 ± 0.1 at room temperature and must therefore be checked after gelling. Check the pH by one of the following means:

iii. Macerate enough agar to submerge the tip of a pH electrode;

iv. Allow a small amount of agar to solidify around the tip of a pH electrode in a beaker or cup;

v. Use a surface electrode. vi. If the pH is outside the range, the pH of the medium should not be adjusted by the addition of acid or base, i.e., the batch of the Mueller Hinton plates should be discarded and a new batch of plates prepared. If the pH for every batch is too high or low, the entire lot of dehydrated medium may have to be returned to the manufacturer as unsatisfactory. vii. Allow the medium to cool further to room temperature to remove excess moisture. Do not leave lids ajar because this medium is easily contaminated.

viii. Label plates with media name and preparation date. ix. Wrap plates in plastic bags, 10 plates per bag. Leave appropriate number of plates outside for quality control (Quality control).

x. Label media bags with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

xi. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

XII. Perform media Quality control.

Storage

Store wrapped plates at 2º to 8ºC for up to 8 weeks.

Prior to inoculation with patient samples, prepared media that have been refrigerated should be removed from refrigeration and equilibrated to room temperature. This is to allow water of condensation to evaporate or dissipate and to avoid temperature shock to the inoculum.

Just before use, if excess moisture is on the surface, MHA plates can be placed in the incubator (35º to 37ºC) until the moisture evaporates (usually 10–30 minutes). **Do not leave lids ajar because the medium is easily contaminated.**

7.6.12.8 Sabourad Dextrose Agar -SDA

i. Materials needed:

ii. Peptic digest of animal tissue……5g

iii. Pancreatic digest of casein…….5g

iv. Dextrose……40g v. Agar……15g vi. Clean glassware carefully with detergent & rinse well with distilled water.

vii. Prepare according to manufacturer's instructions. Suspend 65gm of the powder in 1000mls of distilled water. If more or less than 1000mls of the media is required to be prepared, then use this as a formula and calculate the required amount.

viii. Mix thoroughly, heat with frequent agitation and boil for 1 minute to completely dissolve the powder. Sterilize the mixture by autoclaving at 121ºC for 15 minutes.

ix. Allow the medium to cool to about 50ºC in a water bath.

x. Dispense in sterile Petri dishes to a uniform depth of 3-4mm.

xi. Let the medium solidify at a level surface.

xii. Label with Lot number, date of preparation (can be the lot number) & media name (abbreviations of the media can be used).

xiii. Store media in the dark at 2-8ºC (avoid freezing).

7.6.12.9 Thayer-Martin Agar

Preparation

i. Weigh 7.2g Thayer-Martin agar powder and put in the flask.

ii. Add 100mls of distilled water.

iii. Leave the powder to dissolve for about 5 minutes.

iv. Mix the mixture thoroughly.

v. Autoclave the medium at 121ºC for 15 minutes.

vi. Allow the media to cool to 60ºC. vii. Aseptically add 100ml sterile hemoglobin solution 2% and 2mls supplement B or VX then mix well.

viii. Dispense the media into sterile plastic Petri dishes to a volume of 20mls approximate. Weight for the media to solidify.
ix. Label with the permanent marker on the plate lid TM, your names initials and the batch number.
x. Perform sterility check by placing one plate in the incubator and the other on room temperature overnight.
xi. Place the plates in plastic bags labeling outside the bag with the date prepared and the name to the media that is TM.

7.6.12.10 Thiosulphate Citrate Bile Salt –TCBS Media

Preparation

i. Weigh 89g dehydrated Thiosulphate citrate bile salt powder.
ii. Add 1000mls of distilled water.
iii. Leave the powder to dissolve for about 5 minutes. iv. Mix the mixture thoroughly.
v. Heat with frequent agitation and boil for one minute. **Do Not Autoclave**.
vi. Allow the media to cool in water bath at 60˚C.
vii. Swirl and dispense aseptically in sterile Petri dishes, leaving lids slightly open to allow agar to solidify.
viii. Once the agar hardens close lids and leave coved for 1 hour on the desk.
ix. Perform sterility check by placing one of the plates overnight at 35˚C.
x. Place other plates in plastic bags, labeling outer the bag with the date prepared and the name of the agar.
xi. Assign batch number to the media once the zone sizes are within the range.

Soya Culture Broth

i. Weigh the Soya Culture Broth according to the instructions given on the manufacturer's label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in purified water.
NB: Dissolve 30 g of the medium in one liter of purified water.

Quality Control Specifications

Dehydrated Appearance: Powder is homogeneous, free flowing, and light beige.

Prepared Appearance: Prepared medium is brilliant to clear, yellow to amber, with none to light precipitate.

ii. Mix thoroughly. Dispense into tubes and autoclave at 121°C for 15 minutes with screw caps loosened.
iii. Tighten tube caps. Label tubes with media name and preparation date.
iv. Place tubes in a box. Label media box with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.
v. Record media preparation on appropriate form.
vi. Perform media Quality control

Storage

- Sealed bottle containing the dehydrated medium at 2 - 30°C.
- Once opened and recapped, place container in a low humidity environment at the same storage temperature. Protect from moisture and light by keeping container tightly closed.

7.6.12.11 XLD

i. Weigh required amount of culture media powder (as per manufacture's instruction).
ii. Add required volume of distilled water (as per manufacture's instruction). iii. Mix the contents thoroughly to dissolve the contents.
iv. Heat with agitation until the medium boils to completely dissolve the medium.
v. Cool the prepared media to 50^{o}C and dispense into the plates. The volume should approximately be 20mls per each plate.
vi. Wait for the media to solidify. Label on the plate XLD, your name initials and batch number.
vii. Test for the sterility by incubating one plate at room temperature and the other in incubator. Test for the quality of the media.
viii. Store the media in the Refrigerator in Plastic bags if available and they are ready for use.

7.6.12.12 Kliger Iron Agar (KIA)

i. Prepare according to the manufacturer's instructions:
ii. Suspend 65g of the powder in 1 l of purified water (Weigh 16.25g of the powder and dissolve into 250mls of purified water to prepare 250mls of the medium).
iii. Mix thoroughly, heat with frequent agitation and boil for 1 minute to completely dissolve the powder.
iv. Dispense a quantity of hydrated medium in appropriate tubes with a sufficient volume to give a deep butt and a long slant. (E.g. dispense 6.5ml of the medium into the screw cap tubes.
v. Leave screw caps loose and autoclave the medium at 121^{o}C for 15 minutes.
vi. After autoclaving, allow the slants to solidify in a manner such that the medium in the butt of the tube is about 3.5 cm deep and the slant is about 2.5cm long.
vii. Tighten the screw cap tops of the tubes and store at 4^{o}C for up to 6 months.

7.6.12.13 Alkaline Peptone Water (APW)

i. Weigh the APW according to the instructions given on the manufacturer's label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If necessary, heat with frequent agitation and boil for one minute to completely dissolve the powder.
ii. Dispense into tubes and autoclave with screw caps loosened.

iii. Allow to cool. iv. Tighten tube caps. Label tubes with media name and preparation date.
v. Place tubes in a box. Label media box with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

VI. Record media preparation on appropriate form. **vii.** Perform media quality control (Quality control).

Storage

Store at 4°C for up to six months making sure caps are tightly closed to prevent a drop in pH or evaporation

7.6.12.14 Bile Esculin Agar and Quality Control

i. Weigh the BE agar according to the instructions given on the manufacturer's label of the dehydrated powder. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If necessary, heat with frequent agitation and boil for one minute to completely dissolve the powder.
ii. Dispense into tubes and autoclave with screw-caps loosened. iii. Allow to cool in a slanted position for use as slants. iv. Tighten caps. Label tubes with media name and preparation date.
v. Place tubes in a box. Label media box with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature. vi. Record media preparation on appropriate form.

vii. Perform media quality control (Quality control).

Storage

Store at 4°C for up to six months. Make sure caps are tightly closed to prevent evaporation

Motility Indole Ornithine Media -MIO

• **Formula**

1. Yeast extract…….3.0g
2. Peptone…….10.0g
3. Tryptone…….....10.0g
4. L-ornithine HCL……5.0g
5. Dextrose……....1.0g
6. Agar……..…2.0g
7. Bromocresol purple…….0.2g

Quality control and Sterility control

- Incubate one tube of MIO in the incubator at 35ºC over night and one tube at room temperature to check for sterility.
- For quality control the following organisms should be inoculated and check for biochemical reactions;

Organism	Motility	Indole	Ornithine
E.coli	+	+	+
Klebsiella spp	-	-/+	-

Procedure

i. Clean glassware carefully with detergent & rinse well with distilled water.

ii. Prepare according to manufacturer's instructions. Suspend 31gm of the powder in 1000mls of distilled water. If less than 1000mls is needed use this as a formula to calculate the amount of the powder to be added.

iii. Mix thoroughly, heat with frequent agitation and boil for 1minutes to completely dissolve the powder. Sterilize the mixture by autoclaving at 121ºC for 15 minutes.

iv. Allow the medium to cool to about 50ºC.

v. Dispense medium into sterile screw cap heat resistant tube to a uniform depth.

vi. Label with lot number, date of preparation (can be the lot number) & media name (abbreviations of the media can be used). vii. Store media at 2-8ºC (avoid freezing).

7.6.12.15 Sulphide Indole Motility (SIM) Medium

i. Weigh the SIM agar according to the instructions given on the label of the dehydrated media. Suspend the powder in distilled or deionized water. If necessary, heat with frequent agitation and boil for I minute to completely dissolve the powder.

ii. Dispense into tubes and autoclave with screw caps loosened.

iii. Allow the medium to solidify upright, forming a deep butt with no slant. When the medium is solidified and cooled, leave caps loose until the surface of the medium has dried.

IV. Tighten caps. Label tubes with media name and preparation date.

v. Place tubes in a carton box. Label media box with media name, preparation date, expiry date, and storage temperature.

VI. Record media preparation on appropriate form. **ii.** Perform media quality control (Quality control).

Storage

Store at 4°C for up to 6 months making sure caps are tightly closed to prevent evaporation.

7.6.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

7.6.14 Interpretation and Reporting of the Results Not Applicable

7.6.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Each media has its own procedure care on understanding of procedure is crucial

7.6.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification reports

7.6.17 Supporting Documents

Result Management procedure, Safety manual, Sample collection manual

7.6.18 References

- Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
- Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centres for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland. 2003

7.7 PROCEDURE FOR URINE CULTURE

7.7.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing urine sample for culture and sensitivity

7.7.2 Scope

The procedure is used in Bacteriology section when investigating for urinary tract infections (UTI)

7.7.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Medical Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure

7.7.4 Principle

The bladder and urinary tract are normally sterile. The urethra contains a few commensals and also the perineum which can contaminate the urine when it is being collected.

In female patients, the urine may become contaminated with organisms from the vagina. Vaginal contamination is often indicated by the presence of epithelial cell and a mixed bacterial flora.

Most urine samples will contain fewer than 10^4 contaminating organisms per ml provided the urine has been collected with care to minimize contamination and the sample is examined within 2 hours after collection before the commensals multiply significantly so that bacterial count will be unreliable.

7.7.5 Sample Requirements

Early morning mid-stream urine collected in a wide mouthed sterile container is the best sample. However mid-stream urines collected at any time can also be processed.

7.7.6 Equipment

35-37˚C Incubator, Microscope, Centrifuge, Hot air oven, 2-8˚C Fridge

7.7.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Media: CLED or MacConkey, Blood Agar and Mueller Hinton Urine multistick Biochemical reagents Centrifuge tubes Urine antibiotic disks	Sterile disposable Petri dishes Glass slides and over slips Standard wire loop (e.g. 1 µl [0.001ml]) Spirit lamp/Cooking gas Match box Gloves

Note: Cysteine lactose electrolyte-deficient (CLED) agar is used because it allows the growth of both Gram negative and Gram pos pathogens. The indicator in CLED is bromothymol blue and therefore lactose fermenting colonies appear yellow. The medium is electrolyte deficient to prevent swarming of proteus

7.7.8 Storage and Stability

Process all urine Samples within four hours of collection. If not, refrigerate at 4 ^{o}C for no longer than 24 hours.

7.7.9 Safety

a. Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
b. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
c. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
d. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
e. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.7.10 Calibration Not Applicable

7.7.11 Quality Control

Quality control of media and reagents is done as per manufacturer instructions.

7.7.12 Procedural Steps

Day 1

Macroscopic Examination

Examine urine sample macroscopically and report the colour, turbidity and odour

Culture

- Inoculate a well-mixed sample of urine onto half plate of blood agar and fully MacConkey agar or CLED using a sterile standardized loop.
- Holding the loop at 45^{o} angle to the agar surface inoculate and streak the sample on the agar.
- Incubate the plates aerobically at 37^{o}C for 18 – 24 hours.

Screening method

- A strip test which is simple and effective is to be done test for leukocyte esterase /nitrate reduction.
- The strip is dipped into the urine sample as instructed in package insert. any pink color is a positive reaction indicates the presence of leukocyte esterase and /or bacteria in excess of 10^5per ml.
- Urine samples that are positive in the screening test should be cultures as soon as possible to prevent possible overgrowth by non-significant bacteria.
- If the strip does not develop the pink color it is interpreted as the negative screening test, culture must be done because the strip may not be sensitive enough to detect bacteria count of less than 10^5per ml of urine

Day 2. Reading plates

- Examine the plates for pure growth and perform a colony count. Each colony represents 1000 bacterial cells/ml if 1µl (0.001 ml) loop is used.
- Perform gram stain and proceed to perform identification tests for the suspected organism (refer to Identification flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms)
- Perform the susceptibility tests using the recommended antimicrobial agents following Procedure for antibiotic susceptibility testing, in doubtful bacteriuria, isolates should be identified and susceptibility tests carried out.

Day 3. Reading Biochemical tests

- Read the biochemical tests and identify the organism. (Identification flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms) and report the identified organism(s).
- Record the identification biochemical tests on Microbiology culture worksheet - Read the susceptibility plates as recommended and report.

Calculations

If 1µl (0.001 ml) loop is used, each colony represents 1000 bacterial cells. Therefore, if a plate has about 100 colonies, that represents 100 000 (10^5) bacterial cells.

7.7.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicable

7.7.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Report appearance as: Colour: Clear Yellow or brown

Turbidity: Cloudy **Report Culture as:**

Colonial morphology**,** Colony count: 100,000 CFU/ml

Report cultures without growth as 'No bacteria growth'

Note: No need of indicating colony counts ≥10^5 CFU/ml.

Report mixed growth report as "Mixed growth" and request for a repeat sample that must be collected aseptically.

Results interpretation

- If significant growths appear 105CFU/ML then do gram stain and identification tests accordingly.
- If non-significant growth i.e., less than 104CFU/ML then reports as non-significant growth.
- If mixed growth then repeat culture on freshly submitted urine sample.
- If no bacteria growths report as no bacteria growth.
- Any growth from catheter or SPA, and mixed growth from repeat mixed cultures is significant.
- Colony count of ≥100 000 CFU/ml is considered as significant bacteriuria.
- Colony count of ≥10 000 CFU/ml but less than 100 000 CFU/ml is considered as doubtful bacteriuria.
- Colony count of <10 000 CFU/ml is considered as insignificant bacteriuria.
- The finding of any parasites, yeast cells, cellular casts and crystals is significant.
- Urine appearance of milky white may be due to Chyle and the possible cause would be Bancroftian Filariasis

Common UTI pathogens

Gram pos: *Staph. Saprophytic us, Staph. Aureus*, Haemolytic *Streptococci, Enterococci.*

Gram Neg: *Escherichia coli, Proteus* spp, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Klebsiella* spp*, N. gonorrhoea*

7.7.15 Limitations of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

- Delay in transportation and culture without proper storage [refrigeration at 2-8°C] may give false high bacteriuria (high colony count).
- Contaminants in urine sample multiply to significant numbers at room temperature.
- In non-refrigerated delayed samples, pus cells will lyse resulting in false low bacteriuria (low colony count).
- Bacteria in urine refrigeration for more than 24 hrs may die off giving false high bacteriuria or may die off giving a low bacteriuria. Morphology or integrity of cells present in urine may get affected and may lead to false cell counts. Fastidious organisms may not be isolated by this technique

7.7.16 Performance Characteristics Not Applicable

7.7.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual, Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.7.18 References

- Basic Laboratory Procedure in clinical bacteriology 2nd Edition.
- Cheesbrough, M (1987). Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries (Vol. II). Butterworth-Heinemann, London.

7.8 PROCEDURE FOR STOOL CULTURE

7.8.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing stool and rectal swabs for culture and sensitivity

7.8.2 Scope

The procedure is used in the laboratory for the diagnosis of diarrhoea.

7.8.3 Responsibility

Competent Medical Laboratory Technicians, Technologists and Scientists are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure

7.8.4 Principle

Diarrhoea due to common bacterial enteric pathogens may be confirmed by culturing faecal

Samples on selective media and enrichment broth. This allows the multiplication of enteric pathogens while inhibiting the growth of intestinal normal flora.

7.8.5 Sample Requirements

Sample – Stool, rectal swab

Container - Sterile stool container

7.8.6 Equipment

Incubator, Microscope, Aerobic incubator jar, Refrigerator, Biosafety cabinet, Bunsen burner

7.8.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
1% aqueous sodium hippurate substrate. 3% Hydrogen peroxide. Antimicrobial discs Candles Carbon dioxide generating packs. Control organisms Identification Media: Citrate, Lysine Iron Agar, Sulphide Indole Motility agar, Triple Sugar Iron (TSI) agar, Urea medium, or API 20E strips.	Clean container (at least 30 ml capacity) Sterile swabs Glass slides and cover slips Disposable gloves Forceps Marker pen □ Match box □ Sterile disposable petri dishes

Reagent	Consumables
Microaerophilic gas generating packs. Mueller-Hinton agar (susceptibility test agar) Nutrient agar (Non-selective media). Oxidase reagent (NNN'N'-Tetra methyl-*p*phenylenediamine dihydrochloride. Orange sticks (Applicator sticks) 0.85% Sodium chloride in distilled water. *Salmonella* antisera: Polyvalent O Groups A-S, Polyvalent H Phase 1 and 2. *Salmonella typhi* antisera: O-9, H-d, Vi. Selective media: Alkaline Peptone Water (APW), Campylobacter selective blood agar with Skirrow's selective supplement containing trimethoprim, vancomycin, polymyxin B, amphotericin B and cephalothin) or Karmali's selective agar with Preston's selective supplement containing polymyxin B, trimethoprim, rifampicin and cycloheximidie. CIN media(Cefsulodin-Irgasan-Novobiocin) for *Yersinia enterocolitica* Desoxycholate Citrate Agar (DCA), MacConkey Agar, Selenite F broth, Sorbitol MacConkey (SMAC) *E. coli* O157: H7 Blood agar Plate (BAP) Thiosulphate Citrate Bile Salt Sucrose Agar (TCBS), Xylose Lysine Desoxycholate Agar (XLD), *Shigella* polyvalent antisera groups: *Shigella dysenteriae* type 1, *Shigella dysenteriae* type 2-10, *Shigella flexneri* 1-6, x, y, *Shigella boydii* 1-6, *Shigella boydii* 7-11, *Shigella boydii* 12-15, *Shigella sonnei* Phase 1 & 2. Transport media (e.g. Cary-Blair) *Vibrio cholerae* antisera: *Vibrio cholerae* inaba antiserum, *Vibrio cholerae* O139 antiserum, *Vibrio cholerae* ogawa antiserum, *Vibrio cholerae* polyvalent O1 antiserum.	□ Wire loop □ Physiological saline □ Spirit

7.8.8 Storage and Stability

Immediately after collection the sample should be sent to the laboratory.

If delays in process occur, the sample should be kept at 2˚C to 8˚C

7.8.9 Safety

Universal safety precautions should be taken into considerations and that all biological substances and reagents should be treated as potentially infectious.

7.8.10 Calibration Not Applicable

7.8.11 Quality Control

Quality control of media and reagents when new lot prepared

7.8.12 Procedural Steps

Day 1

- For E. coli, Salmonella and Shigella
- Inoculate a small portion of stool directly onto DCA, XLD, and MacConkey agar using an applicator stick.
- Streak using a wire loop and incubate at 37°C for 18-24 hours.
- Inoculate about 1 gram of stool into Selenite F broth, incubate overnight at 37°C.
- If cholera is suspected
- Inoculate on TCBS agar and Blood agar Plate (BAP) and streak using a wire loop and incubate at 35 + 2°C for 18-24 hours aerobically.
- Inoculate in Alkaline Peptone Water (APW) and incubate aerobically at 35 + 2 oC
- Subculture a loop full from the surface of the APW onto TCBS and BAP after 4 – 6 hours incubation.

Day 2

- E. coli, Salmonella and Shigella
- Examine DCA, XLD and MacConkey plates for,Salmonella and Shigella colonies. If there are any suspicious colonies (refer to Colony identification guidelines below), perform the following biochemical tests: TSI, LIA, SIM, Urease, Citrate, Oxidase or API 20E.
- In children under the age of two years, examine MacConkey plates for E. coli to rule out Enteropathgenic E. coli (EPEC) and other invasive strains of E. coli. Select 2 or more suspected E. coli colonies and set up a set of biochemical screening tests for each colony: TSI, LIA, SIM, Urease, Citrate, Oxidase or API 20E (Refer to ID004)
- Perform susceptibility testing following the Procedure for Antibiotic Susceptibility test, Bact-02
- If there is no growth of any suspected pathogen on DCA, XLD and MacConkey, subculture a loopful of Selenite F broth onto DCA and XLD and incubate at 35 + 2 oC for 18 – 24 hrs.

V. Cholera

- Examine both the direct inoculated TCBS plate and BAP and the sub cultured plates for V. Cholera.
- Note: If there are mixed colonies, sub culture suspected colonies on TCBS and BAP to obtain pure cultures.
- Set up biochemical tests (TSI, LIA, SIM, Urease, Citrate, Oxidase or API 20E on suspected isolated colonies.

Note: Perform the Oxidase test from colonies on BAP and NOT from TCBS plate.

- Perform susceptibility testing following Procedure for Antibiotic Susceptibility test,
- Subculture all suspected V. Choleraecolonies onto non-selective media (e.g. Mueller Hinton) for subsequent serological tests the following day.
- DO NOT subculture V. cholerae on Nutrient agar for subsequent serological tests.
- Note: Work only on isolated colonies. If the colonies are not perfectly isolated, subculture any one of the suspicious colonies and proceed with the procedure after 18 – 24 hours growth of isolated colonies.

Day 3

- E. coli, Salmonella and Shigella
- Read the set biochemical tests (Point 1 on Day 2) and identify the pathogen. - Record the identification biochemical tests on Microbiology culture worksheet - Report the susceptibility test results.
- For sub cultured colonies (Point 4 on Day 2), set up biochemical tests (TSI, LIA, SIM, Urea and Citrate or API 20E) on suspected E. coli, Shigella or Salmonella.
- Perform susceptibility testing following Procedure for Antibiotic Susceptibility Testing.
- Subculture all suspected E. coli, Shigella, Salmonella, onto non-selective media (e.g. Mueller Hinton) agar for subsequent serological tests the following day.

V. cholerae

- Read the biochemical tests and identify the pathogen.
- Record the identification biochemical tests on Microbiology culture worksheet
- Report isolates identified as V. Cholerae by serotyping and report susceptibility results.
- If the colonies were sub cultured (point 1 on day 2),
- Examine both the direct inoculated TCBS plate and BAP and the sub cultured plates for V. Cholera.
- Set up biochemical tests (TSI, LIA, SIM, Urease, Citrate, Oxidase or API 20E on suspected isolated colonies.

Note: Perform the Oxidase test from colonies on BAP and NOT from TCBS plate.

- Perform susceptibility testing following Procedure for Antibiotic Susceptibility testing
- Subculture all suspected V. Cholerae colonies onto non-selective media (e.g. Mueller Hinton) for subsequent serological tests the following day.

Day 4

Salmonella, Shigella and V. Cholerae

Read the biochemical tests (point 2 on Day 3) for Salmonella and Shigella results set up on Day 3.

Report the susceptibility test results for Salmonella, Shigella and V. cholerae.

COLONY IDENTIFICATION GUIDELINES

Media Colony Identification

XLD Agar Shigella and Salmonella produce clear transparent 1 – 2 mm diameter colonies that may assume the colour of the media (red). Most Salmonella produce red colonies with black centre.

MacConkey agar

E. coli produce magenta 3 – 4 mm diameter, flat colonies.

Salmonella and Shigella produce clear colourless 2–3 mm diameter convex colonies with smooth edges.

Thiosulphate – Citrate Bile Salt sucrose agar (TCBS) V. cholerae produce translucent, yellow, 2 – 3 mm diameter, flat colonies with entire smooth edges on TCBS.

7.8.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

7.8.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Record the results on Microbiology culture worksheet

Only report the presence or absence of organisms investigated:

Example:

If pathogen present report as follows: *Salmonella spp*. isolated. *Salmonella typhi* isolated

Shigella boydii isolated

Vibrio cholerae isolated

If pathogen not present report as follows: No *Salmonella* isolated, or No *Shigella* isolated.

No *Vibrio cholera*e isolated

Critical value

Isolation of *Vibrio cholerae* should be treated as a medical emergency and clinicians must be put on high alert.

7.8.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

- Delay in sample processing of more than 2 hrs after sample collection affects viability of
- enteric pathogens such as *E. coli,Salmonella,Shigella* and *V. cholerae*.
- Inadequate samples or poor quality of sample y (samples collected in dirty containers)
- Use of old or media with little moisture affects the recovery of enteric pathogens.

7.8.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification of this procedure

7.8.17 Supporting Documents Sample collection manual

7.8.18 References

- Baker, F and Silvertone, R.E (1985). Introduction to Medical Laboratory Technology (6th edition). Butterworths, London
- Baker, F.J (1980) Medical Microbiological Techniques. Butterworths, London. • Barrow, G.I and Feltham, R.K.A (1993). Cowan and Steel's manual for identification of medical bacteria (3rd edition). Cambridge University Press, Great Britain.
- Cheesbrough, M (2000). Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries (Vol. II). Butterworth-Heinemann, London.
- Collee, J.G, Fraser, A. G, Marmion, B. P and Simmons, A (1996). Mackie and McCartney Practical Medical Microbiology (14th edition). ChurchillLivingstone, London.
- Hawkey, P.M., and Lewis, D.A. (1989). Medical Bacteriology
- Isenberg, H. D (1992). Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook (Vol. 1 & 2). American Society of Microbiology, Washington, DC
- Murray, P. R, Baron, E. R, Pfaller, M. A, Tenover, F.C and Yolken, R. H (1995) Manual of Clinical Microbiology (6thedition). American Society for Microbiology, Washing, DC.
- Winn,C.W. Jr et al (2006). Koneman's color atlas and textbook of diagnostic microbiology (6th edition). Lippincott Williams and Wilkins. Philadelphia.

7.9 UROGENITAL SAMPLES/URETHRAL SWAB CULTURE

7.9.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing urogenital samples (Urethral)

7.9.2 Scope

The procedure is used in the Bacteriology section when investigating for sexually transmitted infections (STI)

7.9.3 Responsibility

Competent Medical Laboratory Technicians, Technologists and Scientist are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

7.9.4 Principle

The urogenital tract of males apart from the urethra is sterile. The cervix, uterus, fallopian tubes and ovaries are sterile sites. Isolation of microorganisms from such sterile sites is indicative of an infection. Infection of the urogenital tract (UGT) induces inflammatory reactions that lead to increased WBC collection. Microorganisms responsible for the urogenital tract infections often occur in predominant numbers in the presence of WBC and may be demonstrated by microscopy and/or culture examination of urogenital tract samples. Presence of some microorganisms such as *Neisseria gonorrhoea* and *Chlamydia* is always indicative of an infection.

7.9.5 Sample Requirements

Urogenital Swabs (High vaginal swab, urethral swab) are collected into amies transport media.

Avoid contaminating the samples with normal flora of the urogenital tract when collecting samples. Use of a speculum when collecting samples from the female genital tract limits contamination from normal flora. Urogenital samples include Urethra, High Vaginal, vulval swab, Endo-cervical swabs, and other samples from the upper female genital tract and the urethra or prostate secretions from male patients.

It is of prime importance that samples are transported to the laboratory immediately. Where delay is anticipated inoculate samples on culture plates directly or use transport media (e.g. Amies' or Stuart's).

Samples from patients with suspected puerperal sepsis or septic abortion should be treated as wound samples.

7.9.6 Equipment

Incubator, Microscope, Aerobic incubator jar, CO2 Incubator or Candle, Biosafety cabinet, Bunsen burner

7.9.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Antimicrobial susceptibility discs Biochemical reagents, Control organisms *Neisseria gonorrhoea* (GC) media (e.g. Modified Thayer-Martin agar or New York City agar, Chocolate agar, Blood agar, MacConkey agar, Mueller-Hinton Agar, Sabouraud Dextrose agar (Appropriate selective media may be used when clinically indicated).	Glass slides Glass cover slips Gram Stain reagents Identification discs Petri dishes (Sterile disposable) Physiological saline Forceps, Marker pen, Oil immersion, Gloves, Sterile swabs, Wire loop

7.9.8 Storage and Stability

Where delay is anticipated inoculate samples on culture plates directly or use transport media (e.g. Amies' or Stuart's).

7.9.9 Safety

i. Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
ii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual. iii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iv. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
v. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
vi. Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
vii. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.9.10 Calibration Not applicable

7.9.11 Quality Control

Sterility and performance check should be done following preparation of media.

7.9.12 Procedural Steps

Day 1. Culture

a. Inoculate the sample onto GC selective media, 2 blood agar plates, chocolate agar and MacConkey agar, Sabouraud's agar and where necessary into enrichment broth.

b. Incubate the enrichment broth at 35 + 2ºC for 18 – 24 hrs.

c. Incubate one blood agar and MacConkey agarplates aerobically at 35 + 2ºC for 18 – 24 hrs.

d. Incubate another blood agar, chocolate agar and GC selective media plates at 35 + 2ºC in 5% CO_2 for 18 – 24 hrs.

e. Record all the above actions on Microbiology culture worksheet

Microscopy

a. Prepare wet preparations on all urethral and high vaginal swabs within 30 minutes of collection.

b. Examine the preparation (using x 10 or x 40 objective) for WBC, RBC, yeast cells, clue cells and *Trichomonas vaginalis*,and report the findings onMicrobiology culture worksheet, CPL TF 031

c. Make a smear and perform gram stain (refer to Procedure for gram stain)

d. Examine the Gram stain smear and report the findings. Rule out the presence of gram-negative intracellular diplococci that might be gonococci and clue cells (epithelial cells with lots of bacteria attached to them).

e. In Suspected cases of cancroid look for Gram negative *coccobacilli* that show bipolar staining which may be in pairs or groups or in chains lying in parallel

"school of fish" or "railway tract."

f. Giemsa stain can be employed in suspected cases of:

g. *Chlamydia trachomatis:* Examine smears for *C. trachomatis* inclusion bodies (Blue-mauve reticulate bodies) lying within the cytoplasm of epithelial cells.

h. *Calymmatobacterium granulomatis:* Look for epithelial cells that contain dark red staining rods of *C. granulomatis* (sometimes called Donovan bodies) and lots of gram negative rods.

Day 2. Reading culture plates

a. Examine aerobic plates for possible pathogens and set up/perform appropriate biochemical tests. If the organism is identified, report the identified organism (Refer to Identification flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms)

b. Perform susceptibility testing following Procedure for antibiotic susceptibility testing,

c. Re-incubate all culture plates with no growth for another 18 – 24 hrs under conditions defined in Day 1 above.

d. Subculture from enrichment broth onto appropriate media and proceed as described under culture, steps 1 to 5, on Day 1.

Note: Do not leave plates on the bench for too long as Neisseria gonorrhoea will not survive longer at room temperature.

Day 3. Reading biochemical tests

a. Read the biochemical tests and susceptibility plates.

b. Report the identified organism and susceptibility results.

c. Record the identification biochemical tests on Microbiology culture worksheet,

d. Examine the re-incubated aerobic plates for possible pathogens
e. Set up/perform appropriate biochemical tests and susceptibility tests as on Day 2 and read the following day.

7.9.13 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

a. Taking antibiotics prior to sample collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms.
b. Poor staining techniques may give rise to false results.
c. Delay in transportation and processing of samples may affect the recovery of microorganisms.

7.9.14 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicable

7.9.15 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

For culture:

Report the pathogen isolated and the antimicrobial susceptibility pattern. In case of urethral, cervical, endometrium scrapings samples and other samples from normally sterile sites of the urogenital tract, report all cultures with no growth as "No growth".

For the vaginal sample cultures where no pathogen is isolated report as “Normal flora isolated.”

For wet preparation:

For WBC, RBC and epithelial cells, report actual numbers seen per high power field (x40).

Report presence or absence of Trichomonas vaginalis and yeasts **For gram stain:**

a. Report any organisms seen
b. If there are no organisms seen report as “No organisms seen”
c. Report any clue cells seen
d. Report on absence of gram positive long rods (Lactobacillus)(if that is the case)
e. Report on presence of gram variable rods (Gadnerella).

Results interpretation

Demonstration of intracellular Gram-negative diplococci in a Gram stain and culture is indicative of gonococcal infection.

Isolation of *Streptococcus agalactiae* (Group B *Streptococcus)* from the vagina is significant and carriers must be treated.

The presence of abundant yeast cells in urogenital samples is indicative of fungal infection.

Presence of clue cells plus lack of *Lactobacilli* (gram positive long rods) being replaced by gram variable rods is indicative of bacterial vaginosis (BV).

7.9.16 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Taking antibiotics prior to sample collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms.

Poor staining techniques may give rise to false results.

Delay in transportation and processing of samples may affect the recovery of microorganisms.

7.9.17 Performance Characteristics Refer to method verification report

7.9.18 Supporting Documents Sample collection manual

7.9.19 References

a. Barrow, G.I and Feltham, R.K.A (1993). Cowan and Steel's manual for identification of medical bacteria (3rd edition). Cambridge University Press, Great Britain.

b. Cheesbrough, M (2000). Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries (Vol. II). Butterworth-Heinemann, London.

c. Collee, J.G, Fraser, A. G, Marmion, B. P and Simmons, A (1996). Mackie and McCartney Practical Medical Microbiology (14th edition). ChurchillLivingstone, London.

d. Hawkey, P.M., and Lewis, D.A. (1989). Medical Bacteriology

e. Isenberg, H. D (1992). Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook (Vol. 1 & 2). American Society of Microbiology, Washington, DC

f. Murray, P. R, Baron, E. R, Pfaller, M. A, Tenover, F.C and Yolken, R. H (1995) Manual of Clinical Microbiology (6thedition). American Society for Microbiology, Washing, DC.

g. Winn,C.W. Jr et al (2006). Koneman's color atlas and textbook of diagnostic microbiology (6th edition). Lippincott Williams and Wilkins. Philadelphia.

h. Baker, F and Silvertone, R.E (1985). Introduction to Medical Laboratory Technology (6th edition). Butterworths, London

i. Baker, F.J (1980) Medical Microbiological Techniques. Butterworths, London.

7.10 MANUAL BLOOD CULTURE

7.10.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing a blood culture using a manual method.

7.10.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all blood cultures in isolation of bacterial pathogens.; it also applies in situations where automated blood culture system is not functioning or blood culture vials stock out or machine breakdown

7.10.3 Responsibility

Trained and competent medical laboratory scientists /technologists are responsible in implementing this procedure.

7.10.4 Principle

The culture of micro-organism from blood is essential in the laboratory diagnosis of bacteraemia, septicaemia, infective endocarditis and many infective conditions associated with a clinical presentation of pyrexia of unknown origin (PUO). Blood cultures may also detect bacteraemia in association with other infectious diseases such as septic arthritis and pneumonia. Early positive results provide valuable diagnostic information on which appropriate antimicrobial therapy can be based. The detection of bacteraemia and fungaemia requires a good blood culture system complemented by good laboratory practice and communication.

Blood culture systems should aim to achieve the following:

A culture medium should be as rich as possible to allow the recovery of very small numbers of a variety of fastidious organisms

Neutralization or removal of antimicrobial substances, either natural blood components or antimicrobial agents.

A defined volume of blood is inoculated into a defined amount of broth. A blood to broth ratio of about 1:5 is normally required to remove the antibacterial effect from blood. Routine blood cultures will be subsequently incubated at 35 to 37°C and rechecked intermittently up to 7 days.

7.10.5 Sample Requirements

a. Blood should be collected as soon as possible after the onset of clinical symptoms.

b. Blood should be collected before administrations of antibiotics. If the patient is already on antimicrobial therapy blood sample should be collected immediately before administering the next dose.

c. Treatment of critically ill patient should not be delayed.

d. Samples is collected in manual prepared blood culture vials.

e. Use aseptic technique during sample collection, to avoid introduction of skin normal flora.
f. Wash the skin with soap and water if necessary.
g. Decontaminate with povidone or chlorhexidine.
h. Clean the skin with alcohol.
i. Do not re-palpate the vein after cleaning.
j. Decontaminate septum of bottle with alcohol;
k. The amount of blood sample to be inoculated into vials will depend on manufacturer instruction recorded outside the bottle.
l. To reduce contamination and increase yield of bacteria isolation, it is best to collect two culture bottles from different sites.
m. Blood Collection Set e.g. vacutainer or other tubing “butterfly” set may be used.
n. Mix well by gentle tilting the vial 8 to 10 times.

7.10.6 Equipment Incubator

7.10.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
10 ml of Brain heart infusion broth, BHI/Tryptone soya broth, TSB (for adult) 5 ml of brain heart infusion broth, BHI /Tryptone soya broth, TSB (for paediatric) Gram Stain kit Blood agar Chocolate Agar MacConkey Agar(MAC)	Slides Disposable loop Candle jar/carbon dioxide incubator

7.10.8 Storage and Stability

Immediately after collection the sample should be sent to the laboratory.

If delays in process occur, the sample should be kept at 35˚C to 37˚C incubator (blood culture bottles should never be refrigerated or frozen).

7.10.9 Safety

a. Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
b. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual.
c. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
d. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
e. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
f. Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
g. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.10.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.10.11 Quality Control

Quality control of media preparation (refer to procedure for Quality control of prepared media)

Quality control of Gram Staining using known strains (ATCC strains) *E. coli* ATCC 25922 as gram negative and *S. aureus* ATCC 25923 as gram positive

7.10.12 Procedural Steps

Perform both Gram stain and blind-subculture after 24 hours of incubation

Subculture on Blood agar, MacConkey agar and Chocolate agar

If there is bacterial growth after 24 hours, perform identification of organisms and set antimicrobial susceptibility testing.

If no bacterial growth after 24 hours' monitors cultures daily for 7 days by observing for **turbidity**, **haemolysis** and **flocculation**. Subculture if any changes are observed. Finally do blind-subculture on day 6 on Blood agar, MacConkey agar and Chocolate agar.

7.10.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

7.10.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Report morphology of Gram negative or Gram-positive organism f**r**om Gram staining reaction to clinician immediately

If there is a growth of Gram negative *Enterobacteriaceae* in MCA or Gram-positive bacteria in Blood Agar or Chocolate Agar, report as preliminary results to clinician immediately while proceeding with identification of pathogen and antimicrobial susceptibility testing. If no growth after 7 days of incubation: Report as "no growth of bacteria or fungal after 7 days of incubation"

Common possible pathogens in blood

GRAM POSITIVE BACTERIA	GRAM NEGATIVE BACTERIA

Staphylococcus aureus Coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus* Viridans group streptococci *Streptococcus pneumoniae* *Streptococcus pyogenes* *Streptococcus agalactiae Enterococcus faecalis*	*E. coli,* *K. pneumoniae* *Neisseria meningitidis* *Pseudomonas aeruginosa Haemophilus influenzae Salmonella* spp.

Note: The pathogenic role of "commensal" isolates (e.g. Staphylococcus epidermidis) may be confirmed if they are recovered from multiple venepunctures or the patient has a long standing indwelling devices e.g. central venous lines, cardiac catheters, and shunts

Gram negative bacteria should be communicated as preriminaly results to the requester

7.10.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Inaccurate amount of blood to broth ratio (too much or too little) will lead to false results.

Contamination from prepared media will lead to false results

7.10.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification reports

7.10.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

7.10.18 References

- Mackie & McCartney, Churchill Livingstone **Practical Medical Microbiology**; 14th Edition, 1996.
- Manual of Clinical Microbiology 8th Edition Vol. 2, 2010 by Patrick R. Murray, Ellen Jo Baron, James H. Jorgensen, Michael A. Pfaller and Robert H. Yolken
- Blood culture: A key investigation for diagnosis of blood stream infections, Biomerieux
- CLSI Guidelines, Principles and Procedures for Blood Cultures; Approved Guidelines.M47-A, Vol. 27 No. 17, May 2007
- Vandepitte et al., Basic laboratory procedures in clinical bacteriology. 2nd edition. World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland, 2003

7.11 CEREBROSPINAL FLUID (CSF) ANALYSIS

7.11.1 Purpose

This procedure describes the standard steps for bacteriological processing of Cerebrospinal Fluid (CSF)

7.11.2 Scope

Used in Bacteriology section for processing CSF samples in the diagnosis of meningitis

7.11.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Medical Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

7.11.4 Principle

Bacterial meningitis is the result of infection of the meninges (lining around the brain). The presence of microorganism, WBC in numbers higher than normal values, or other abnormalities indicative of an infection of the central nervous system (CNS) is demonstrated by macroscopic, microscopic and culture examination of the CSF.

7.11.5 Sample Requirements

Collect 1ml of Cerebrospinal fluid in a plain sterile tube (red cap) No. 1 and about 2– 3 ml in plain sterile tube no.2 collected before patient is given antibiotics.

The sample **MUST NOT** be refrigerated as this will kill fastidious organisms such as *Haemophilus spp and Streptococcus pneumoniae.* In case of inevitable delay, keep the sample at 35ºC for not more than 2 hrs.

7.11.6 Equipment

Microscope, Biosafety cabinet, Bunsen burner, Centrifuge, 35ºC to 37 ºC Incubator, Candle jar and 2-8˚C Refrigerator.

7.11.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables

Streptococcus Lancefield grouping kit. X, V and XV factors (paper discs) Ziehl-Neelsen stain, auramine phenol 2% acetic acid Methylene blue Culture media - Blood Agar; Chocolate Agar; Sabouraud Dextrose Agar; MacConkey Agar; Mueller Hinton India Ink or Nigrosin stain Counting chamber (e.g. Improved Neubauer chamber) Glass slides and cover slips	Disposable gloves, Spirit, Wire loop, Sterile disposable Petri dishes, biohazard box Control organisms, Biochemical identification reagents, Cotton wool, forceps, match box, disposable gloves,
Gram stain reagents *Haemophilus influenzae* antisera types a, b, c, d, e and f mono-antisera Leishman stain/Giemsa stain Optochin disc	physiological saline, marker pen Plain sterile containers Sterile pipette and rubber tips

7.11.8 Storage and Stability

- The stability of the CSF sample varies depending on the procedures ordered. Cell counts are ALWAYS STAT and should be performed within 30 - 60 minutes for best results.
- Samples should be left at room temperature for no longer than one hour and refrigerated following testing.
- Refrigeration is not recommended for culture Samples since fastidious organisms such as *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Neisseria meningitidis* may not survive the cold temperature.

7.11.9 Safety

a. Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
b. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
c. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
d. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
e. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
f. Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
g. The test device should be stored at 2 - 30^{o}C. And the test should be performed at room temperature.

7.11.10 Calibration

All auxiliary equipment should be calibrated annually following calibration schedule

7.11.11 Quality Control

Quality control of media and reagents should be done when media and reagents preparation performed

Use known control positive of Cryptococcus neoformans slide and control negative slide

7.11.12 Procedural Steps

Day 1

Use the plain tube for describing macroscopic, culture and preparing smears for stains. The EDTA tube is used for cell counting. In case of only 1 plain tube of CSF start with culture before proceeding to microscopy. **Macroscopic Examination**

Examine the CSF in the plain tube macroscopically for colour, turbidity, presence of blood and volume.

Also examine for the presence of spider web clot suggestive of TB meningitis.

Microscopic examination

Cell Count

a. Perform cell count on CSF from the sterile plain tube before spinning the sample, (taking caution not to contaminate it) using an Improved Neubauer counting chamber.

b. Cell counting from plain sterile tube should be done within 30minutes of collecting the sample as the cells will start to deteriorate afterwards.

c. Fix a glass cover slip No. 2 on top of the ruled area of the clean counting chamber until rain bow colors appear.

d. Rainbow colors under the cover slip are indicative of a well fixed cover slip.

e. Mix the sample thoroughly by tilting it back and forth.

f. Using a sterile capillary tube take a volume of the sample and fill (charge) the chamber. Avoid formation of air bubbles and overflowing.

g. Stand the chamber in a moist Petri dish on a flat surface for five minutes to allow cells to settle down.

h. Place the chamber on the microscope and check for the ruled area under the x10 objective (Figure 1).

i. Count the cells using the x10 or the x40 objective in the ruled area and report as indicated below.

j. RBC when very numerous are best counted in the middle square labeled**" R"** and WBC when very few are best counted in the squares labeled **"W."**

k. If the cells are too many to count, dilute the CSF 1 in 10 (1 drop of c.s.f with 9 drops of diluting fluid), refill the chamber and count the cells.

For calculations see below.

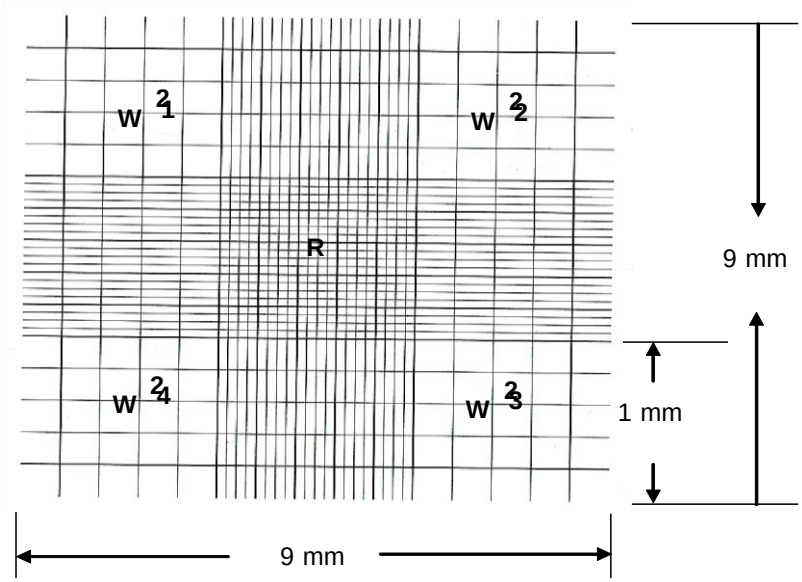


Figure 1: Improved Neubauer counting chamber

Differential Count

a. Perform a differential count when the WBC count is greater than 5 x 10^6/L ($5mm^3$).

b. Centrifuge the sample at 3000 rpm for 5 minutes.

c. Tip off the supernatant and re-suspend the deposit well.

d. Prepare a smear from the cellular deposit.

e. Allow to air dry and fix the smear with methanol.

f. Stain with Giemsa or Leishman stain.

Count the WBC and report the count of each WBC type as a percentage (See results section below).

Culture

a. Centrifuge the CSF in the plain tube at 3000rpm for 10 minutes and tip off the supernatant.

b. Inoculate part of the sediment heavily onto chocolate agar, blood agar, MacConkey agar and Sabouraud's agar, preferably using a 10 µl loop.

c. Incubate blood agar and chocolate agar at 35 to 37°C in CO_2 for 18 – 24 hrs. Incubate MacConkey and Sabouraud's agar aerobically at 35 to 37°C.

Incubate MacConkey plates for 18 – 24 hrs and Sabouraud's agar for 24 hours in 35 to 37°C incubator and a further 24hours at room temperature.

d. Use part of the sediment to make smears for Gram stain and Ziehl Neelsen (ZN) and a wet preparation for India ink or Nigrosin stain.

Gram Stain

a. Prepare a smear from the sediment of CSF from the plain tube.
b. Allow to air dry.
c. Fix the smear with methanol or with heat.
d. Perform gram stain as per procedure
e. Examine for microorganisms using x100 objective and report findings.

India Ink or Nigrosin stain

a. Put a drop of the sediment of CSF from the plain tube onto a glass slide and mix with a drop of India ink or Nigrosin stain.
b. Place a glass cover slip on top and examine under the X10 or X40 objective for oval or round yeast cells surrounded by an unstained capsule.
c. Report results as "*Cryptococcus* seen," or "No *Cryptococcus* seen."

Ziehl-Neelsen Stain

For CSF with raised WBC count and predominance of lymphocytes make a smear as described for gram stain and stain with ZN stain or Auramine O stain procedure

Examine the stained smear for Acid Fast Bacilli (AFB).

Day 2. Reading cultures

Examine the culture plates for growth after 18-24 hours and perform gram stain of the isolated pathogen and proceed to perform appropriate biochemical identification tests.

Perform susceptibility tests on all pure growths not deemed as contaminants If there is no growth obtained, re-incubate the plates for another 18 – 24hours.

Day 3. Bacterial identification

a. Read biochemical tests using Refe*r Identification flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms*
b. Record the biochemical identification tests on Microbiology culture worksheet
c. Report the findings.
d. Examine the re-incubated plates for growth. If there is growth, proceed with the necessary identification and sensitivity tests as on day 2. If there is no growth report as "No Growth" and send the results.

Calculations

Cell count calculations

If N cells are counted in 1 mm^2, calculate the WBC count as follows:

$$\frac{N}{\text{Area} \times \text{Depth}} \times 10^6 /L$$

- Area x Depth = Volume (µL)

E.g.

$$\frac{N}{\_\_\_\_\__2 \times 0.1 \text{ mm}} \times 10_6 /L \ 1 \text{ mm}$$

$$N \ {}_6/L \rightarrow {}_3 \times 10 \ \frac{\quad}{0.1 \text{ mm}}$$

→ $N \times 10 \times 10^6/L$

NB: Both red and white cells should be counted.

If cells are too numerous to be counted dilute sample with saline and carry out the cell count as indicated above. Multiply the number of cells counted by the dilution factor in order to get the actual cell count of the neat CSF.

Dilute CSF samples containing numerous RBCs with 2% acetic acid tinted with methylene blue or crystal violet in a 1:1 ratio and count the WBC. The acetic acid will lyse RBCs.

7.11.13 Biological Reference Intervals

From cell count

WBC: ≤5

RBC: 0

7.11.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

i. Blood-stained CSF samples may indicate traumatic lumbar puncture (i.e., if the second sample is less blood-stained). ii. If sample 1 and 2 are equally blood-stained that may be suggestive of subarachnoid haemorrhage in the CNS.

iii. A xanthochromic (yellow) CSF is suggestive of subarachnoid haemorrhage, jaundice, or spinal constriction.

iv. A clot in the CSF is suggestive of spinal constriction or pyogenic meningitis.

v. In tuberculosis meningitis, the clot may form a web on the surface of the fluid if allowed to stand for several hours.

vi. A turbid CSF sample is indicative of bacterial meningitis.

vii. If the CSF contains a predominance of polymorphs, it is indicative of acute bacterial meningitis. viii. A predominance of lymphocytes in CSF is indicative of viral, TB or Cryptococcus meningitis.

Critical values

A positive result for any of the investigations above is considered critical and **must** be communicated to the requesting clinician immediately.

7.11.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

a. If aseptic procedures are not strictly adhered to in collection and processing of samples, cultures may yield contaminants.
b. The technique described above will not isolate viruses or fastidious organisms such as Mycobacterium, Treponema and Leptospira.
c. Administration of antimicrobial agents before CSF collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms in cultures.
d. Delay in transportation and subsequent processing of CSF after collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms.
e. Delay in subcultures or incubation of sub-cultured plates may affect the recovery of microorganisms

7.11.16 Performance Characteristics refer to method verification reports

7.11.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

Safety manual

Quality manual

7.11.18 References

- JICA (2004). Manual of Laboratory Procedures for clinical Microbiology
- Barrow, G.I and Feltham, R.K.A (1993). *Cowan and Steel's manual for identification of medical bacteria* (3rd edition). Cambridge University Press, Great Britain.
- Cheesbrough, M (1987). *Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries* (Vol. II). Butterworth-Heinemann, London.
- Isenberg, H. D (1992). *Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook (Vol. 1 & 2).*American Society of Microbiology, Washington, DC
- Murray, P. R, Baron, E. R, Pfaller, M. A, Tenover, F.C and Yolken, R. H (1995) *Manual of Clinical Microbiology (6thedition)*. American Society for Microbiology, Washing, DC

7.12 CULTURE OF BODY FLUID OTHER THAN CSF (PLEURAL FLUID, PERITONEAL FLUID, AND SYNOVIAL FLUID)

7.12.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing body fluids other than CSF for culture and sensitivity.

7.12.2 Scope

The procedure is used in the Bacteriology section whenever body fluids other than csf are received.

7.12.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Medical Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

7.12.4 Principle

Body fluids (i.e. pleural fluid, peritoneal fluid, and synovial fluid) in enclosed body cavities are sterile. The presence of microorganisms in such serous cavities induces inflammation that leads to excessive accumulation of fluid and other inflammatory markers. Such microorganisms may be demonstrated by microscopy or culture examination of effusions produced during inflammation.

7.12.5 Sample Requirements

Samples are collected using a clean, sterile swab and sent in transport medium. If fluid is sent this is placed in a sterile container with a screw cap lid.

7.12.6 Equipment

Aerobic Incubator, Biosafety cabinet, Microscope, Refrigerator, Anaerobic jar 25% CO2

7.12.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**

Antimicrobial susceptibility discs, Biochemical reagents, Control organisms, Gram staining kit or leishman, ZN stain reagents and Auramine phenol **Media**; MCA, Chocolate, Blood agar, Mueller-Hinton Agar, Sabouraud agar (Appropriate selective media may be used when clinically indicated). Broth: Cooked meat media, Thioglycollate broth	Petri dishes (Sterile disposable) Physiological saline Sterile swabs, disposable gloves, match box, forceps, marker pen, spirit Wire loop Centrifuge tubes Capillary tubes Plain sterile containers Sterile pipette and rubber tips Glass slides
Tryptone soya broth	Glass cover slips

7.12.8 Storage and Stability

Reagents: store according to manufacturer's specifications.

The Sample **MUST NOT be refrigerated as this will kill fastidious organisms such as *Haemophilus spp*.** In case of delay, keep the Sample at 37^{o}C for not more than 2 hrs.

7.12.9 Safety

i. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

ii. All Samples must be regarded as potentially infections. iii. Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for healthcare services in Tanzania, February 2007.

7.12.10 Calibration

Not Applicable

7.12.11 Quality Control

Ensure that all media and supplies used have passed the required Quality control and are used within their expiry date

7.12.12 Procedural Steps

Day 1

Macroscopic Examination

• Examine the fluid macroscopically for colour, turbidity, or presence of blood.

Culture

i. Transfer part of the fluid into another sterile plain tube.
ii. Centrifuge one aliquot of the fluid at 3000rpm for 5 minutes and tip off the supernatant.
iii. Inoculate part of the sediment heavily onto blood agar plates, chocolate agar, MacConkey agar, and sabouraud's agar.
iv. Use part of the sediment to make a smear for gram stain and ZN stain.
v. Incubate the MAC agar plate aerobically at 37^{o}C for 24 hrs.
vi. Incubate BA plate and CHOC plate at 37^{o}C in 5% CO_2 for 24 hrs.
vii. Incubate sabouraud's agar aerobically at 37^{o}C for up to 14 days.

Gram stain

a. Prepare a smear from the sediment of given body fluid in tube 1.
b. Allow to air dry.
c. Fix the smear with methanol or with heat.
d. Gram stains the smear.
e. Examine for microorganisms using x100 objective and report findings.
f. Ziehl-Neelsen Stain
g. Make a smear as described for gram stain and stain with ZN stain or Auramine O stain.
h. Examine the stained smear for Acid Fast Bacilli (AFB).

Day 2

- Examine plates for possible pathogens and Perform appropriate identification biochemical tests Identification flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms)
- Perform susceptibility tests on all pure growths not deemed as contaminants using.
- Re-incubate all culture plates with no growth for 24 hrs under appropriate conditions. **Day 3**
- Read the biochemical tests and identify the organism and report findings (Refer to Identification flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms)
- Record the identification biochemical tests.
- Report susceptibility results

7.12.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

7.12.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- Blood-stained fluids may indicate traumatic puncture.
- A turbid fluid is indicative of an infection.
- If the fluid contains a predominance of polymorphs is indicative of acute bacterial infection.
- A predominance of lymphocytes in fluids is indicative of viral, TB or fungal infection.
- Report the Gram smear result along with the culture results

7.12.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

If aseptic procedures are not strictly adhered to in collection and processing of Samples, cultures may yield contaminants.

Administration of antimicrobial agents before Sample collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms.

The technique described above will not isolate viruses or fastidious organisms such as *Mycobacterium, Treponema* and *Leptospira.*

Delay in transportation and subsequent processing of fluid Samples after collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms.

7.12.16 Performance Characteristics

Not applicable

7.12.17 Supporting Documents

Laboratory quality policy manual

Laboratory safety policy manual

Laboratory sample collection manual

7.12.18 References

Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook, 3rd edition, 2010. ASM Press, Washington. DC.

Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th edition, 2003. ASM Press, Washington. DC

Baker, F and Silvertone, R.E (1985). Introduction to Medical Laboratory Technology (6th edition). Butterworths, London

Baker, F.J (1980) Medical Microbiological Techniques. Butterworths, London.

Basic Laboratory Procedure in clinical bacteriology 2nd Edition.

Cheesbrough, M (1987). *Medical Laboratory Manual for Tropical Countries* (Vol. II). Butterworth-Heinemann, London.

7.13 EXAMINATION OF WOUND (PUS AND ABSCESS)

7.13.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for processing pus, wound, ear, nose, throat and eye swabs for culture and sensitivity.

7.13.2 Scope

The procedure is used in the Bacteriology section whenever ear, nose, throat and eye swabs are received.

7.13.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent Medical Laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

7.13.4 Principle

Lysozyme enzyme that constantly bathes the eye renders the eye virtually a sterile site though exposed to the external environment. The presence of microorganisms in the eye sample is indicative of an infection and may be demonstrated by microscopy and/or culture examination. In clinically indicated pus, wound, ear, nose or throat infections, responsible microorganisms often occur in predominant numbers and may be demonstrate by microscopy and/or culture examination.

7.13.5 Sample Requirements

Pus, Wound, Ear, nose, throat, eye and surface swabs. Transport media – Amies transport media.

7.13.6 Equipment

Aerobic Incubator, Biosafety cabinet, Microscope, Refrigerator, Anaerobic jar 25% CO2

7.13.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**

Antimicrobial susceptibility discs Biochemical reagents Control organisms Glass slides Glass cover slips Gram and ZN stain reagents MCA, SDA and Chocolate agar	Petri dishes (Sterile disposable) Physiological saline Sterile swabs, disposable gloves, match box, forceps, marker pen, spirit Wire loop

7.13.8 Storage and Stability

When delay is anticipated store sample to 2 - 8ºC

7.13.9 Safety

- Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
- All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.13.10 Calibration

Not Applicable

7.13.11 Quality Control

Quality control of media and reagents is done as per Procedure for media and reagents preparation

7.13.12 Procedural Steps

Day 1. Macroscopy appearance

Look colour, volume, smell and consistent of samples and report on the worksheet

Microscopy examination

Perform gram stains on pus, wound, ear, eye, nose and per nasal samples. Gram stains are not necessary on mouth (except in necrotising ulcerative gingivitis [Vincent's infection]), nasopharynx and throat samples.

Culture

- Inoculate the sample onto 2 Blood agar plates, Chocolate, Sabauraud Dextrose and MacConkey agar
- Incubate one of the Blood agar plate as well as MacConkey agar plate aerobically at 37°C for 18 – 24 hours.
- Incubate another Blood agar plate and Chocolate agar plate at 37ºC in 5% CO_2 for 18 – 24 hours

- Incubate Sabauraud Dextrose agar at 35 ^{o}C

Day 2. Reading the culture plates

Examine aerobic cultures for possible pathogens (Refer to ***Identification Flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms).*** Record observations on ***Microbiology culture worksheet***

Set up appropriate biochemical tests accordingly

Perform susceptibility tests using the ***Procedure for antibiotic susceptibility testing*** Re-incubate all culture plates with no growth for another 18 – 24 hours.

Day 3. Reading the biochemical tests

i. Read the biochemical tests ***(Refer to Identification Flow Chart/Biochemical tests for microorganisms)*** ii. Record the identification biochemical tests on ***Microbiology culture worksheet***

iii. Read the susceptibility plates and record results on ***Microbiology culture worksheet***

iv. Examine the re-incubated aerobic and anaerobic plates for possible pathogens and set up appropriate biochemical tests.

v. Perform susceptibility tests following ***Procedure for antibiotic susceptibility testing, and*** read the next day.

7.13.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

7.13.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

i. Report the pathogen isolated and the antimicrobial susceptibility pattern

ii. Record the results on Microbiology culture worksheet

iii. If there is no growth in culture media, report as NO BACTERIAL GROWTH

iv. If there is growth of coliform /normal flora in culture media, report as NO PATHOGEN ISOLATED / Normal floral isolated

v. If there is a growth of pathogen in culture media perform Biochemical test to identify the pathogen and perform Antimicrobial susceptibility test

vi. In case of eye samples, report all negative cultures as "No growth".

vii. The eye is normally a sterile site; hence the isolation of micro-organisms from eye samples is indicative of an infection.

viii. In gram stain smears from gingival ulcers the presence of gram negative spirochaetes and fusiform bacilli is indicative of necrotic ulcerative gingivitis. ix. In the ear, nose, pus, wound and throat samples hence there is isolation of pathogenic microorganism indicate of an infection of respective areas

x. For nose, pernasal, mouth, nasopharynx or throat sample cultures where no pathogen is isolated report as “Normal flora Isolated.”NO pathogen isolated

7.13.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

If aseptic procedures are not strictly adhered to in collection and processing of samples cultures may yield contaminants.

Administration of antimicrobial agents before sample collection may affect the recovery of microorganisms in blood culture media.

Delay in transportation and processing of samples may affect the recovery of microorganisms in blood culture media.

7.13.16 Performance Characteristics Not Applicable

7.13.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual, Laboratory safety policy manual

7.13.18 References

Baker, F and Silvertone, R.E (1985). Introduction to Medical Laboratory Technology (6th edition). Butterworths, London

7.14 SPUTUM CULTURE FOR PATHOGENS OTHER THAN MTB CAUSING AGENTS

7.14.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for culturing sputum samples in order to isolate organism known to cause bacterial respiratory infections.

7.14.2 Scope

This procedure is used to help staff to identify bacteria or other type of germs causing infection in the lung or airway in the Laboratory

7.14.3 Responsibility

Competent Health Laboratory Practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head Microbiology is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

7.14.4 Principle

Microorganisms and/or other particles entering the lower respiratory tract (LRT) are trapped by mucous and cilia lining the trachea and bronchioles and swept out as

sputum. This renders the LRT virtually sterile. Infection of the LRT induces inflammatory reactions that lead to increased sputum and WBC collection in the respiratory tract. Microorganisms responsible for the LRT infection (LRTI) often occur in predominant numbers in the presence of WBC and may be demonstrated by microscopy and/or culture examination of sputum.

7.14.5 Sample Requirements collect sputum in a disposable, wide mouthed, screw-capped plastic container of about 100 ml capacity.

7.14.6 Equipment

35-37˚C Incubator, Carbon dioxide incubator, Microscope, Hot air oven, refrigerator

7.14.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Blood Agar, Chocolate Agar, MacConkey agar Saboraud Dextrose Agar (in immune compromised patients) Gram Stain ZN Stain Biochemical reagent	Slides Applicator sticks Standard wire loop (e.g. 1 µl [0.001ml]) Spirit lamp/Cooking gas Match box Gloves

7.14.8 Storage and Stability

When delay anticipated store sputum at 2 – 8ºC

7.14.9 Safety

i. Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
ii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual. iii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iv. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
v. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
vi. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.14.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.14.11 Quality Control

Perform Quality control of media and reagents when new lot prepared

7.14.12 Procedural Steps

i. Macroscopic appearance: Describe the sample: purulent, mucopurlent, mucoid, salivary, contains blood

ii. Prepare a thin film with broken applicator stick and do Gram Stain and look for pus cells and bacteria.

iii. Do ZN Stain and look for Acid Fast Bacilli

iv. Culture sample on BA, CA. MCA, SDA (incubate CA in CO2), other media incubate at 35 for 24 hrs, aerobically. If Optochin discs are available, place one on to the BA within the area of the Second spread. This will help to identify s.pnemoniae.

v. On BA and CA look for s.pneumoniae, H.influenzae, S.aureus, S. pyogenes, M.catarrhalis.

vi. On SDA: yeast cells

vii. On MCA: observe for Klebsiella pneumoniae, Aeruginosa, Proteus,

viii. VI. Identify the organisms as required. Set Susceptibility if growth of a pathogen is significant.

ix. **Reading Biochemical tests**

x. Read the biochemical tests and identify the organism. and report the identified organism(s).

xi. Record the identification biochemical tests on Microbiology culture worksheet

xii. Read the susceptibility plates as recommended and report.

7.14.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicable

7.14.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results Report Culture as:

Colonial morphology

Report cultures without growth as 'No bacteria growth'

Report cultures with growth name of pathogenic organism

Report culture with normal flora as Normal flora isolated

NOTE: Culture: The interpretation of sputum isolates can be challenging because there is a mixed growth of bacteria.

Look for SIGNIFICANT growth of:

Streptococcus pneumonia sensitive to Optochin

Haemophilus influenza, Staph aureus, Klebsiella pneumonia, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Moraxella catarrhalis, Proteus spp, Streptococcus pyogenes, Candida albicans

7.14.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

If no floccules of pus cells seen {such as in grey mucoid sputum samples} the gram stain smear may show only the presence of large, rather square, squamous epithelial cells, frequently covered with masses of adherent bacteria. This indicates that the

sample consists of mainly mouth or throat secretions, culture should not be carried out as it is not relevant and usually high misleading.

An accepted guideline is to reject any sample that contains fewer than 10 polymorph nuclear neutrophils per epithelial cells

7.14.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report

7.14.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

7.14.18 References

Basic Laboratory Procedure in clinical bacteriology 2nd Edition.

7.15 PROCEDURE FOR CATALASE TEST

7.15.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing catalase test.

7.15.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for performing Catalase test in the Laboratory

7.15.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.15.4 Principle

Bacteria that synthesize the enzyme catalase hydrolyze hydrogen peroxide into water and gaseous oxygen, which results in the liberation of gas bubbles. The test is useful in initial characterization of most bacteria. The catalase test separates staphylococci (positive) from streptococci and enterococci (negative). For spore forming organisms, *Bacillus spp.* are catalase positive, and *Clostridium spp*. are catalase negative. *Neisseria gonorrheae* produces an enhanced elaboration of bubbles not seen with other members of the genus due to superoxol. The superoxol is a simple test that uses 30% hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) as a reagent. Reactions of superoxol with *N. gonorrheae* are typically “explosive” (4+, very strong), compared with weaker (2+) reactions with most non-gonococcal*Neisseria species*, and a negative reaction with *K.*

denitrificans. In contrast, the catalase test is performed with 3% hydrogen peroxide and yields much weaker results.

(This method detects the presence of the catalase enzyme, which hydrolyses H_2O_2 to produce H_2O and O_2.

7.15.5 Sample Requirements

- The young bacterial colonies of 18 to 24 hours old from agar media.
- Preferably from Chocolate Agar (CA).
- If necessary Blood Agar Plate (BAP) may also be used with much attention.

7.15.6 Equipment Not applicable

7.15.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Catalase reagent: 3% Hydrogen Peroxide (H_2O_2) Dilute 30% H_2O_2, 1:10 in deionized water, store at 2 - 8 ^oC Reagent may be stored for up to 6 months. Superoxol reagent for Neisseria: 30% Hydrogen Peroxide (H_2O_2), store at 2-8 ^oC.	Personal protective gears Plastic disposable/ wire loop Gauze Clean Glass slides Applicator stick Diamond pencil or Grease pencil Small plastic sheet or gloves

7.15.8 Storage and Stability

- Store Media powder according to manufacturer's specifications.
- Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.15.9 Safety

a) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines

b) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

c) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

d) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

e) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

f) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.

g) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.15.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.15.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.

- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.15.12 Procedure Steps

a) Touch the centre of a well-isolated colony; transfer to a clean glass slide.
b) Be sure colony is visible to the naked eye on slide.
c) If colony is from BAP, use care not to pick up blood.
d) Place 1 drop of hydrogen peroxide reagent on slide and observe immediately for effervescence.
e) Do not reverse the order of adding the reagent to the colony; false negative result can occur.
f) Do not mix reagent and the colony.
g) Use a magnifying lens to observe bubbling if necessary.
h) Hold over dark background to enhance bubbles.
i) Discard slide into sharps container

7.15.13 Biological Reference Interval

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.15.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- Positive: shows immediate appearance of bubbles.
- Negative: shows no bubbles or a few bubbles after 20 seconds.

7.15.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

a) Caution: 30% Hydrogen Peroxide (H_2O_2) is extremely caustic to skin. If contact occurs, wash immediately with 70% ethyl alcohol not water.
b) 30% Hydrogen Peroxide (H_2O_2) reagent can be used for all tests, but it is more hazardous.
c) Red blood cells contain catalase. To avoid false positive results, do not pick up blood agar with colony. If colony does not easily pick up or grow well, repeat the test from CHOC, which does not interfere with the assay.
d) Selecting colonies with some metal bacteriological loop materials will yield false positive results; platinum loops do not yield false positive results.
e) For *Neisseria spp:* record as Superoxol positive or Superoxol negative.
f) For other bacteria: record as Catalase test positive or Catalase test negative
g) Do not test colonies that are older than 24 hours because the enzyme is present in viable cultures only. Older cultures may give false negative results

7.15.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer perfomance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.15.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.15.18 References

a) Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.
b) Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.
c) WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.
d) Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
e) Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility
Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland.
2003

7.16 PROCEDURE COAGULASE TEST

7.16.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Coagulase test

7.16.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for performing Coagulase test in the Laboratory

7.16.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.16.4 Principle

This test is used to differentiate *Staphylococcus aureus* from other *Staphylococcus* spp. by determining the ability of an isolate to clot plasma by producing coagulase enzyme.
Bacterial cell possesses two coagulase enzymes: free coagulase that is secreted extracellular and bound coagulase a cell walls associated protein. Free coagulase is

detected in the tube coagulase test while bound coagulase is detected in slide coagulase test.

The bound coagulase is also known as clumping factor. It cross links the alpha and beta chains of fibrinogen in plasma to form fibrin clot that deposits on the cell wall. As a result, individual cocci stick to each other and clumping is observed.

7.16.5 Sample Requirements

Colonies (18-24 hours old) of Gram-positive cocci in clusters which are catalase positive, as part of the identification of *S. aureus*

7.16.6 Equipment Not applicable

7.16.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Rabbit plasma/sheep in EDTA anticoagulated tube rehydrate according to manufacturer's instructions. Dispense 0.5 ml into sterile 12- by 75-mm tubes. Do not use plasma that appears turbid. Do NOT use human plasma for the test, as it is less sensitive and potentially infectious with human pathogenic viruses. Sterile deionised water. Positive and negative Control slides for gram positive & negative organisms, respectively (if necessary).	PPEs Plastic disposable/ wire loop Gauze Clean Glass slides Applicator stick Diamond pencil

7.16.8 Storage and Stability

Reconstituted reagent expires after one month if stored at -20^{o}C or 5 days if stored at 2 to 8^{o}C.

7.16.9 Safety

h) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
i) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
j) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
k) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
l) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
m) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
n) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.16.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.16.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.16.12 Procedure Steps **Slide method**

- Using a sterile transfer pipette, place one very small drop (10 µl) of sterile deionized water on a slide.
- Emulsify several colonies of the test organisms into the water to obtain a smooth milk-colored suspension.

Note*:* If clumps occur and the organism does not suspend in the water, the slide test cannot be performed. Perform the tube test instead.

Using sterile loop, add rabbit plasma (1 to 3 µl). Mix and observe for clumping immediately, not to exceed 10 seconds. Record results.

Discard slide in a sharps container or in disinfectant bucket. **Tube method:**

- Add 0.5ml of Rabbit's plasma into a test 12 x 75 mm tube.
- Inoculate the tube with several colonies of the test organism.
- Incubate at 35˚C for up to 4 hours and observe hourly for clot formation. Do not agitate the tube; rather gently tip to observe the clot. If test is negative after 4 hours continue to incubate the test for 24 hours.
- After 24 hour incubation, observe for clot formation. Record results

7.16.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.16.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results **Slide method**

- A positive slide test is reported as *S. aureus*; however, the test should be confirmed with a tube test from non hemolytic or only slightly hemolytic colonies from sterile sites such as blood, to separate *S. Aureus* from *S. lugdunensis* and *S. schleiferi.*
- All negative slide tests must be confirmed using the tube test. **Tube method**

- Report as *Staphylococcus aureus* if the tube test is positive and the organism is coagulase positive and a Gram-positive coccus in clusters.
- For a negative tube test from coagulase-positive, Gram-positive cocci in clusters that have creamy, white colonies, report as "*Coagulase-negative Staphylococci*."

Results Interpretation Slide method:

Positive: presence of macroscopic clumping in 10 seconds or less.

Negative: no visible clumping.

Tube method:

Positive test - complete clot formation or any degree of clot formation Negative test - lack of clot formation

7.16.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- To avoid misidentifications, only perform this test on classic-looking, white to yellow, creamy, opaque, hemolytic colonies of gram-positive cocci in clusters that are coagulase positive.
- *Methicillin-resistant S. aureus* (MRSA) can be deficient in bound coagulase, which results in negative slide test.
- *S. lugdunensis* and *S. Schleiferi* produce slide coagulase, but the reaction is more efficient if human plasma is used rather than rabbit plasma. They can be separated from *S. aureus* by by their strongly positive PYR reaction and from *S. intermedius* by a negative tube coagulase test.
- Coagulase testing cannot be performed from growth on mannitol salt agar

7.16.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer perfomance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.16.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.16.18 References

a) Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.

b) Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.

c) WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.

d) Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM),

Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.

7.17 PROCEDURE FOR NOVOBIOCIN TEST

7.17.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Novobiocin test.

7.17.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for performing Novobiocin test in the Laboratory

7.17.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.17.4 Principle

Novobiocin disks are recommended for the differentiation of coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* based on novobiocin resistance. This method is based on the antibiotic disk diffusion test of Kirby and Bauer. *S. saprophyticus* has recently been recognized as a significant cause of urinary tract infections, especially in young women

7.17.5 Sample Requirements

Overnight growth of test isolate on Sheep Blood Agar. Test may be performed on isolates from primary culture plates. Organisms used for testing must be isolated and not mixed with normal flora.

7.17.6 Equipment

Incubator at 35º ± 2ºC, and Biosafety cabinet

7.17.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables

Novobiocin disks, 5 µg (round, 6mm paper disks). ***Note***: Store opened cartridge and desiccant inside a 15-ml conical tube with screw-cap to avoid deterioration due to excessive moisture. Tube of sterile saline or tryptic soy broth (TSB), Mueller Hinton agar plate.	a) Personal protective gears b) Sterile Plastic disposable/ wire loop. c) Marker pen d) Small plastic sheet or gloves e) McFarland standard f) Forceps g) Ruler or caliper

7.17.8 Storage and Stability

Store Media powder and disks according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.17.9 Safety

a) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
b) Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
c) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
d) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
e) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
f) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
g) Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
h) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
i) The test device should be stored at 2 -30ºC. And the test should be performed at room temperature.
j) Do not reuse the test device.
k) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.17.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.17.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organismseach time this procedure is performed.
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.

7.17.12 Procedure Steps

a) Using sterile inoculating loop, select 4-5 well-isolated colonies. Suspend growth in a tube of sterile saline or broth. Adjust the turbidity to form a suspension comparable to a McFarland 0.5 standard. Agitate this suspension thoroughly.
b) Dip a swab into the suspension and express excess fluid by rotating the swab against the inside wall of the test tube.
c) Inoculate the entire surface of a Mueller Hinton medium plate, streaking in three directions by rotating the plate 60° after each streaking. If the inoculum is satisfactory, there will be a confluent lawn of growth.
d) Allow the inoculum to dry approximately 5 minutes with the lid in place.
e) Using sterile forceps, place one novobiocin disk on the inoculated surface. Gently press the disc down to ensure complete contact with the agar. Do not move a disc once it has touched the agar because the novobiocin diffuses almost immediately.
f) Invert and incubate at 35°C for 16 – 18 hours.
g) Measure the zone of inhibition, if present, with a ruler or caliper

7.17.13 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Positive; A zone of inhibition greater than 16mm indicates that organism is sensitive to the antibiotic.

Negative; A zone of inhibition less than or equal to 16mm is indicative of novobiocin resistance

Report *Staphylococcus saprophyticus if inhibition zone is less than or equal to 16mm*

7.17.14 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.17.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error • Novobiocin (5 µg) disks are intended for screening of novobiocin resistance only.

- They are not intended for determining the susceptibility of coagulase-negative staphylococci to novobiocin.
- Other less significant coagulase-negative Staphylococcus strains are also novobiocin resistant, such as *S. cohnii*, *S. xylosus*and *S. sciuri*.

7.17.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer perfomance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.17.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual

- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.17.18 References

a) Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.
b) Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.
c) WHO, (2003). Manual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.
d) Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
e) Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland.
2003.

7.18 PROCEDURE FOR BACITRACIN TEST

7.18.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Bacitracin test

7.18.2 Scope

This procedure provides instructions for performing Bacitracin test in the Laboratory

7.18.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.18.4 Principle

Streptococcus pyogenes (group A *Streptococcus*) is one of the most important pathogens encountered in clinical practice. In addition to infections of the upper respiratory tract and the skin, *S. pyogenes* can cause a wide variety of invasive systemic infections, and infection with this pathogen is also causally linked to 2 potentially serious nonsuppurative complications: acute rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis. The bacitracin disk susceptibility test is commonly used to presumptively identify group A beta-hemolytic streptococci. Group A streptococcus is differentiated from other groups of beta-hemolytic streptococci by the formation of a zone of inhibition around a disk impregnated with 0.04 unit of bacitracin. The bacitracin

disk is also a very sensitive assay to separate staphylocci from Rothiamucilaginosa (formerly *Stomatococcusmucilaginosus*) and Micrococcus. This separation is generally performed restrictively, usually on strains with pigment or sticky colony morphology from significant anatomic sites.

7.18.5 Sample Requirements

Overnight growth of test isolate on Sheep Blood Agar. Test may be performed on isolates from primary culture plates. Organisms used for testing must be isolated and not mixed with normal flora.

7.18.6 Equipment

Incubator and biosafety cabinet

7.18.7 Materials

- Bacitracin disks
- Sheep blood agar (SBA) plates
- Sterile inoculating loop
- forceps

7.18.8 Storage and Stability • Store Media powder and disks according to manufacturer's instructions&specifications.

- Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC
- Return unused disks to refrigerator as soon as possible following manufacturer specification

7.18.9 Safety

a) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
b) Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
c) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
d) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
e) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
f) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
g) Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
h) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
i) The test device should be stored at 2 -30ºC. And the test should be performed at room temperature.

j) Do not reuse the test device.
k) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.18.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.18.11 Quality Control

Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.

Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.

Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.18.12 Procedure Steps

a) Divide a blood agar plate into two halves and label appropriately.
b) Using a loop, touch a colony of the test organism.
c) Inoculate half the surface of sheep blood agar(SBA).
d) Streak the plate in at least two directions to obtain confluent growth.
e) Using sterile forceps, place a Bacitracin disk in the center of each inoculated area.
f) Press disk gently with the sterile forceps so that the disk adheres firmly to the agar surface.
g) Incubate plate at 35°C in 5 – 10% CO_2 for 18-24 hours.
h) The next day, observe for zone of inhibition around the disk.
i) Record results.

7.18.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.18.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation

Susceptible: Any zone of inhibition

Negative: No zone of inhibition

Reporting of Results

- Any zone of inhibition, regardless of diameter, should be reported as "Betahemolytic *Streptococcus* presumptively group A by bacitracin."
- No zone of inhibition (growth up to the edge of the disc) is reported as "Betahemolytic *Streptococcus* presumptively NOT group A by bacitracin."

- For differentiation of *staphylococci* from micrococci and *Rothia*, use the bacitracin 0.04 U if an isolate is penicillin susceptible and from a significant body site. Coagulase negative staphylococci are resistant while *Micrococcus* and *Rothia* are susceptible. The latter also adheres to the agar. Zone of ≥10mm is susceptible. Repeat tests with values between 7 and 10mm; these are probably susceptible. Zone sizes of >7mm but less than the 10mm breakpoint may be obtained for *Micrococcus* if incubation is not a full 24 hours.

7.18.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- This test is highly sensitive but not specific. It has been reported that 6% of group B and 7.5% of groups C and G *streptococci* may produce zones of inhibition (false-positive result).
- The bacitracin disk test is presumptive, and a positive result should be followed with more specific physiological and/or serological tests. The bacitracin test may be performed in conjunction with

sulfamethoxazole/trimethoprim (SXT) susceptibility disk. Group A strep is resistant to SXT. Superior to the bacitracin disk test in terms of accuracy and time to results is the PYR hydrolysis test. This test can be completed within a few minutes, compared to overnight incubation for the bacitracin disk test. However, the cost of the PYR hydrolysis test is slightly higher than the bacitracin disk test. Also very accurate are a variety of particle agglutination assays that detect Group A streptococcal antigen in colonies growing on culture plates. These methods furnish results within a few minutes that are essentially 100% sensitive and specific. Unfortunately, they are much more expensive than the bacitracin disk test.

- It should be noted that excessive inoculum concentration may result in the absence of a zone of inhibition (false-negative result) with some group A *streptococcus*. For differentiation of Staphylococci from *Micrococci*, use bacitracin susceptibility testing only for penicillin-susceptible or “sticky” colonies of gram-positive cocci in clusters which are catalase positive and coagulase negative from invasive-site samples. Do not test lemon yellow colonies because they are presumed to be Micrococcus. While *Micrococcus and R. mucilaginosa*can be resistant to penicillin, this is a very rare event

7.18.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer perfomance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.18.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.18.18 References

a) Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.
b) Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.
c) WHO, (2003). Manual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.
d) Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
e) Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centres for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland.
2003
f) International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. The Public Health Service National Tuberculosis Reference Laboratory and the National Laboratory Network. Paris; 1998.
g) Clinical Microbiology Procedure Handbook, ASM Press 2010. 1752 N. St., N.W. Washington DC 200336-2904, USA.
h) World Health Organization. Laboratory services in tuberculosis. Part II: Microscopy. Geneva; 1998.

7.19 PROCEDURE FOR PYRRLIDONYL AMINOPEPTIDASE (PYR) TEST

7.19.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing PYR test.

7.19.2 Scope

This procedure provides instructions for performing PYR test in the Laboratory

7.19.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.19.4 Principle

PYR is a rapid colorimetric method for presumptive identification of certain groups of bacteria such as Group A streptococci (*Streptococcus pyogenes*), *Enterococcus spp*., some coagulase negative staphylococci, and some Enterobacteriaceae based on the activity of the enzyme L-pyrrolidonylarylamidase (also called pyrrolidonylaminopeptidase). Filter paper disks or strips are impregnated with

Lpyrrolidonyl-β- naphthylamide (PYR) which serves as a substrate for the detection of pyrrolidonylarylamidase (PYRase). Following hydrolysis of the substrate by the enzyme, the resulting beta-naphthylamine produces a red colour upon the addition of p- dimethylaminocinnamaldehyde (Color Developer).

7.19.5 Sample Requirements

a) Use fresh growth (18-24 hours old) from sheep blood agar plate as inoculum
b) Catalase-negative, beta-hemolytic, Gram-positive cocci with typical group A streptococcal morphology.
c) Catalase-negative, gamma- or alpha-hemolytic, Gram-positive cocci with typical enterococcal morphology.
d) Oxidase-negative, indole-positive, Gram-negative rods that are lactose positive on MacConkey agar (MAC), to identify *E. coli.*
e) Coagulase-negative staphylococci, to screen for *Staphylococcus lugdunensis* and other staphylococci to the species level.

7.19.6 Equipment

Incubator at 35 ± 2ºC and Biosafety cabinet

7.19.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Disks impregnated with PYR, 0.01% pdimethylaminocinnamaldehyde reagent (disks are available commercially; both reagents are also available as a kit). Positive and negative Control slides for gram positive & negative organisms,	Personal protective gears Sterile Plastic disposable/ wire loop Marker pen Small plastic sheet or gloves 0.5 McFarland standard, Forceps
respectively (if necessary).	Ruler or caliper

7.19.8 Storage and Stability

Store Media powder and disks according to manufacturer's specifications.

Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC. The disk should be stored at refrigerator2 - 8ºC until the expiration dates and as manufacture instructions. Store

Media powder and according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.19.9 Safety

a) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
b) Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
c) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

d) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
e) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
f) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
g) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
h) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.
i) PYR powder or liquid is a carcinogen; making the reagent in the clinical laboratory is discouraged.

7.19.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.19.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

Quality control Organism	**ATCC**	**Expected Results**
Enterococcus faecalis	29212	Positive
Streptococcus pyogenes	19615	Positive
Streptococcus agalactiae	10386	Negative

7.19.12 Procedural Steps

Broth method

- Inoculate PYR broth with 3-5 colonies from 18-24 hours' pure culture.
- Incubate the tube aerobically at 35-37°C for 4 hours.
- Add 2-3 drop of PYR reagent and observe for color change.
- Observe for the red color development within 1-2 minutes

Disk method

a) Wet the PYR test disc on the strip with 10 µl sterile distilled water or deionized water.
b) Put 5-10 colonies of the tested strain from 18-24 hours' culture on the surface of the disc with a loop and smear them lightly on it.
c) Incubate the disc for 1-2 minutes at room temperature.
d) After incubation, add 1 drop of N, N-dimethylaminocinnamaldehyde.
e) Observe for red color development within 1-2 minutes.

7.19.13 Biological Reference interval

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.19.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Positive: Bright pink or cherry-red colour within 1-2 minutes.

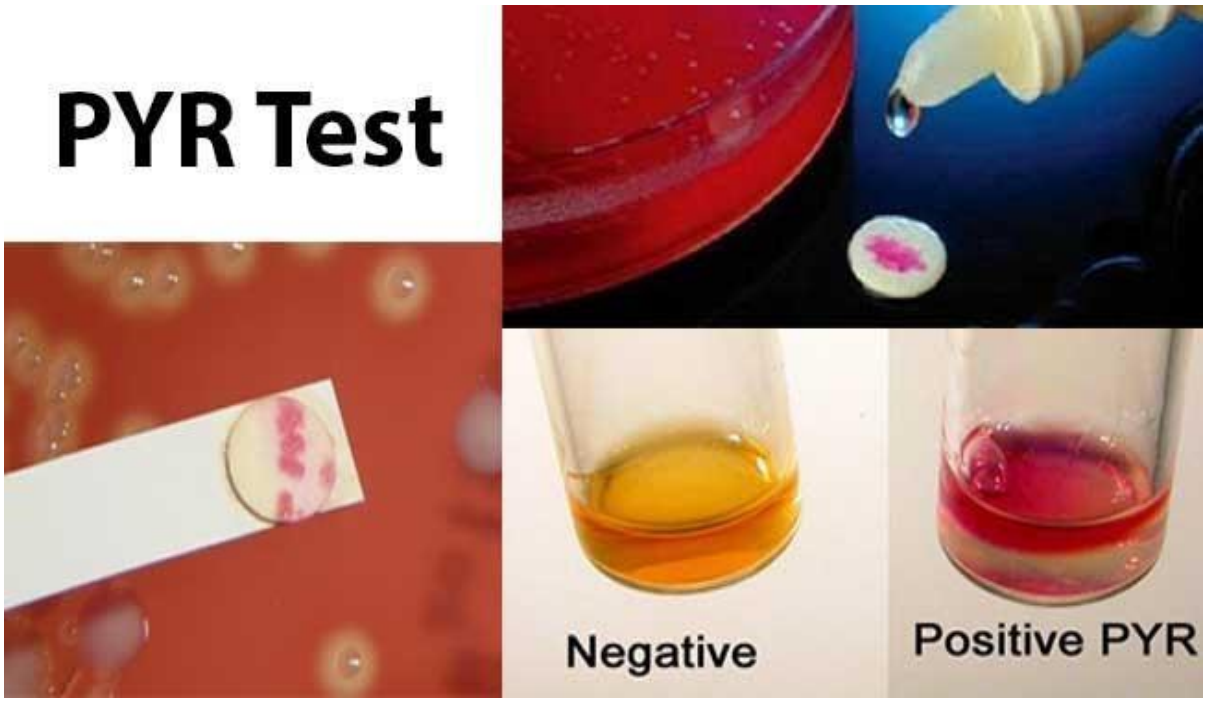
Examples: Group A *Streptococci* (*Streptococcus pyogenes*), Group D *Enterococci* (*Enterococcus faecalis and Enterococcus faecium*), Coagulase negative Staphylococcus species such as *S. hemolyticus, S. lugdunensis, S. schleiferi*., *Enterobacter, Citrobacter, Klebsiella, Yersinia* and *Serratia, Aerococcus, Gamella, Lactococcus*, most *Corynebacterium (Arcanobacterium) hemolyticum.*

Negative: No colour change or a blue colour due to a positive indole reaction.

Examples: Group B Streptococci (*Streptococcus agalactiae*), *Streptococcus mitis, S. bovis, S. equinus, S. milleri.*

Note: A pale pink reaction (weak) is considered negative.

Results Interpretation



7.19.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

a) PYR may be used in the presumptive separation of group A streptococci and group D enterococci from other streptococci. Additional testing, using a pure culture, is recommended for complete identification.

b) A false-negative test can result if the disk or filter papers are too moist.
c) False-negative tests can result if selective media or tube biochemical agars are used to provide inocula.
d) *Escherichia coli* and indole-positive *Proteus* obtained from media containing high tryptophan content may yield a blue-green color development. This is a negative result.
e) Non-specific colour reactions may occur if results are read after 20 seconds

7.19.16 Performance Characteristics

Not applicable

7.19.17 Supporting Documents

Laboratory quality policy manual, Laboratory safety policy manual

7.19.18 References

1. PYR (L-Pyrrolidonyl-b-Naphthylamide) Test. Chapter 3.17.41. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. Volume 1. Second Edition Update (2007).
2. L-Pyrrolidonyl Arylamidase (PYR) Test. Procedure 13-36. Bailey & Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology.
3. Monica Cheesbrough. District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries. Second Edition. Part 2. Chapter 7 Microbiological Test. 7.18.2 *Streptococcus pyogenes*. pp- 160.

7.20 PROCEDURE FOR OPTOCHIN TEST

7.20.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Optochin test.

7.20.2 Scope

This procedure provides instructions for performing Optochin test in the Laboratory

7.20.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure.

7.20.4 Principle

Optochin susceptibility test is used in the rapid differentiation and presumptive identification of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. The test is performed with a 6-mm disk impregnated with 5µg ethylhydrocupreine hydrochloride (Optochin). Optochin susceptibility testing differentiates *S. pneumoniae* from other alpha-hemolytic

streptococci. The growth of pneumococci, but not other streptococci, is markedly inhibited by Optochin

7.20.5 Sample Requirements

A 18-24 hour old culture of colonies suggestive of *S. pneumoniae* (alpha-hemolytic, catalase negative, Gram positive cocci in pairs).

7.20.6 Equipment

Incubator at 35 ± 2ºC

7.20.7 Materials

Optochin disks (5 µg), Sheep Blood Agar Plate, Personal protective gears, Sterile Plastic disposable/ wire loop, Marker pen, Small plastic sheet or gloves, 0.5 McFarland standard, Forceps, Ruler or caliper

7.20.8 Storage and Stability

Store Media powder and disks according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.20.9 Safety

a) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
b) Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
c) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
d) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
e) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
f) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
g) Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
h) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
i) The test device should be stored at 2 -30ºC. And the test should be performed at room temperature.
j) Do not reuse the test device.
k) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.20.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.20.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.20.12 Procedure Steps

a) Using an inoculating loop, select a well isolated colony of the alpha-hemolytic organism to be tested.
b) Directly streak the isolate onto Sheep Blood Agar Plate (SBA) plate in at least two directions so as to obtain confluent growth.
c) Several isolates may be placed on one plate by dividing the plate into quadrants and streaking one isolate per quadrant.
d) Using sterile forceps, place an Optochin disk onto the inoculated surface of the agar.
e) Press disk gently with the sterile forceps so that the disk adheres firmly to the agar surface.
f) Incubate the plate at 35 ± 2^{o}C for 18-24 hours in 5-10% CO_2.
g) If zone of inhibition is present, measure the diameter with the millimetre ruler or calliper

7.20.13 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Optochin Susceptible - report as *Streptococcus pneumoniae.*

Optochin Intermediate - perform **spot bile solubility** test for confirmation of identification. If positive report as *Streptococcus pneumoniae.* Optochin Resistant - report as *Viridans group Streptococcus*.

7.20.14 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.20.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

a) Use of media other than 5% Sheep Blood Agar is not recommended, as smaller zone can result in lack of definitive identification.
b) *S. pneumoniae* isolates should be incubated in a CO_2 enriched environment, as some isolates will grow poorly or not at all without increased CO_2.
c) If the organism is Optochin resistant, it is likely to be non-pneumococcal alpha-hemolytic streptococcus; however, rare exceptions have been reported.

d) Optochin susceptibility is an excellent test to identify *S. pneumoniae*, with 99% sensitivity for encapsulated strains and 98-99% specificity.

e) If there are colonies present within the zone of inhibition, these colonies may or may not be pneumococci. Subculture such colonies to determine if they are contaminants or pneumococci prior to reporting susceptibility results.

7.20.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer perfomance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.20.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.20.18 References

1. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.
2. Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.
3. WHO, (2003). Manual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.
4. Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
5. Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland. 2003
6. International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. The Public Health Service National Tuberculosis Reference Laboratory and the National Laboratory Network. Paris; 1998.
7. Clinical Microbiology Procedure Handbook, ASM Press 2010. 1752 N. St., N.W.Washington DC 200336-2904, USA.

7.21 PROCEDURE FOR BILE SOLUBILITY TEST

7.21.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Bile Solubility test.

7.21.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for performing Bile Solubility test in the laboratory.

7.21.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure

7.21.4 Principle bile solubility test is used to differentiate *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from alphahemolytic*Streptococcus spp.* It can be performed using either the “tube method” or the “plate method.” The bile solubility test is based on the observation that pneumococcal cells lyse when sodium desoxycholate (bile salts) is applied to the colony under specified conditions of time and temperature. The pneumococcus has an intracellular autolytic enzyme, an amidase that cause the organism to undergo rapid autolysis when cultivated on artificial medium. The bile salts alter the surface tension of the medium and cause cell membrane rearrangement. The working mechanism of the test is not clearly understood; however, one theory is that the bile salts facilitate lysis of pneumococcal cells by activating the autolytic enzyme.

7.21.5 Sample Requirements

- Any alpha-hemolytic colonies on sheep blood agar (18-24 hour old) suggestive of *S. pneumoniae*: catalase negative, Gram positive cocci in pairs or chains, having the characteristic central depression (flattened center) or mucoid colony morphology.
- Colonies from suspected *S. pneumoniae* on Sheep Blood Agar bile solubility test (SBA) that are Optochin Intermediate.

7.21.6 Equipment Biosafety cabinet

7.21.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
10% Sodium desoxycholate Dilute 1g of Sodium desoxycholate to 10 ml of deionized water. Store at 15 – 30 ºC with shelf life of 6 months. Sterile 0.85 % NaCl (NSS).	a) Personal protective equipment b) Marker pen c) Sterile wooden applicator sticks d) Inoculating Loops e) Test tubes, 12 x 75mm f) Sterile Pasteur (transfer) pipettes

7.21.8 Storage and Stability

Store Media powder and disks according to manufacturer’s specifications. Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.21.9 Safety

a) Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines

b) Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.

c) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
d) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
e) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
f) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
g) Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
h) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
i) The test device should be stored at 2 -30ºC. And the test should be performed at room temperature.
j) Do not reuse the test device.
k) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.21.10 Calibration

All auxilary equipment should be calibrated annually

7.21.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.21.12 Procedure Steps

Test tube method

a) Dispense 0.5 ml of NSS into a small test tube.
b) Take a loop of the suspect strain from fresh growth on SBA and prepare heavy suspension of the organism (No.1 McFarland Standard). Shake to form a uniform suspension.
c) Divide the suspension into two tubes, one labeled "TEST" and the other labeled "CONTROL".
d) Dispense 5 drops of bile reagent into the tube marked "TEST"
e) Add 5 drops of NSS to the tube marked "CONTROL".
f) Gently mix each tube.
g) Incubate the tubes for 3 hours at 35 ± 2^{o}C, checking hourly for clearing.
h) Observe for clearing in "TEST" suspension. The "CONTROL" suspension should remain turbid.

Direct Plate Method

a) Place a drop of bile reagent near a suspected 18-24 hour colony.

b) Gently roll the drop over several representative colonies by tilting the plate.
c) Keep the plate right side up and incubate at 35 ± 2°C for 15-30 minutes or until the reagent drop has evaporated.
d) Observe for flattening of the colony. Be sure the colony did not simply float away

7.21.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.21.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- Report as *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, if either the tube test or direct plate bile solubility is positive from alpha hemolytic colony of gram positive cocci in pairs and tested catalase negative.
- Report as Viridans group Streptococcus, if the test does not demonstrate bile solubility from alpha hemolytic colony of Gram positive cocci in pairs and tested catalase negative.

Results Interpretation

Test tube method

Positive Test (Bile soluble): clearing of the test suspension within 3 hours, control suspension remains turbid.

Negative Test (Bile insoluble): test and control suspensions remain turbid within 3 hours.

Direct Plate Method

Positive Test (Bile soluble): disintegration or flattening of the colony within 30 minutes, leaving an area of alpha-hemolysis where the colonies were located. Negative Test (Bile insoluble): colony remains intact within 30 minutes.

7.21.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

a) Test only on alpha hemolytic colony of a Gram positive cocci in pairs and is catalase negative, to differentiate *S. pneumoniae* from other alpha hemolytic streptococci.
b) The bile solubility test is not reliable with old cultures; organism may have lost its active enzyme resulting in a false negative result.
c) Some *S. pneumoniae*organisms will not lyse in the presence of bile, possibly due to the loss of virulence factor or capsule. If lysis is not present, the isolate may still be *S. pneumoniae*. Therefore, colonies resembling pneumococcus which are not bile

soluble should be further identified using another method, such as Optochin susceptibility and/or DNA probe.

d) When testing using plate method, care must be taken not to dislodge the colony being tested, thus leading to false positive results. If the direct plate is difficult to interpret, the test should be repeated using the tube method.

e) Storage of the reagent at a cool temperature can cause it to thicken. Warm the reagent bottle in a 35^{o}C incubator to liquefy the reagent before use

7.21.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer perfomance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.21.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.21.18 References

1. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.

2. Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.

3. WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.

4. Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.

5. Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland. 2003

6. International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. The Public Health Service National Tuberculosis Reference Laboratory and the National Laboratory Network. Paris; 1998.

7. Clinical Microbiology Procedure Handbook, ASM Press 2010. 1752 N. St., N.W. Washington DC 200336-2904, USA.

8. World Health Organization. Laboratory services in tuberculosis. Part II: Microscopy. Geneva; 1998.

7.22 PROCEDURE FOR INDOLE TEST

7.22.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Indole tes

7.22.2 Scope

This procedure provides instructions for performing Indole test in the Laboratory

7.22.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure

7.22.4 Principle

The Indole Test is used for the determination of the organism's ability to produce indole from deamination of tryptophan by tryptophanase. Indole if present combines with the aldehyde in the reagent to produce a pink to red-violet quinodal compound (benzaldehyde reagent) or blue to green color (cinnamaldehyde reagent).

7.22.5 Sample Requirements

Fresh growth (18-24hours) of gram negative rod on medium that does not contain dyes and contains tryptophan e.g. Blood Agar Plate (BAP), Chocolate Agar (CA).

7.22.6 Equipment

Biosafety cabinet or fume hood

7.22.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
• Kovacs reagent Indole reagents (1% or 5%) ***Caution****: Hydrogen Chloride (HCl) is toxic and burns. Make indole reagents in a fume hood. Add acid to water; do not add water to acid.*	a) PPE b) Glass slides c) Inoculating loop d) Applicator sticks e) Sterile loop f) stick or swab g) Filter paper

7.22.8 Storage and Stability

a) Store Media powder according to manufacturer’s specifications.
b) Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.22.9 Safety

a) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
b) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
c) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
d) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

e) Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
f) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
g) All spills should be wiped thoroughly following national Infection and prevention guidelines

7.22.10 Calibration

All auxiliary equipment should be calibrated annually

7.22.11 Quality Control

- Use of known microorganism for specified biochemical test (ATCC organism).
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.22.12 Procedural Steps

Rapid spot Indole

Filter paper method

- Moisten filter paper with reagent.
- Using sterile loop or sterile wooden stick rub portion of colony onto the moistened filter paper.
- Then observe for color change within 2 minutes.

Swab Method

- Sweep the colony onto a sterile swab.
- Add drop of indole reagent to the colony swab.
- Observe for color change within 2 minutes.

Tube Test

a) Inoculate liquid tube medium or stab agar medium (e.g., SIM) with colony.
b) Incubate for 18-24 hours. If broth is used for indole production, pipette a portion of the medium to a second tube for testing. Use second tube for testing.
c) Add 3 drops of Kovac's reagent down the side of tube and observe color change at meniscus.
d) If test is negative, repeat after additional 24 hours incubation, if desired.

7.22.13 Biological Reference Intervals

- Not applicable

Critical value

- Not applicable

7.22.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- *Positive Test:* development of a brown-red to purple-red color (benzaldehyde reagents) or blue color (cinnamaldehyde reagent) within 2 minutes indicates the presence of indole
- *Negative Test*:colorless or slightly yellow (benzaldehyde reagents)
- No color change or pinkish tinge (cinnamaldehyde reagent)

7.22.15 15.0 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Glucose inhibit indole production; therefore, indole should not be done on media containing glucose

The indole is not specific for any particular bacteria species

The indole tests are subjective to its interpretation

Some media such as MCA containing dyes that interfere with indole reactions

7.22.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer performance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.22.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.22.18 References

a) Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.

b) Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.

c) WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.

d) Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.

e) Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO)
Geneva Switzerland. 2003

f) International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. The Public Health Service National Tuberculosis Reference Laboratory and the National Laboratory Network. Paris; 1998.

7.23 PROCEDURE FOR OXIDASE TEST

7.23.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Oxidase test

7.23.2 Scope

This procedure provides instructions for performing Oxidase test in the Laboratory

7.23.3 Responsibility

The section heads and technical staffs are responsible for implementing this procedure

7.23.4 Principle

Oxidase test is used to detect the production of the enzyme cytochrome oxidase by bacteria. In the presence of atmospheric oxygen, a bacterium's intracellular cytochrome oxidase enzymes oxidize the phenylenediamine reagent (an electron acceptor) to form a deep purple compound, indophenol. The test is useful in the initial characterization of gram negative bacteria. In addition, oxidase testing can aid in rapid identifications, avoiding need for costlier kit identifications.

7.23.5 Sample Requirements

Isolated colonies from 18-24-hour old culture grown on a solid agar medium (Blood Agar Plate, Mueller-Hinton agar, Brain Heart Infusion, or Chocolate)

7.23.6 Equipment

Biosafety cabinet or fume hood

7.23.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Filter paper sterile wooden sticks or inoculating loops/wires Cryovials Kovac's oxidase reagent (1% tetramethyl-pphenylenediamine dihydrochloride)	Personal protective gears Sterile Plastic disposable/ wire loop Marker pen Small plastic sheet or gloves Pasture pipette or Micropipette Sterile wooden applicator stick

7.23.8 Storage and Stability

- Store Media powder according to manufacturer's specifications.
- Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.23.9 Safety

a) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

b) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
c) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
d) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
e) Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
f) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
g) All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.23.10 Calibration

• Not applicable

7.23.11 Quality Control

• Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.
• Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
• Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

Quality control Organism	**ATCC**	**Expected Results**
Enterococcus faecalis	29212	Positive
Streptococcus pyogenes	19615	Positive
Streptococcus agalactiae	10386	Negative

7.23.12 Procedural Steps

Filter paper method

• Moisten filter paper with reagent.
• Using sterile loop or wooden stick rub portion of colony onto the moistened filter paper.
• Observe for color change within 10-60 seconds.

Swab Method

• Sweep the colony onto a sterile swab.
• Add drop of oxidase reagent to the colony swab.
• Observe for color change within 10-60 seconds.

7.23.13 Biological Reference Intervals

• Not Applicable

Critical value

• Not applicable

7.23.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- Report as oxidase test positive or oxidase test negative.
- *Positive Oxidase* test: Development of a deep blue to purple color in 10-30 seconds is a positive reaction.
- *Weak positive test***:** Development of the color in 30-60 seconds is a weak reaction, characteristic of many Pasteurellaspp and do not read after 60 seconds.
- *Negative Oxidase test* is no color change in 60 seconds.
- Do not interpret result after 60 seconds

7.23.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

The oxidase should not be done on media containing glucose or dyes

The oxidase is not specific for any particular bacteria species

The temperature at which the test is perfumed should not be too hot or too cold the reaction may not occur

7.23.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer performance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.23.17 Supporting Documents

Laboratory quality policy manual

Laboratory safety policy manual

Laboratory sample collection manual

7.23.18 References

i. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.
ii. Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.
iii. WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.
iv. Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
v. Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland.

vi. 2003 vi. International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. The Public Health Service National Tuberculosis Reference Laboratory and the National Laboratory Network. Paris; 1998.
vii. Clinical Microbiology Procedure Handbook, ASM Press 2010. 1752 N. St., N.W. Washington DC 200336-2904, USA.
viii. World Health Organization. Laboratory services in tuberculosis. Part II:
ix. Microscopy. Geneva; 1998.

7.24 PROCEDURE FOR UREASE TEST

7.24.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Urease test.

7.24.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used for performing Urease test in the Laboratory

7.24.3 Responsibility

Trained and competent medical scientist/technologist is responsible in implementing this procedure

7.24.4 Principle

The urease test is used to determine the ability of an organism to produce urease enzyme which split urea to produce ammonia and CO2 gas. Two units of ammonia are formed with resulting alkalinity in the presence of an enzyme, and the increased pH is detected by pH indicator.

Christensen's urea medium contains the pH indicator phenol red that under acid condition (pH 6.8) is yellow. In alkaline condition (pH 8.4) the indicator turns the medium rose pink.

7.24.5 Sample Requirements

Fresh growth of single isolated colonies 18-24 hours of incubation from primary culture media such as blood agar, chocolate agar or nutrient agar or MCA

7.24.6 Equipment

Incubator and Biological Safety Cabinet

7.24.7 Materials Christensen's Urea Medium, Sterile plastic Pasteur pipettes and Straight inoculating needle/wire loop

7.24.8 Storage and Stability

- Store Media powder according to manufacturer's specifications.
- Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.24.9 Safety

- Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines
- Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.
- Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
- All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
- All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
- Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
- Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
- Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
- The test device should be stored at 2 -30ºC. And the test should be performed at room temperature.
- Do not reuse the test device.
- All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 0.5% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.24.10 Calibration

Not applicable

7.24.11 Quality Control

- Known positive and negative control organisms each time this procedure is performed.
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.24.12 Procedure Steps

- Inoculate slope over the entire surface and stab with straight inoculating needle.
- Incubate inoculated slope at 35^0C ± 2^oC with a loosen cap.
- Examine slopes after overnight incubation.

7.24.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not applicable **Critical Value**

Not applicable

7.24.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Observe the development of pink colour.

Urease positive: growth will be visible on the slant surface and the medium will be an intense pink.

Urease negative: trace or no growth will be visible. No colour change will occur;

7.24.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- Urease test can be affected by pH of certain media
- Can be affected by presence of certain antibiotic such tetracycline
- The urease test is not specific for any particular bacteria species
- The temperature at which the test is perfomed should not be too hot or too cold the reaction may not occur

7.24.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer performance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.24.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.24.18 References

i. Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th Edition, 2003, p 355
ii. Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed., 2003, pp 411-412
iii. Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed., 2003, pp 409-410
iv. Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed., 2003, p 438.
v. Difco and BBL Manual for Microbiological Culture Media. Maryland, U.S.A., Becton, Dickinson and Company. 2003.
vi. Clinical Microbiology Procedure Handbook, Volume 1, 3rd Edition, 2000
vii. L.M. de Laza et al., Color Atlas of Medical Bacteriology, ASM Press, 2004
viii. Cheesbrough, M. District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries, 2nd Edition, Tropical Health Technology, 2006, p163.
ix. UK Standard for Microbiology Investigations, Identification of Pasteurella species and Morphologically Similar Organisms, NHS, Public Health England, Bacteriology-Identification/ID 12/, Issue No: 3, Issue date: 4.02.15.
x. Procedure for the use of API Strips. Whittington Hospital SOP MB/040.04 (2005).

xi. https://biologypractical.com/tsi-triple-sugar-iron-test-objectiveprincipleprocedure-and-result/

7.25 PROCEDURE FOR TRIPLE SUGAR IRON/KIA

7.25.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing Triple Sugar Iron test in the Laboratory

7.25.2 Scope

The aim of this procedure is to provide a guide on performing Triple Sugar Iron test

7.25.3 Responsibility

Trained and competent medical scientist/technologist is responsible in implementing Triple Sugar Iron test

7.25.4 Principle

Triple sugar iron test is used to determine whether gram negative bacilli utilize glucose and lactose or sucrose fermentative, and produce hydrogen sulphide (H_2S). It contains 10 parts of lactose: 10 parts of sucrose: 1 part of glucose and peptone. Phenol red and ferrous sulphate serves as an indicator for acidification of medium and (H_2S) production, respectively.

Glucose is utilized first by fermentative organism and the entire medium becomes acidic (yellow) in 8 to 12 hours. Butt remains acidic even after 18-24 hours of incubation because of the presence of organic conditions. The slant everts to alkaline state that is indicated by red colour as the fermentation products gets oxidised to carbon dioxide and water. Then, peptone in aerobic condition undergoes oxidation releasing alkaline amines on the slant (phenol red in alkaline pH turns red while in acidic pH turns yellow).

7.25.5 Sample Requirements

Fresh growth of single isolated colonies 18-24 hours of incubation from primary culture media such as blood agar, chocolate agar, nutrient agar or MCA.

7.25.6 Equipment

Incubator and Biological Safety Cabinet

7.25.7 Materials

TSI medium and straight inoculating needle or disposable inoculating loop

7.25.8 Safety

a) Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
b) All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
c) All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
d) Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.
e) Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.

7.25.9 Storage and Stability

- Store Media powder according to manufacturer's specifications.
- Refrigerate prepared culture media on 2-8ºC

7.25.10 Calibration

• Not applicable

7.25.11 Quality Control

- Use of known microorganism for specified biochemical test (ATCC organism).
- Check new batches of stain and reagents for correct reactions using colonies with known positive and negative organisms.
- Discard the slides and make a new batch if satisfactory results are not obtained.

7.25.12 Procedure Steps

- Using sterile inoculating needle, stab the TSI slant about 2/3 of the way into the butt, withdraw the needle and streak the slant.
- Incubate aerobically at 35°C to 37°C with loosen cap.
- Examine after 18-24 hours of incubation

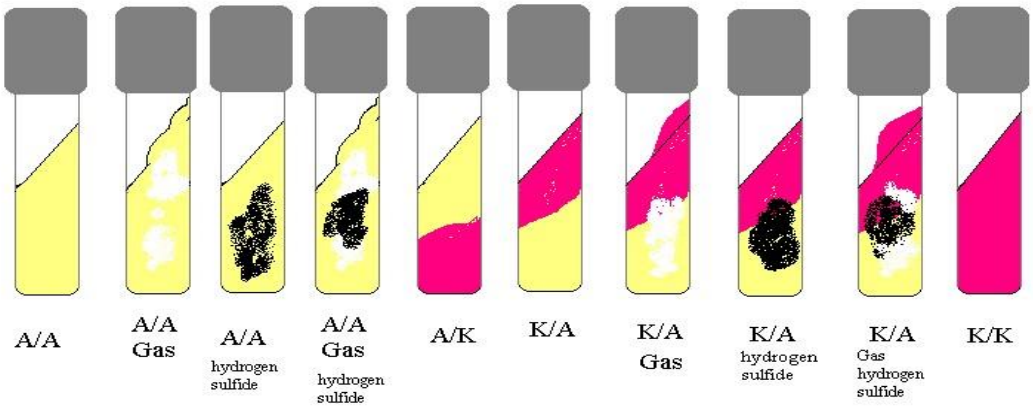
Results Interpretation:

Ability of bacteria to ferment sugar

Fermentation of only glucose	Fermentation of glucose & lactose	Neither glucose nor lactose fermented

- Single gas bubble or bubbles in the medium
- Splitting of the medium
- Complete displacement of the medium from the bottom of the tube leaving a clear area
- Slight indentation of the medium from the side of the tube **H_2S production**
- The presence of black precipitate is evident by a black colour spread throughout the entire butt masking the acidity; may even be slight evidence on the slant
- A black ring near the top of the butt area
- A black precipitate scattered throughout the butt but not entirely.

TSI Reactions



7.25.13 Biological Reference Intervals

Not applicable

Critical Value

Not applicable

7.25.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

i. See annex 6.1 and 6.2: Charts for Biochemical Identification of common Enterobacteriaceae and other enteric organisms. An acid/acid (yellow slant/yellow butt) reaction: It indicates the fermentation of dextrose, lactose and/or sucrose.
ii. An alkaline/alkaline (red slant, red butt) reaction: Absence of carbohydrate fermentation results.
iii. Blackening of the medium: Occurs in the presence of H_2
iv. Gas production: Bubbles or cracks in the agar indicate the production of gas
v. (formation of $CO_2$and H_2)
vi. An alkaline/acid (red slant/yellow butt) reaction: It is indicative of dextrose fermentation

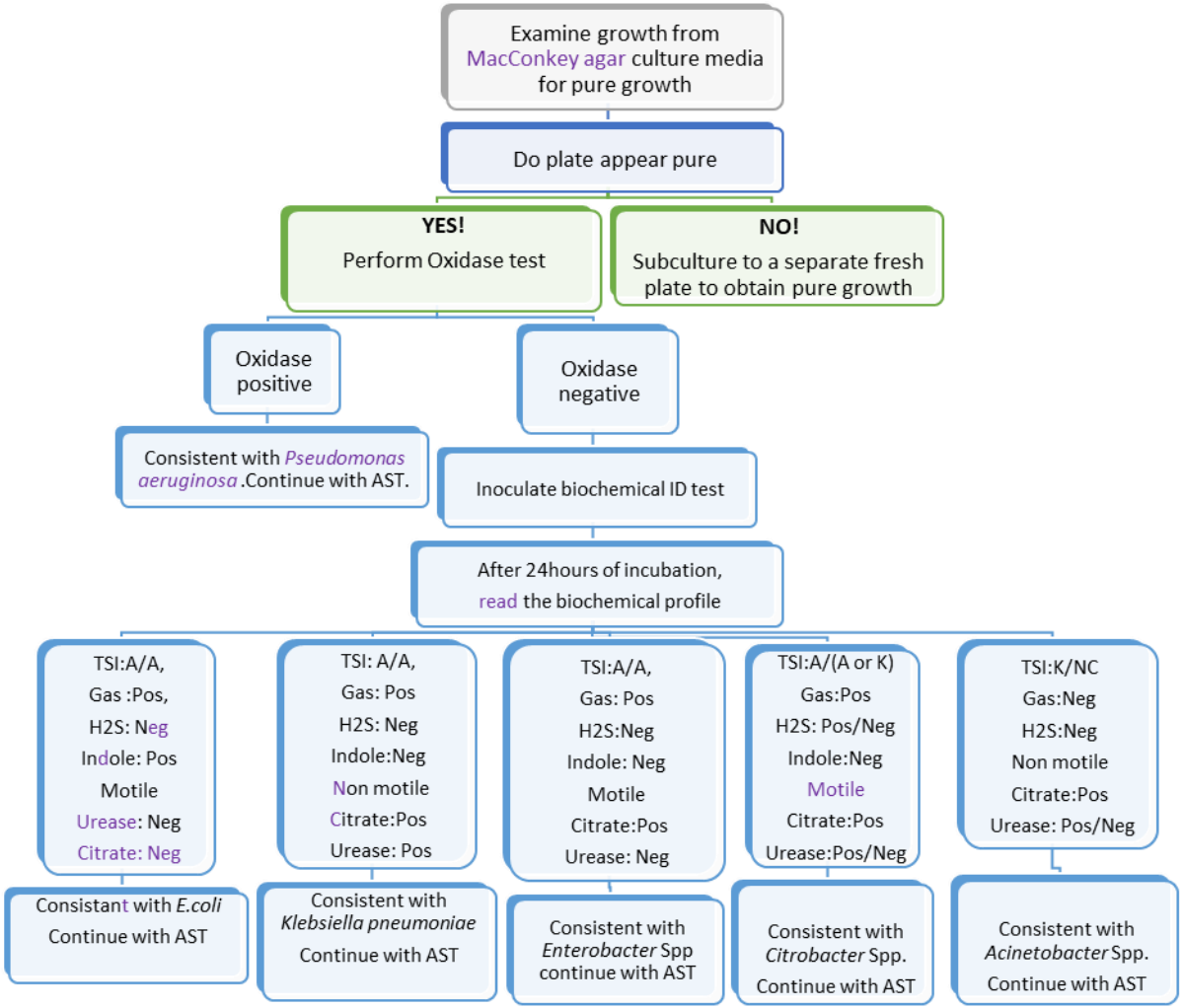


Figure 2: Identification of gram negative Enterobacteriaceae flow chart

7.25.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

a) It is recommended that biochemical, immunological, molecular, or mass spectrometry testing be performed on colonies from pure culture for complete identification.

b) It is important to stab the butt of the medium. Failure to stab the butt invalidates this test. The integrity of the agar must be maintained when stabbing. Caps must be loosened during this test or erroneous results will occur.

c) TSI Agar must be read within the 18-24 hour stated incubation period. A falsepositive reaction may be observed if read too early. A false-negative reaction may be observed if read later than 24 hours.

d) An organism that produces hydrogen sulfide may mask acid production in the butt of the medium. However, hydrogen sulfide production requires an acid environment, thus the butt portion should be considered acid.

e) TSI is not as sensitive in detecting hydrogen sulfide in comparison to other iron containing mediums, such as Sulfide Indole Motility (SIM) Medium.

f) Certain species or strains may give delayed reactions or completely fail to ferment the carbohydrate in the stated manner.

7.25.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer manufacturer performance characteristics compares to laboratory method verification report

7.25.17 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.25.18 References

i Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th Edition, 2003, p 355

ii Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed., 2003, pp 411-412

iii Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed., 2003, pp 409- 410

iv Murray PA, et al. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, 8th ed., 2003, p 438.

v Difco and BBL Manual for Microbiological Culture Media. Maryland, U.S.A., Becton, Dickinson and Company. 2003.

vi Clinical Microbiology Procedure Handbook, Volume 1, 3rd Edition, 2000

vii L.M. de Laza et al., Color Atlas of Medical Bacteriology, ASM Press, 2004

viii Cheesbrough, M. District Laboratory Practice in Tropical Countries, 2nd Edition, Tropical Health Technology, 2006, p163.

ix Procedure for the use of API Strips. Whittington Hospital SOP MB/040.04 (2005).

x https://biologypractical.com/tsi-triple-sugar-iron-test-objectiveprincipleprocedure-and-result/

7.26 PROCEDURE FOR ANTIBIOTIC SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING BY KIRBY BAUER DISK DIFFUSION METHOD

7.26.1 Purpose

This provides guidance on how to perform in-vitro susceptibility testing of bacteria pathogens to antimicrobial agents by disc diffusion (Kirby Bauer method) according to Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) guideline.

7.26.2 Scope

This procedure applies to all antibiotic susceptibility testing in the bacteriology section using CLSI guideline

7.26.3 Responsibility

The Health Laboratory Scientists/ Technologists in Microbiology section are responsible for the implementation of this procedure.

Section heads are responsible in reviewing AST results produced in the laboratory before submitting to clinicians for patient management.

7.26.4 Principle

This procedure describes the standard technique used to determine the in-vitro susceptibility of aerobic non-fastidious organisms. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing (AST) should only be performed with pathogens for which well-standardized methods are available and pathogens whose resistance is known or suspected to be a clinical problem; AST should not be performed on normal flora or colonizing organisms.

Kirby Bauer (KB) is a standardized procedure for performing AST by disk diffusion. A standardized inoculum of the bacteria is swabbed onto the surface of a Mueller Hinton agar (MHA) plate. Filter paper disks impregnated with antimicrobial agents are placed on the agar. After overnight incubation, the diameter of the zone of inhibition around each disk is measured. By referring to the standardized tables compiled by CLSI, a qualitative report of susceptible, intermediate or resistant can be obtained.

7.26.5 Sample Requirements

Pure culture of the organisms from an 18-24-hour agar plate, preferably a nonselective medium like sheep blood agar.

7.26.6 Equipment

Incubator, Refrigerator, Candle jars

7.26.7 Materials

Reagent	Consumables
Mueller- Hinton agar *Haemophilus* Test Medium (HTM)/Chocolate agar *GC media*	Sterile glass tubes Sterile pasteur pipettes Sterile swabs Zone criteria chart
Mueller Hinton/ Mueller Hinton with 5%sheep blood agar Antibiotic discs (stored frozen with descants) 0.5 McFarland turbidity standard Sterile normal saline	Vernier caliper or transparent ruler Forceps Control organisms (ATCC control strains

7.26.8 Storage and Stability

Store the McFarland standard at room temperature (25°C) when not in use. McFarland standard density solution will precipitate and clump over time, and it needs vigorous vortexing before each use. Prepare a fresh standard solution every 6 months.

7.26.9 Safety

Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines

Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.

All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

7.26.10 Calibration

Not Applicable

7.26.11 Quality Control

Bacteria isolate's sensitivity test results are only reported when appropriate ATCC control strains results fall within the interpretive criteria as defined in CLSI guideline. Include appropriate control organism with each test to monitor overall performance of the test system.

Test control strains should be set the same way using the same conditions and methods that are used to test clinical isolates and records it on appropriate quality control log

AST quality control can be performed in weekly basis or when testing a patient sample

7.26.12 Procedural Steps

Bring agar plates and antibiotic disks to room temperature before use. Prepare bacterial suspension.

a. The direct colony suspension method is the most convenient method for inoculum preparation. This method can be used for most organisms. Select 3 – 5 well-isolated colonies of the same morphologic type from an agar plate culture. Touch the top of each colony with a loop and transfer the growth into a tube containing 4 – 5ml of TSB or NSS. Mix well and adjust turbidity with broth or NSS to match 0.5 McFarland standard.

b. The Growth method can be used alternatively and is sometimes preferable when colony growth is difficult to suspend directly and a smooth suspension cannot be made. It can be used for nonfastidious organisms (except Staphylococci) when fresh 24 hour colonies are not available. Select 3 – 5 well-isolated colonies of the same morphologic type from an agar plate culture. Touch the top of each colony with a loop and transfer the growth into a tube containing 4 – 5 ml of TSB. Incubate the broth culture at 35 ± 2^{o}C until it achieves or exceeds the turbidity of the 0.5 McFarland standard (usually two to six hours). Mix well and adjust turbidity with TSB to match 0.5 McFarland standard.

Inoculate plate with bacterial suspension

a. Within 15 minutes of adjusting turbidity, dip a sterile cotton tipped applicator swab into the inoculum and rotate against the wall of the tube to remove excess inoculum.

b. Swab entire surface of the agar plate three times, rotating plate approximately 60^{o} between streaking to ensure even distribution. As a final step, swab the rim of the agar.

c. Allow inoculated plate to stand 3 -15 minutes (no longer than 15 minutes) before applying disks.

d. Apply antibiotic disks to agar surface using sterile forceps or dispenser. Applygentle pressure to ensure complete contact of disk with agar.

e. Do not relocate a disk once it has made contact with agar surface. Instead, place a new disk in another location on the agar.

f. Place no more than 12 disks on 150 mm plate and no more than 5 disks on 100 mm plate.

g. The working supply of antibiotic disks should be stored in a refrigerator (2 – 8 ^{o}C) in a tightly-capped container with dessicant. Upon removal of the disks from the refrigerator, the package containing the cartridges should be left unopened at room temperature for approximately one hour to allow the temperature to equilibrate; this reduces the amount of condensation on the disks. If a disk dispenser is used, it should have a tight-fitting cover, be stored in the refrigerator, and be allowed to warm to room temperature before use.

h. Invert plate and incubate within 15 minutes of disk application. Incubate for 16 – 18 hours at 35 ± 2^{o}C in an ambient air incubator

Inoculum preparation and plating

a. Select the colonies of interest from pure bacterial culture after 16-18hrs of incubation
b. Emulsify colonies in 4-5ml sterile saline to make a bacterial suspension.
c. Adjust the suspension to 0.5 McFarland standards.
d. Dip a sterile swab into the suspension and rotate several times.
e. Press the swab firmly against the inside walls of the tube/bottle just above the fluid level and rotate the swab to remove the excess liquid.
f. Streak the entire surface of the medium three times, rotating the plate approximately through 60°C after each application to ensure a distribution of inoculums.
g. Bring the disc at room temperature and apply antimicrobial discs on to the plate as soon as possible (not longer than 15 minutes after inoculation).
h. Discs should be evenly spaced 20mm away from each other.
i. Each plate should carry a maximum of 6 disks for 100×15mm plate
j. Incubate the plate at 35°C±2˚C for 16 – 18 hours in ambient air incubator and in CO2 incubator for fastidious bacteria
k. Measure the zone diameter of complete inhibition in mm using a transparent ruler or vernier caliper
l. Interpret the zone measurement according to CLSI break points.

7.26.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

7.26.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

a. Read plates only if lawn of growth is confluent. If individual colonies are apparent the inoculum was too light and the test must be repeated
b. Hold inverted plate a few inches above a black nonreflecting surface, illuminate plate with reflected light
c. Use ruler held on the back of the plate to measure the diameter of zone of inhibition (area showing no obvious growth to the naked eyes)
d. Measure the zone size to the nearest millimeter (mm)
e. Based on the **CLSI guideline** AST are Interpreted as **Resistant, Intermediate** or **Susceptible** according to the zone sizes reading in millimeter.

The following tables should be referred when selecting and interpreting Antimicrobial sensitivity testing;

a. Selection of antimicrobial agents (
b. Interpretation of Quality control results to monitor accuracy of disc diffusion method
c. Interpretive categories and zone diameter breakpoints of different bacterial group nearest whole mm

AST Interpretation and Reporting of Results to clinician

a. Facility will record antibiotics zone sizes in millimeter (mm) according to the updated CLSI guideline to the working sheet and report to clinician/requester as Resistant, Intermediate or Susceptible (R, I, S).

b. Reporting of antibiotics will be based on selectivity in categories established by updated CLSI guideline i.e., test all group categories A, B, C and U and selectively report group A, if all antibiotics in Group A are resistant, report the rest of the groups

Table: Interpretive categories and zone diameter breakpoints of different bacterial group nearest whole mm by Organism and site/sample (CLSI guidelines 2019)

Staphylococcus spp	**R (mm)**	**I (mm)**	**S (mm)**
Group A			
Erythromycin 15 µg	< 13	14-22	> 23
Clindamycin2 µg	≤14	15-20	≥21
Cefoxitin 30 ug (surrogate test for oxacillin)*:* *Use CEFOXITIN disk to test for OXACILLIN resistance.* *For S. aureus and S. lugdunensis:* *Incubate plates at 33-35^{o}C ambient air for 16-18 hours.* *≤ 21mm = mec A positive → report as OXACILLIN RESISTANT (do not report Cefoxitin)* *≥ 22mm = mec A negative → report as OXACILLIN SENSITIVE (do not report Cefoxitin)* *For epidermidis:* *Incubate at 33-35^{o}C ambient air for 24 hours; may be reported after 18 hours if resistant.* *≤ 24mm = mec A positive → report as OXACILLIN RESISTANT (do not report Cefoxitin)* *≥ 25mm = mec A negative → report as OXACILLIN SENSITIVE (do not report Cefoxitin)*			
Trimethoprim Sulfa 1.25/23.75 µg	≤10	11-15	≥16
Group B			
Tetracycline 30 ug	≤14	15-18	≥19
*Vancomycin 30 ug ***Vancomycin susceptibility is done using an MIC method:* *strains with MIC's: ≤ 2µg/ml = Sensitive, 482µg/ml = Intermediate, and ≥16 2µg/ml = Resistant*			
GROUP C			
Chloramphenicol 30 ug	≤12	13-17	≥18
Ciprofloxacin 5ug	≤15	16-20	≥21
Gentamicin 10 ug	≤12	13-14	≥15
Group U			

Nitrofurantoin 300 ug [for urinary isolates only]	≤14	15-16	≥17
Enterococcus spp	**R(mm)**	**I(mm)**	**S(mm)**
GROUP A:			
Penicillin10 units	≤14	–	≥15
Ampicillin 10 ug	≤16	–	≥17
Group B:			
Vancomycin 30 ug (incubate for 24 hours!)	≤14	15-16	≥17
Group C			
Gentamicin 120 µg (do not use CN 10ug) * ***Testing with Gentamicin 120 µg disk:*** *6mm = resistant →report GM as **not** synergistic with Ampicillin, Penicillin, or Vancomycin* *7-9mm = inconclusive → confirm with MIC* *≥ 10mm = susceptible → report GM is synergistic with Ampicillin or Vancomycin that is also susceptible. Combination therapy with Ampicillin, Penicillin, or Vancomycin (for susceptible strains) plus an aminoglycoside (Gentamicin or Streptomycin) is usually indicated for serious enterococcal infections such as bacteraemia and endocarditis, unless high level resistance for both Gentamicin and Streptomycin is documented; such combinations are predicted to result in synergistic killing of Enterococcus.*	≤6	7-9	≥10
Chloramphenicol 30ug (not routinely reported for isolates from urinary tract)	≤12	13-17	≥18
Group U			
Ciprofloxacin 5 ug	≤15	16-20	≥21
Levofloxacin	≤12	13-16	≥17
Tetracycline 30ug	≤14	15-18	≥19
Nitrofurantoin 300 ug (for urine isolates only)	≤14	15-16	≥17
Streptococcus pneumoniae	**R**	**I**	**S**
Group A			
Penicillin (as defined by Oxacillin 1ug) Isolates with oxacillin zone ≥20 are susceptible to Penicillin			≥20
Vancomycin30µg	–	–	≥17

Erythromycin 15ug	≤15	1	≥21
Trimethoprim Sulfa 1.25/23.75 µg	≤15	16-20	≥19
Group B			
Tetracycline 30 ug	≤24	25-27	≥28
Clindamycin 2µg	≤15	16-18	≥19

Group C			
Chloramphenicol 30 ug	≤20	–	≥21
***Streptococcus* spp ß-haemolytic** Perform AST on MHA + Blood ("*red Mueller Hinton*")	**R**	**I**	**S**
GROUP A			
Penicillin 10 units	–	–	≥24
Erythromycin 15 ug	≤15	16-20	≥21
Clindamycin 2 ug	≤15	16-18	≥19
Group B			
Cefotaxime 30ug or	–	–	≥24
Ceftriaxone 30µg or	–	–	≥24
Vancomycin 30 ug	–	–	≥17
Group C			
Chloramphenicol 30ug	≤17	18-20	≥21
Levofloxacin 5 µg	≤13	14-16	≥17
GROUP O			
Tetracycline 30 µg	≤18	19-22	≥23
*Note: * Penicillin and ampicillin are drugs of choice for treatment of β-haemolytic Streptococcal infections;* ***susceptibility testing need not be performed routinely*** *because non-susceptible isolates are extremely rare in any βhaemolytic streptococcus*			
Enterobacteriaceae (Salmonella spp has unique breakpoints described below)	**R**	**I**	**S**
GROUP A			
Ampicillin 10 ug	≤13	14-16	≥17
Cefazolin 30 ug	≤19	20-22	≥23
Gentamicin 10g	≤12	13-14	≥15
GROUP B			
Piperacillin 100ug	≤17	18-20	≥21
Amoxacillin/Clavulanic Acid 20/10 ug	≤13	14-17	≥18
Piperacillin/Tazobactam 100/10 ug	≤17	18-20	≥21
Cefepime 30 ug	≤18		≥25
Cefotaxime 30 ug or	≤22	23-25	≥26
Ceftriaxone 30 ug	≤19	20-22	≥23

Cefuroxime 30 ug	≤14	20-22	≥23
Amikacin 30 ug	≤14	15-16	≥17
Ciprofloxacin 5 ug	≤21	22-25	≥26
Trimethoprim Sulfa 1.25/23.75 ug	≤10	11-15	≥16
Imipenem	≤19	20-22	≥23
GROUP C			
Ceftazidime 30 ug	≤17	18-20	≥21
Tetracycline 30 ug	≤11	12-14	≥15

Chloramphenicol 30 ug	≤12	13-17	≥18
GROUP U			
Nitrofurantoin 300 ug (for urinary tract isolates only)	≤14	15-16	≥17
Acinetobacter spp.	**R**	**I**	**S**
GROUP A			
Ceftazidime 30µg	≤14	15-17	≥18
Ciprofloxacin 5µg	≤15	16-20	≥21
Levofloxacin 5 µg	≤13	14-16	≥17
Imipenem 10µg	≤18	19-21	≥22
Meropenem 10µg	≤14	15-17	≥18
Gentamicin 10µg	≤12	13-14	≥15
Tobramycin 10µg	≤12	13-14	≥15
GROUP B			
Piperacillin-Tazobactam 100/10µg	≤17	18-20	≥21
Cefepime 30 µg	≤14	15-17	≥18
Cefotaxime 30µg	≤14	15-22	≥23
Ceftriaxone 30µg	≤13	14-20	≥21
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole 1.25/23.75µg	≤10	11-15	≥16
Amikacin 30µg	≤14	15-16	≥17
GROUP U			
Tetracycline 30µg	≤11	12-14	≥15
Pseudomonas spp	**R**	**I**	**S**
GROUP A			
Piperacillin 100 ug	≤14	15-20	≥21
Ceftazidime 30ug	≤14	15-17	≥18
Gentamicin 10 ug	≤12	13-14	≥15
GROUP B			
Piperacillin-Tazobactam 100/10 ug	≤14	15-20	≥21

Cefepime 30 ug	≤14	15-17	≥18
Imipenem 10 ug	≤15	16-18	≥19
Amikacin 30 ug	≤14	15-16	≥17
Ciprofloxacin 5 ug	≤18	19-24	≥25
GROUP U			
Norfloxacin 10 ug	≤12	13-16	≥17
Enteric pathogen: Salmonella spp and Shigella spp	**R**	**I**	**S**

For Stool isolates form infants or immune-compromised hosts only: Report AMP, CIP, and TRIMETH-SULFA. *For Salmonella in blood and other extra-intestinal sites:* *Report AMP, CIP, and TRIMETH-SULFA.* *In addition, test and report CEFOTAXIME and CHLORAMPHENICOL.* *Test for resistance to NALIDIXIC ACID.* *For isolates that test susceptible to CIP and resistant to nalidixic acid, the physician should be informed that the isolate may not be eradicated by fluoroquinolone treatment*			
Ampicillin 10 ug	≤13	14-16	≥17
Azithromycin 15ug	≤12	-	≥13
Ciprofloxacin 5 ug	≤20	21-30	≥-31
Trimethoprim/Sulfamethoxazole 1.25/23.75µg	≤10	11-15	≥16
Chloramphenicol 30 µg (if salmonella isolated from other samples but stool)	≤12	13-17	≥18
Haemophilus influenza* and *Haemophilus parainfluenza	**R**	**I**	**S**
GROUP A			
Ampicillin 10ug	≤18	19-21	≥22
GROUP B			
Ceftriaxone 30 ug	–	–	≥26
Ciprofloxacin 5 µg **or**	–	–	≥21
Meropenem 10 µg	–	–	≥20
GROUP C			
Azithromycin 15 µg	–	–	≥12
Amoxicillin/clavulanate 20/10 µg	≤19	–	≥20
Chloramphenicol 30 µg	≤25	26-28	≥29
Imipenem 10 µg	–	–	≥16
Tetracycline 30 µg	≤25	26-28	≥29
Trimethoprim –sulfamethoxazole 1.25/23.75 µg	≤10	11-15	≥16

Neisseria meningitides	**R**	**I**	**S**
Test and report all. Caution! Perform all AST *of N. meningitidis* in a biosafety cabinet (BSC). Manipulating suspensions of *N. meningitidis* outside a BSC is associated with a high risk for contracting meningococcal disease.			
GROUP C			
Ceftriaxone 30 µg	–	–	≥34
Ciprofloxacin 5 µg	≤32	33-34	≥35
Azithromycin 15 µg	–	–	≥20
Cefotaxime 30 ug	–	–	≥34
Meropenem 10 µg	–	–	≥30
Chloramphenicol 30 ug	≤19	20-25	≥26
Trimethoprim/ Sulfamethoxazole 1.25/23.75µg	≤25	26-29	≥30
Neisseria gonorrhoea	**R**	**I**	**S**
GROUP A			
Ciprofloxacin 5 µg	**≤27**	**28-40**	**≥41**
Tetracycline 30 µg	**≤30**	**31-37**	**≥38**
Ceftriaxone 30 µg	**–**	**–**	**≥35**
GROUP O			
Penicillin 10units	**≤26**	**27-46**	**≥47**
Cefepime 30 µg	**–**	**–**	**≥31**
Cefotaxime 30 µg	**–**	**–**	**≥31**

7.26.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Errors

Factors affecting agar diffusion method

Purity of colonies

Inoculum size

Excess fluid to culture media

Streaking the plate

Disc potency

Number of discs applied

Incubation time/temperature Depth and PH of the media

7.26.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to method verification report

7.26.17 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual

7.26.18 References

Performance Standards for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing; **M100 30th Edition**

Performance Standards for Anti-Microbial Disc Susceptibility Testing. Approved Standards (2003) 8th ed. NCCLS 23 no 1: 1-25

National Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance Framework, Tanzania Ministry of Health, August 2018

7.27 PROCEDURE FOR MANAGEMENT OF BACTERIAL ISOLATES

7.27.1 Purpose

The procedure describes how to manage clinical and standard bacterial isolates (ATCC strains)

7.27.2 Scope

This procedure applies for storage of bacterial stock isolates from reference organisms, EQA strains and isolates from clinical samples

7.27.3 Responsibility

Trained and competent laboratory Technologist/ Scientist working in microbiology section is responsible for the implementing this procedure.

7.27.4 Principle

To ensure the genetic stability and prevent contamination of culture strains, the number of process must be done from original isolates and standard strains to preserve their viability and identity. Isolates are stored in cryovials containing a cryopreservative STGG, which is subsequently frozen at -80˚C for long term storage (>1year) and at -20˚C for short term storage (six month) for fastidious organisms. Isolates from non-fastidious organisms can as well stored using 5% TSB for long and short term. If subculture is required a small amount of frozen bacterial suspension may be scraped from the surface STGG using a loop and inoculated on agar plate.

7.27.5 Materials

Blood Agar, Skim milk powder, Cryogenic vial (2ml) with screw cap, BHI/TSB,

Glycerol, Non-selective media, ATCC strains/clinical isolates, Permanent label, Sterile disposable inoculating loop, sterile transfer pipettes, Autoclave control indicator, Dry ice and Disposable petri dishes

7.27.6 Equipment

Autoclave, Weighing balance, -80˚C & -20˚C freezer, Vortex mixer, Water bath, Incubator and Biological safety cabinet (BSC).

7.27.7 Safety

Decontaminate working surfaces as recommended by IPC Guidelines

Temperatures for the room and refrigerator are recorded as recommended by IPC Guidelines.

Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual

All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.

All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.

Refer to National infection prevention and control Guidelines for health waste management and safety practice.

Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.

7.27.8 Storage and Stability

Isolates are stored in cryovials containing a cryo-preservative STGG, which is subsequently frozen at -80˚C for long term storage (>1year) and at -20˚C for short term storage (six month) for fastidious organisms. Isolates from non-fastidious organisms can as well stored using 5% TSB for long and short term. If subculture is required a small amount of frozen bacterial suspension may be scraped from the surface STGG using a loop and inoculated on agar plate.

7.27.9 Calibration

All auxillary equipment that gives metrological measurements should be calibrated.

7.27.10 Quality Control

Sterility check

Streak 10 µl onto a BAP or a CAP and incubate for 48 hours at 35-37°C with ~5% CO_2 (or in a candle-jar) to verify the sterility of the solution. **Acceptable result;** no growth should be observed.

7.27.11 Procedure Steps

Preparation of storage media

Preparation of 10% skimmed milk Glycerol

For preparation of 100mls of skimmed milk

i. Weigh, 10gm of powdered skimmed milk in 90mls of distilled water
ii. Autoclave the mixture at 121^0 C for 5minutes
iii. Add 10mls of glycerol into the autoclaved mixture
iv. Aliquot about 1ml of the sterile skimmed milk solution into plastic tubes or screw cap 2ml Cryovials.

Preparation of Skim milk Tryptone glucose glycerol (STGG) medium

i. STGG medium is used for transport and short-term storage of nasopharyngeal swabs**.**
ii. Add the following ingredients to 100 ml distilled water: 2 g skim milk powder 3 g TSB 0.5 g glucose 10 ml glycerol
iii. Mix to completely dissolve all ingredients. iv. Dispense 1.0 ml amounts into 1.5 ml screw-cap vials.
v. Loosen the screw caps and autoclave at 121°C for 10 minutes.
vi. Tighten the caps after autoclaving and store at -20°C until use.

Preparation of 15% TSB

i. Mix 85 ml of Tryptic soy broth with 15 ml of glycerol
ii. Mix well then pour mixture in a properly labeled reagent bottle.
iii. Dispense 2 ml of the medium in cryovials using sterile transfer pipette Use autoclave indicator tape to indicate attainment of the required temperature.
iv. Autoclave the medium at 121^oC for 15 minutes.
v. Before storage and use perform quality control.
vi. Observe for signs of contamination (turbidity) prior to use and storage. vii. Medium may be stored with cry vials tight at 2 to 8^oC for up to 6 months

Handling and storage Procedure Steps

Procedure Steps for stock culture of Quality control organisms (ATCC strains)

i. Obtain ATCC strains from commercial sources or EQA isolates and document receipt of the isolates
ii. Working under BSC, subculture the Quality control organisms to the nonselective media (sheep blood agar or chocolate agar), to obtain isolated colonies if the organism is fastidious e.g. *Haemophilus* or*Neisseria* spp*,* Incubate at 35^0 C for 18-48 hours in 5 -10% CO_2 atmosphere.
iii. Examine the cultured plates to determine if the Quality control strains are of pure culture and have the characteristics appropriate for the strains (e.g. *S. pyogenes* should be Beta hemolytic)
iv. Use sterile loop, harvest the entire growth from pure culture plate and dispense into a labelled cryotube containing STGG medium.

v. Recap vial and label with organism code, ATCC number and date.
vi. Store vials between – 76 to -85^{o}C. Place vials in the box labeled “Permanent Stocks”.

Proper rotation of the ATCC Quality control Strains.

i. Thaw vials of each of the Quality control strains on the first week of the month, and subculture to proper agar plates (BA).
ii. Transfer a portion of each appropriate strain to new cryovial tube of skim milk and another portion to culture plate and incubate overnight-If good growth is obtained
iii. Store agar plates for use during this current month.
iv. The first agar plate can be used for the first week’s Quality control.
v. On each of the remaining weeks of this month, subculture each strain to appropriate agar plates from the first plate after 72 hours and use these plates for that week’s Quality control.
vi. At the end of each month discard all plates and start with “freshly” frozen strains again from the cryovial tube of skim milk. vii. If using Skim milk as the suspending media for the frozen strains new Cryovials should be prepared at the end of one year.

Procedure Steps for clinical isolates

i. Following isolation of bacterial pathogen from clinical sample e.g. isolation of
E. coli from urine sample ii. Subculture the organism on non-selective media (e.g. sheep blood agar, Nutrient agar or chocolate agar). Ensure that the culture is pure; if mixed, pick off a well isolated colony and re-subculture.

iii. Label the cryotube with permanent marker pen to include name of isolates, unique laboratory identification number and date of isolation or with barcode label.
iv. Use sterile loop, harvest the entire growth from pure culture plate and dispense into a labelled cryotube containing STGG medium
v. Immediately store vials at – 76 to -85^{o}C freezer for long terms storage. Arrange vials in numerical order, using freezer vial number as reference.
vi. Record the details in the isolates logbook and laboratory database repository

Method for the recovery of the frozen isolate

i. Remove the appropriate cryotube from the freezer
ii. Working under BSC, use a sterile plastic loop, inoculate a small amount of frozen material into broth or onto an appropriate solid medium
iii. Return the tube to the -80˚C freezer immediately.

Packaging and Transportation of isolates

a. Triple Packaging

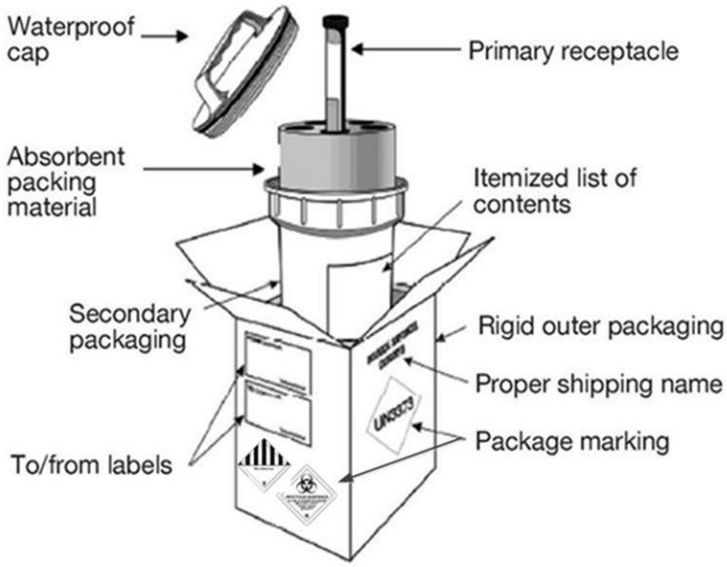
i. Triple Packaging System to Maintain Cold Chain

ii. The primary container contains the sample. Ensure the following:

a. Container cap should be tightly closed and sealed to prevent leakage.

b. Container should be labeled with the patient's name and identification number, source of sample, date and time of collection, and initials of the collector.

c. Label should be adhered to the container.



Transportation of isolates

IATA guidelines will be followed and include labelling the outer packaging of the shipment printed in capital letters or clear writing the following information:

I. **Shipper:** Enter the full name, address and contact number of the person packing the shipment.

II. **Consignee**: Enter the full name, address and contact number of recipients.

7.27.12 Supporting Documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

7.27.13 References

1. Eiseberge, Henry D 2004. Clinical microbiology procedures handbook, 2nd edition American Society for Microbiology.
2. Washington Cheesbrough,Monical 2001, Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries, part 2, Cambridge University Press.UK. Quality control organisms (should be ATCC strains) received from a reliable laboratory on a swab, slant/slope, Petri dish or lypholysed
3. Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 12th edition, 2019.
4. Tanzania AMR Surveillance SOP – Version: 1.0 February 2019

CHAPTER 8: MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

8.1 DIAGNOSIS OF MTB/RIF TESTING USING A TRUENAT MACHINE

8.1.1 Purpose

The purpose of SOP is to describe the stepwise procedure for the rapid detection of

Mycobacteria tuberculosis (MTB) and detection of rifampicin resistance using Truenat MTB/RIF test for use with the Truenat Dx system is a semi-quantitative realtime PCR in-vitro diagnostic test for: The detection of MTB DNA in sputum samples, detection of rifampicin resistance-associated mutations of the rpoB gene. The purpose of SOP is to describe the stepwise procedure for the rapid detection of Mycobacteria *tuberculosis* (MTB) and detection of rifampicin resistance using Truenat. MTB/RIF test for use with the TrueNat Dx system is a semi-quantitative real-time PCR *in-vitro* diagnostic test for; detection of MTB DNA in sputum samples and detection of rifampicin resistance-associated mutations of the *rpoB* gene.

8.1.2 Scope

This SOP describes the use of the Truenat™ MTB Plus assay, a chip-based RealTime Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) test, for the semi-quantitative, detection and diagnosis of Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex bacteria (MTBC) in human sputum samples

8.1.3 Responsibility

Qualified and competent health laboratory practitioners are responsible for implementing this test procedure. The section head is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

8.1.4 Principle

The TrueNat assays utilize chip-based real-time micro-polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for detection of TB and RIF-resistance from Deoxyribonucleic Acid (DNA) that is extracted from sputum sample within an hour.

Truenat™ MTB Plus works on the principle of Real-Time Polymerase Chain Reaction where the sputum sample is first liquefied and lysed thereafter the extracted DNA from the sample is then amplified by the Truelab Real-Time microPCR analyser. The purified DNA is then dispensed into the reaction well of the Truenat™ MTB Plus chip and the test is started.

Description of the apparatus

Figure1. Truenat Dx System hardware components

Trueprep AUTO Sample Prep device Truelab™ Real Time micro PCR Analyser

8.1.5 Sample Requirements

Sputum sample type, collected as either Spot or morning sputum sample

8.1.6 Equipment

True prep AUTO Sample Prep device, Truelab Real Time micro PCR Analyser and Refrigerator

8.1.7 Materials

Extraction of DNA	Amplification of purified DNA	Materials required but not provided	Reagents and Solutions
• Trueprep AUTO v2 Universal Cartridge Based Sample Prep Device • Trueprep AUTO MTB Sample Pre-treatment Pack • Trueprep AUTO v2 Universal Cartridge Based Sample Prep Kit	• Truelab Duo Real Time Quantitative micro PCR Analyser • Truenat™ MTB Plus micro PCR chip • Truelab™ micro PCR printer • Truepet SPA fixed volume (6 µl) Precision micropipette • DNase and RNase-free pipette tips with filter barrier	• Truenat™ Positive Control Kit - Panel I • Powder free disposable gloves • Two waste disposal containers, with lids, containing bleach solutions • Timer • Two waste bags • Micro tube Stand • Cartridge Holder • Two cryovials racks	• Liquefaction buffer • Lysis buffer • Conc. bleach and 70% alcohol

Note: Connect a new reagent pack to the Trueprep Auto v2 device by inserting the Plug-in Connector into the slot provided.

8.1.8 Storage and Stability store at room temperature for 3 days Store at 2°C -8°C

8.1.9 Safety

- Treat all biological samples, including used cartridges, as if capable of transmitting infectious agents. Because it is often impossible to know which might be infectious, all biological samples should be treated with universal precautions.
- Wear protective disposable gloves, laboratory coats and eye protection when handling samples and reagents.
- Wash hands thoroughly after handling samples and test reagents. Follow safety procedures for working with chemicals and handling biological samples, (See safety manual)
- Dispose used cartridges according to infectious waste material disposal guidelines.

8.1.10 Calibration

Calibration is perfumed as per schedule

8.1.11 Quality Control

- Use Truenat Positive Control Kit- Panel containing Positive Control and Negative Control or use PBS as a negative control and a known positive culture sample.
- Run positive and negative controls at least one time per month or
  When opening a new o test kit lot.
  If the temperature of the storage area falls outside of 2-30°C.
  New user prior to performing testing on the clinical sample.
  Accept patient results if the positive controls give positive results while negative controls give negative results. Corrective action should be taken in case of QC failure either by repeating the control and/or informing the supervisor.
  Whenever a new shipment of test kits is received.
- Records QC results in the TB register.

8.1.12 Procedural Steps

A. Equipment start-up procedure

Press the “Power” button to switch on the Truenat device.

Press ‘start’ and ‘eject’ simultaneously to reset when prompted to change the Reagent Pack and reset

B. Sample Processing procedure

Prepare Sample and Extract DNA

i. Wear gloves for sample handling.
ii. Label sputum sample with patient details or laboratory ID
iii. Add 2 drops of liquefaction buffer to the sputum sample
iv. Close the cap and swirl gently to mix
v. Incubate for 10 minutes at room temperature. If sample is not pipetteable after

vi. minutes, incubate for another 5 minutes with swirling at 2-minute intervals
vii. Transfer 0.5 ml of liquefied sputum sample into the lysis buffer bottle using a 1 ml transfer pipette
viii. Add 2 drops of liquefaction buffer into the lysis buffer bottle, swirl gently to mix and incubate for 3-5 minutes
ix. Remove the cartridge from the pouch, label it and place it on the cartridge stand. Take out the elute collection tube (ECT) and label it appropriately.
x. Keep it aside for later use. Keep the elute transfer pipette in the pouch for later use.
xi. Transfer the entire contents of the lysis buffer tube to the sample chamber (black cap) of the cartridge using 3 ml transfer pipette
xii. Switch "on" the Trueprep® AUTO v2 device. Press "eject" button to open and gently pull out the cartridge holder
xiii. Place the cartridge in the tray, and gently push to close the cartridge holder.
xiv. Press "start."
xv. The device will beep at the end of the DNA extraction process (20 minutes), and the cartridge holder will eject automatically.
xvi. Gently pull out the cartridge holder, remove the cartridge, and place it on the cartridge stand.
xvii. Carefully pierce the elute chamber with the provided elute transfer pipette, and transfer the entire elute into the ECT. Discard the transfer pipette and cartridge

C. Running a PCR TB Test

i. Switch "on" the Truelab microPCR analyser by pressing the red button in the back right corner for 2 seconds. LED will glow in Green. Wait for 30-50 seconds for "boot-up screen" to appear followed by "home screen."
ii. Select USER ID, enter password. Press "Sign in" to Log in
iii. Select test profile "MTB" or "MTB Plus". To confirm selection tap "PROCEED" and enter patient details (referred by, patient ID, gender, patient name & age)
iv. Select sample type (sputum).
v. Open a TRUENAT™ MTB Plus chip pouch *Pull out the orange desiccant pouch and confirm that it is orange in colour.
vi. Gently take out the chip without touching white well portion and place it on the chip tray by aligning it in the slot provided
vii. Press "START TEST" on the screen. Chip tray opens. "Please Load Sample" will appear. (Don't press "YES" until chip loading is complete.
viii. Open the master mix tube, discard the stopper and place the tube in the micro tube stand. *Check for white cake at the bottom of the micro tube.
ix. Attach the 6ul micro tip provided in the pouch to the single push pipette.
x. Transfer 6ul of the elute from ECT into the master mix tube
xi. Allow the master mix to stand for 30 SECONDS to get a clear solution. *Do not mix by tapping, shaking or reverse pipette. *Do not discard the pipette tip.
xii. Transfer the elute from the master mix tube to the white reaction well of the chip (Figure 16). *Avoid spillage of the clear solution outside the white reaction well. *Discard the pipette tip and master mix tube.
xiii. Click "YES" on the device screen to start the test. The PCR will be completed in 35 minutes.

xiv. Tap the “Open/Close Tray” button to eject the chip tray and discard the used chip immediately after the reaction.
xv. If MTB is detected test the same elute for RIF resistance using the Truenat MTB RIF Dx chip as a follow-on test. The test takes about 55 minutes.

D. Running a RIF-Resistance Test

i. If MTB is detected in a sample, Run a RIF resistance test.
ii. Use a portion of the same DNA eluate to test for RIF resistance using a Truenat MTB-RIF Dx chip.
iii. Start by returning to Step 3 in the PCR TB test process and repeat for RIFresistance by Selecting “MTB RIF” as the test type in the Truelab micro–PCR Analyser.
iv. RIF-resistance testing takes an additional 60 minute.

8.1.13 Biological Reference Interval Not applicable

8.1.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Interpretation of results

At the end of the test run, the result screen will display;

i. “DETECTED” for Positive result.
ii. “NOT DETECTED” for Negative results.
iii. MTB load as “HIGH”, “MEDIUM”, “LOW” or “VERY LOW” for positive.
iv. The result screen also displays the validity of the test run as “VALID” or “INVALID”.

NOTE: Invalid samples have to be repeated with fresh samples from the sample preparation stage.

IPC will co-amplify in most positive cases also, in some samples having a high target load, the IPC may not amplify, however, the test run is still considered valid

Sample with MTB DETECTED should be tested for MTB RIF

Reporting of results

Click “VIEW RESULTS” on the menu bar. The View Results window appears.

Optional: Press “Print” to print the result page using Truelab® microPCR printer.

Critical value

MTB Detected RIF Resistance Detected

8.1.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

i. Optimal performance of this test requires appropriate sample collection, handling, storage and transport to the test site.

ii. Though very rare, mutations within the highly conserved regions of the target genome where the Truenat™ assay primers and/or probe bind may result in the under-quantitation of or a failure to detect the presence of the concerned pathogen.
iii. The instruments and assay procedures are designed to minimise the risk of contamination by PCR amplification products. However, it is essential to follow good laboratory practices and ensure careful adherence to the procedures specified in this package insert for avoiding nucleic acid contamination from previous amplifications, positive controls or samples.
iv. A sample for which the Truenat™ assay reports “Not Detected” cannot be concluded to be negative for the concerned pathogen. As with any diagnostic test, results from the Truenat™ assay should be interpreted in the context of other clinical and laboratory findings.
v. The performance of the test has not been evaluated with samples processed by methods other than those described in the package insert.
vi. Do not open the cartridge lid except when adding sample.
vii. Do not use a cartridge if it appears wet or if the lid seal appears to have been broken.
viii. Do not use a cartridge that has a damaged reaction tube.
ix. Each single-use cartridge is used to process one test. Do not reuse spent cartridges.

8.1.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the method verification report of this procedure.

8.1.17 Supporting Document Sample collection manual

8.1.18 References

- Truenat MTB Plus package insert version 5.
- The Trueprep™ AUTO v2 Universal Cartridge Based Sample Prep Device user manual.
- TBRL Bamenda Biosafety manual, Version 4.0, section 10.
- Truenat™-A Point-of-care Real Time PCR Test for Tuberculosis, video by Molbio available at https://youtu.be/ydR2I5S2v3

8.2 DIAGNOSIS OF MTB/RIF BY USING GENE XPERT SYSTEM

8.2.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing sample which is suspect with MTB/Rif

8.2.2 Scope

This procedure is used for detection of the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex bacteria and their rifampicin susceptibility using the GeneXpert MTB/Rif system in microbiology section in the Laboratory.

8.2.3 Responsibility

Qualified, trained, Competent and Registered health laboratory personnel is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation for this procedure.

8.2.4 Principle

The Gene Xpert MTB/RIF system is a fully automated nested real-time PCR system, which detects MTB complex DNA in smear positive and negative sputum samples and other body fluid i.e. pleural fluid, ascetic fluid CSF and Pus. It simultaneously identifies mutations in the rpoB gene, which are associated with rifampicin

resistance.

8.2.5 Sample Requirements

- Collect minimum 1ml and maximum 4ml of sputum or other body fluid
- Do not accept samples with obvious food particles or other solid particulatesor blood stained (for this do Auramine O or ZN Stain)

8.2.6 6.0 Materials

MTB/RIF cartridges, Sample Reagent, Disinfectant solution (0.5% Jik and 70% alcohol), Sterile disposable transfer pipettes, Sterile screw-capped sample collection containers, Disposable gloves, Plastic bag for waste disposal, Labels and/or indelible labeling marker, Sterile pipettes for sample processing.

8.2.7 Equipment

GeneXpert machine, Microscope, Personal Protective Equipment such as N95 respirator and Timer

8.2.8 Storage and stability

- Sputum sample may be stored t 2-8 ^{o}C before examinations.
- Protect the Sputum samples from dierect sunlight.
- Store the GeneXpert catradges at 2-8^{o}C

8.2.9 Safety

i. Decontaminate working surfaces twice daily, in the morning and afternoon
ii. Adhere to safety precautions as stated in the Safety manual
iii. All personal protective equipment (PPE) must be worn when performing this procedure.
iv. All samples must be regarded as potentially infections.
v. Avoid any contact between hands and eyes and nose during sample collection and testing.
vi. Do not use kit beyond the expiration date which appears on the package label or device in a damaged pouch.
vii. All spills should be wiped thoroughly using 1% sodium hypochlorite solution.

8.2.10 Calibration

Calibarate auxillary equipment used in this operating this procedure once a year and kep record available is performed once per year.

8.2.11 Quality Control

- The quality control will be performed on weekly bases (every week).
- Positive and negative known sample will be used.
- Ensure that all MTB/RIF cartridges and sample reagents used have passed the required are used within their expiry date

8.2.12 Procedure Steps

Start-up the Gene Xpert instrument and Preparation of sample

i. Disinfect the working area by 0.5% jik.
ii. Label each Xpert MTB/RIF cartridge with the sample ID (e.g. NEW X_2016, HIV X_2016 or KID X_2016). Do not put the label on the lid of the cartridge or obstruct the existing 2D barcode on the cartridge. Write on the sides of the cartridge or affix ID label.
iii. Leave sample in leak-proof sputum collection container.
iv. Unscrew lid of sputum collection container, add Sample Reagent 2:1 (v/v) to sample and close the lid again.
v. Shake vigorously 10 - 20 times.
vi. Incubate for 5 minutes at room temperature.
vii. Shake the sample again vigorously 10 – 20 times.
viii. Continue incubation for another 10 minutes.

Note: *Samples should be liquefied with no visible clumps of sputum. If there are still clumps of sputum, shake again vigorously and incubate for another 35 min.*

8.2.13 Preparing the Cartridge

- Start the test within 30 minutes of adding the sample to the cartridge
- Using the sterile transfer pipette provided, aspirate the liquefied sample into the transfer pipette until the meniscus is above the minimum mark (= 2ml). Open the cartridge lid. Transfer sample into the open port of the Xpert MTB/RIF cartridge

NOTE: It is crucial that no bubbles are created when transferring the sample into the cartridge as this can lead to an error (no result).

- Dispense slowly to minimise the risk of aerosol formation.
- Close the cartridge lid. Make sure the lid snaps firmly into place. Note: Remaining liquefied sample may be kept for up to 12 hrs at 2-8oC should repeat testing be required.

8.2.14 Start the test on the GeneXpert instrument

Note: Before start processing the sample, check that the Gene Xpert instrument is functioning and the modules are available.

i. Turn on the computer, and then turn on the GeneXpert instrument.
ii. On the Windows desktop, double-click the GeneXpert shortcut icon.
iii. Log on to the GeneXpert System software using your user name and password.
iv. Click on "CHECK STATUS" and check if modules are available. If not proceed to "Troubleshooting" in User's manual.
v. In the GeneXpert Dx System window, click "CREATE TEST". The Scan Cartridge Barcode dialog box appears.
vi. Scan the barcode on the Xpert MTB/RIF cartridge.
vii. The Create Test window appears.
viii. Using the barcode information, the software automatically fills the boxes for the following fields: Select Assay, Reagent Lot ID, Cartridge SN, and Expiration Date.
ix. In the Sample ID box (ID=Patient names), scan or type the sample ID (e.g. NEW X_2016, HIV X_2016 or KID X_2016). Make sure you type the correct sample ID. The sample ID is associated with the test results and is shown in the "View Results" window and all the reports
x. Choose module.
xi. Click "Start Test".
xii. In the dialog box that appears, type your password.
xiii. Open the instrument module door with the blinking green light and load the cartridge.
xiv. Close the door.
xv. The test starts and the green light stops blinking.
xvi. Wait until the system releases the door lock at the end of the run, then open the module door and remove the cartridge.
xvii. Dispose of used cartridges in the appropriate sample waste containers according to your institution's standard practices

8.2.15 Biological Reference interval Not Applicable

Interpretation and Reporting of Results

- MTB DETECTED, Rif Resistance DETECTED –RR
- MTB DETECTED, Rif Resistnce INDETEMINATE –TI
- MTB DETECTED Rif Not DETECTED – T
- MTB NOT DETECTED – N
- This is DNA based test, meant for New TB suspect, ensure don't enrol 'follow-up' patient.
- The results are interpreted by the GeneXpert Dx system from measured fluorescent signals and embedded calculation algorithms and will be displayed in the "View Results" window. Lower Ct values represent a higher starting concentration of DNA template; higher Ct values represent a lower concentration of DNA template.
- Critical values MTB DETECTED, Rif Resistance DETECTED –RR

8.2.16 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Perform the test and validate results as per this SOP and details of test package insert. Reliable results depend on proper sample collection, handling, and storage. A positive test result does not necessarily indicate the presence of viable organisms. It is however, presumptive for the presence of MTB and rifampicin resistance. The results might be affected by antecedent or concurrent anti-TB drug therapy.

8.2.17 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the verification report of GeneXpert.

8.2.18 Supporting Document

Sample collection manual and safety manual

8.2.19 References

1. Clinical Microbiology Procedures Handbook. American Society for Microbiology. Washington D.C., USA, 2nd edition, 2007.
2. Monica cheesbrough (2005). District Laboratory Practice in Tropical countries. Cambridge University Press, New York, USA, 2nd edition, 2005.
3. WHO, (2003). Mannual of basic techniques for a health laboratory. Geneva. 2nd edition, 2003.
4. Manual of Clinical Microbiology. American Society for Microbiology (ASM), Washington D.C., USA. 9th edition, 2007.
5. Manual for the Laboratory Identification and Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing of Bacterial Pathogens of Public Health Importance in the Developing World. U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Atlanta, Georgia, U.S.A, and World Health Organization (WHO) Geneva Switzerland. 2003.
6. International Union against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. The Public Health Service National Tuberculosis Reference Laboratory and the National Laboratory Network. Paris; 1998.

8.3 DETERMINATION OF HIV -1 VIRAL LOAD BY USING GENEXPERT SYSTEM

8.3.1 Purpose

This SOP outlines the steps for qualitative *in vitro* diagnostic HVL test by using automated GeneXpert system.

8.3.2 Scope

The Xpert HIV-1 VL assay is an *in vitro* reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) assay for the detection and quantification of Human Immunodeficiency Virus type 1 (HIV-1) RNA in human plasma from HIV-1 infected individuals, using the automated GeneXpert Instrument Systems. The assay can quantify HIV-1 RNA over the range of 40 to 10,000,000 copies/mL. The Xpert HIV-1 VL assay is validated for quantification of RNA from HIV-1 Group M (subtypes A, B, C, D, F, G, H, J, K, CRF01_AE, CRF02_AG, and CRF03_AB), Group N, and Group O.

The Xpert HIV-1 VL assay is intended for use in conjunction with clinical presentation and other laboratory markers for disease prognosis and for use as an aid in assessing viral response to antiretroviral treatment as measured by changes in plasma HIV-1 RNA levels.

The Xpert HIV-1 VL assay is not intended to be used as a donor screening test for HIV-1 or as a diagnostic test to confirm the presence of HIV-1 infection

8.3.3 Responsibility

The Qualified, competent and registered health laboratory practitioners are responsible to carry out this procedure.

The head of section is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and competency assessment for this procedure

8.3.4 Principles Principle of the Procedure

GeneXpert Instrument Systems automate and integrate sample preparation, nucleic acid extraction and amplification, and detection of the target sequence in simple or complex specimens using real-time reverse transcriptase PCR (RT-PCR). The systems consist of an instrument, personal computer, and preloaded software for running tests and viewing the results. The systems require single-use disposable GeneXpert cartridges that contain the RT-PCR reagents and carry out the sample extraction and RT-PCR processes. Because the cartridges are self-contained, crosscontamination between samples is minimised. For a full description of the systems, refer to the appropriate *GeneXpert Dx Operator Manual* or *GeneXpert Infinity Operator* **Manual.**

The HIV-1 VL assay includes reagents for the detection of HIV-1 RNA in specimens and two internal controls used for quantitation of HIV-1 RNA. The internal controls are also used to monitor the presence of inhibitor(s) in the RT and PCR reactions.

The Probe Check Control (PCC) verifies reagent rehydration, PCR tube filling in the cartridge, probe integrity, and dye stability

Principle of operation

Each GeneXpert Dx module processes one sample. You insert the sample and applicable reagents into a GeneXpert cartridge, create a test, load the cartridge into an available instrument module, and then start the test. During the test, the system performs the following steps:

i. Moves the sample and reagents into different chambers in the cartridge for sample preparation.
ii. Hydrates the reagent beads.
iii. Performs probe checks to ensure that the sample preparation is successful (only if the assay definition requires this step).
iv. Moves the sample and reagent mixture into the reaction tube.
v. Starts the PCR cycles and real-time detection.

8.3.5 Sample Requirement.

- DBS collected as per SOP for collection of DBS.
- Anticoagulated whole blood (WB) B in sterile tubes using EDTA (lavender top) as the anticoagulant as per the manufacturer's instructions for use.
- A minimum of 100 µL of WB is required for the HIV-1 Qualitative assay.

8.3.6 Equipment

Perform equipment Start up, Maintenance, trouble shoot and shut down refer manufacturer instructions.

Biosafety cabinet, Data computer connected to LIS (Optional), Printer (optional), GeneXpert instrument and GeneXpert Software should be available.

8.3.7 Materials

Reagent kit content	**Extra supplies**
The HIV-1 Qual assay kit contains sufficient reagents to process 10 specimens or quality control samples. The kit contains the following: HIV-1 Qual assay Cartridges with Integrated Reaction Tubes 10 • Bead 1, Bead 2, and Bead 3 (freeze-dried) 1 of each per cartridge • Lysis Reagent (Guanidinium Thiocyanate) 1.4 mL per cartridge • Rinse Reagent 0.5 mL per cartridge • Elution Reagent 2.5 mL per cartridge • Binding Reagent 2.4 mL per cartridge • Proteinase K Reagent 0.48 mL per cartridge	• Serviette/Wipe • Bleach • 70 % alcohol or methylated spirit • Labelling marker • Optional: sterile pipettes for sample processing • Lab coat, • Non - powdered gloves
HIV-1 Qual assay Sample Reagent Set (Sample Reagent) 10 • Lysis Reagent (Guanidinium Thiocyanate) 1.0 mL per vial Disposable 1 mL Transfer Pipettes 1 bag of 10 per kit Disposable 100 µL Transfer Micropipettes 1 bag of 10 per kit **CD 1 per kit** • Assay Definition Files (ADF) • Instructions to import ADF into GeneXpert software	

Reagent kit content	Extra supplies
• Instructions for Use (Package Insert)	

8.3.8 Storage and stability

Reagents

- Store the HIV-1 Qualitative assay cartridges and reagents at 2–28 °C.
- Do not use any reagents that have become cloudy or discoloured.
- Do not use a cartridge that has leaked.
- Use cartridge within 30 minutes after adding the sample
- Reagents are stable until their expiration dates when stored and handled as per instruction for use.

Samples

- DBS cards may be stored at 18–30 °C for 30 days or – 15°C - 20 °C or colder for up to 4 months, or -70 °C for longer storage.
- EDTA-anticoagulated WB may be stored at 31–35 °C for up to 8 hours, 15–30 °C for up to 24 hours or at 2–8 °C for up to 72 hours, prior to sample preparing and testing

8.3.9 Safety

i Treat all biological specimens, including used cartridges, as if capable of transmitting infectious agents.
ii Wear protective disposable gloves, laboratory coats, and eye protection when handling specimens and reagents. Wash hands thoroughly after handling specimens and test reagents.
iii Follow safety procedures for working with chemicals and handling biological samples.
iv When processing more than one sample at a time, open only one cartridge; add sample and close the cartridge before processing the next sample. Change gloves between samples.
v Do not substitute HIV-1 Qual assay reagents with other reagents.
vi Do not open the HIV-1 Qual assay cartridge lid except when adding the Sample Reagent and WB or the Sample Reagent treated DBS sample.
vii Do not use a cartridge if it appears wet or if the lid seal appears to have been broken.
viii Do not shake the cartridge. Shaking or dropping the cartridge after opening the cartridge lid may yield invalid results.

ix Do not use a cartridge that has a damaged reaction tube.
x Each single-use HIV-1 Qual assay cartridge is used to process one sample. Do not reuse spent cartridges. xi. The single-use disposable pipette is used to transfer one sample. Do not reuse spent disposable pipettes.
xi In the event of contamination of the work area or equipment with sample or control materials, disinfect the area with a 1:10 bleach solution and then 70% ethanol. Wipe work surfaces dry completely before proceeding.

8.3.10 Calibration

There is no need to calibrate the GeneXpert Dx instrument. Cepheid performs all of the necessary calibrations before you receive the system. However, Cepheid recommends that the instrument be recalibrated after 1 year of use, based on the initial installation date (or based on the previous calibration for subsequent years) or at 2000 tests per instrument module, whichever comes first.

8.3.11 Quality control

The GeneXpert Dx System automatically performs internal quality control for each sample. During each test, the system uses one or more of the following controls: **Internal control (IC**)—Verifies the performance of the PCR reagents and prevents a false negative result. The internal control PCR assay assesses if there is any inhibition, possibly by components, in the test sample. The internal control is provided in the cartridge and should be positive in a negative sample.

Endogenous control (EC)—Normalises targets and ensures sufficient sample is used in the test. Because of its low variability, the endogenous control can also be used to indicate sample-inhibitor contamination. The endogenous control is taken from the sample sample.

Each test includes a Sample Volume Adequacy (SVA), a Sample Processing Control (SPC) and Probe Check Control (PCC).

Sample Volume Adequacy (SVA): Ensures that the sample was correctly added to the cartridge. The SVA verifies that the correct volume of sample has been added in the sample chamber. The SVA passes if it meets the validated acceptance criteria. If the SVA does not pass, an ERROR 2096 will display if there is no sample or an ERROR 2097 if there is not enough sample. The system will prevent the user from resuming the test.

Sample Processing Control (SPC): Ensures that the sample was correctly processed. The SPC is an Armoured RNA in the form of a dry bead that is included in each cartridge to verify adequate processing of the sample virus. The SPC verifies that lysis of HIV-1 has occurred if the organism is present and verifies that the sample processing is adequate. Additionally, this control detects sample associated inhibition of the RT-PCR reaction. The SPC should be positive in a negative sample and can be negative or positive in a positive sample. The SPC passes if it meets the validated acceptance criteria.

In addition to the controls, the GeneXpert Dx instrument performs a probe check during the first stage of the test.

Probe Check Control (PCC): Before the start of the PCR reaction, the GeneXpert Instrument System measures the fluorescence signal from the probes to monitor bead rehydration, reaction tube filling, probe integrity, and dye stability. The PCC passes if it meets the validated acceptance criteria.

External Controls: Internal quality controls should be done weekly by using known HIV-1 DETECTED and HIV -1 NOT DETECTED as the same as the routine EID/DBS samples.

8.3.12 Procedural steps

Follow the actions described step by step to do each specific task

Start-up the GeneXpert instrument

- Turn on the GeneXpert Dx instrument, and then turn on the computer.
- On the Windows desktop, double-click the GeneXpert Dx shortcut icon.
- Log on to the GeneXpert Dx System software using your user name and password.
- Click on “CHECK STATUS” and check if modules are available. If not proceed to “Troubleshooting” in User manual.

!Note: Before start processing the sample, check that the GeneXpert instrument is functioning and the modules are available.

Preparing of cartridge(s)

EDTA anticoagulated Whole Blood

i. Wear protective disposable gloves.
ii. Disinfect the work area by 0.5 % bleach solution followed by 70 % alcohol
iii. Wear protective disposable powder free gloves.
iv. Label the Sample Reagent vial with the sample identification.
v. Inspect the test cartridge for damage. If damaged, do not use.
vi. Open the cartridge lid.
vii. Use the 1 mL transfer pipette provided to transfer 750 µL of the sample reagent into the sample chamber of the cartridge.
viii. Allow the Sample Reagent to adjust to room temperature and mix the bottle by inverting before transferring to the cartridge. Transfer exactly 750 µL into the sample chamber of the cartridge.
ix. Mix the Whole Blood sample by inverting the vial (EDTA or lavendertop tube) at least seven times. Immediately transfer 100 µL using the micropipette provided by squeezing the upper bulb and then releasing to aspirate the blood.
x. Squeeze again to dispense the blood into the sample chamber of the cartridge where it will mix with the Sample Reagent already in the sample chamber. Alternatively, use an automatic pipette to dispense the blood into

the sample chamber of the cartridge. Do NOT pour the sample into the chamber!

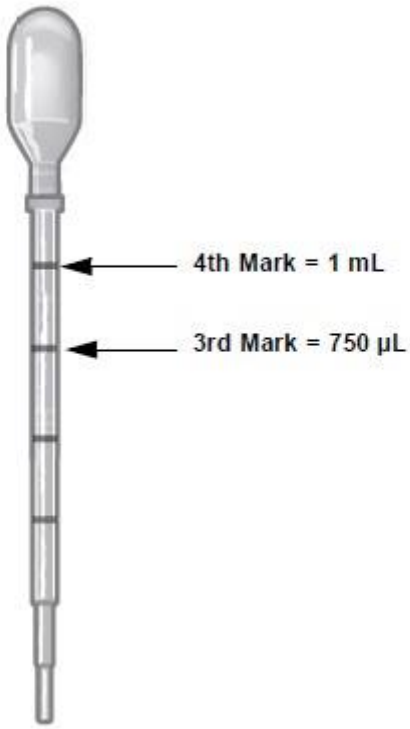


Figure 3. HIV-1 Qual Assay 1 mL Transfer Pipette

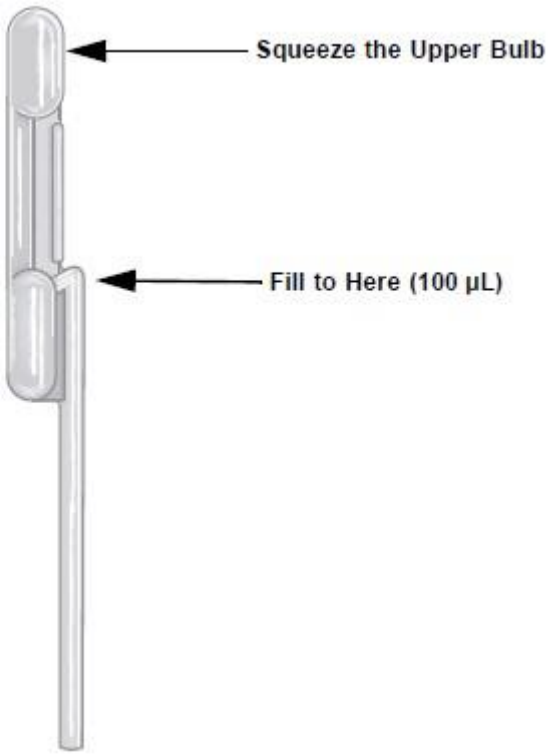


Figure 4. HIV-1 Qual Assay 100 µL Transfer Micropipette

Figure 5. HIV-1 Qual Assay Cartridge (Top View)

❑ ***DBS sample***

i. Wear protective disposable gloves.
ii. Disinfect the working area.
iii. Wear protective disposable powder free gloves.
iv. Before starting, remove the vial containing the Sample Reagent from the kit and, if it was refrigerated, allow to adjust to room temperature. If the vial has not been stored in an upright position, make sure the buffer is settled in the bottom by giving the vial a firm shake.
v. Turn on Thermo Mixer to heat to 56°C.
vi. Label the Sample Reagent vial with the sample identification.
vii. Using sterilised scissors, excise one entire DBS from the filter paper card for each sample. Follow the delineated lines when excising the DBS. If perforated circles are used, use clean and sterile pipette tips to detach the DBS.
viii. Unscrew the lid on the vial containing the Sample Reagent and place one DBS in the vial. Ensure that the DBS is fully submerged in the Sample Reagent buffer.
ix. Place the vial with the DBS in a Thermo Mixer and incubate for 15 minutes at 56 °C while rotating at 500 rpm.
x. Inspect the test cartridge for damage. If damaged, do not use.
xi. Open the cartridge lid
xii. Use the 1 mL transfer pipette provided to transfer all the liquid from the lysed DBS sample into the sample chamber of the cartridge. Ensure the pipette is filled above the third mark on the transfer pipette. Avoid suction of the DBS with the pipette.

Do **NOT** pour the sample into the chamber!

xiii. Close the cartridge lid, ready to start the test.

Notes! Change gloves between sample, and each new procedure.

Starting the Test

i. In the GeneXpert System window, click **Create Test.** The scan Cartridge Barcode dialog box appears.

ii. Scan the barcode on the HIV-1 Qual assay cartridge.
iii. Using the barcode information, the software automatically fills the boxes for the following fields: Select Assay, Reagent Lot ID, Cartridge SN, and Expiration Date.
iv. Type the Patient ID, make sure the Patient ID is typed correctly.
v. Type in the **Sample ID**. Make sure the Sample ID is typed correctly.
vi. On the **Notes** field, enter the words **KATAVI RRHL** to indicate a testing laboratory name on the patient report.
vii. Open the instrument module door with the blinking green light and load the cartridge.
viii. Click **Start Test** (GeneXpert Dx). Enter you're your user name and password, if requested.
ix. Close the door.
x. The test starts and the green light stops blinking. When the test is finished, the light turns off.
xi. Wait until the system releases the door lock before opening the module door and removing the cartridge.

Result viewing, and printing

i. In the GeneXpert Dx System window, Click the **View Results** icon to view results. This view result window appears.
ii. If the software reports "Error", Invalid, or No result, repeat the test using new DBS circle.
iii. Should the test again show Error, Invalid, or No result, proceed to troubleshooting manual to exclude technical problems before requesting a new sample.
iv. Upon completion of the test, click the **Report** button of the View Results window to view and/or generate a PDF report file.
v. Report should be done in the Laboratory HEID register and a tick on the respective result blank space on the HEID request form. Report as; HIV -1 DETECTED*.

HIV -1 NOT DETECTED

i. Report "please submit a new sample" if the system repeatedly did not produce a result and you have excluded and/or fixed a technical problem.
ii. HIV -1 DETECTED is a critical result that needs immediate action including but not limited to; retesting using new DBS circle with a new cartridge, and result notification to the respective referring health facility.

8.3.13 Biological Reference Intervals Not Applicable

8.3.14 15. Result interpretation and Reporting of Results.

The results are interpreted automatically by the GeneXpert Instrument System from measured fluorescent signals and embedded calculation algorithms and are clearly shown in the View Results window. Possible results are shown in Table below:

Result	**Interpretation**

HIV-1 DETECTED See Figure 1.	The HIV-1 target nucleic acids are detected. • The HIV-1 target nucleic acids have a Ct within the valid range. • SPC: NA (not applicable); SPC is ignored because the HIV-1 target amplification occurred. • Probe Check: PASS; all probe check results pass.
HIV-1 NOT DETECTED See Figure 2.	The HIV-1 target nucleic acids are not detected. SPC meets acceptance criteria. • SPC: PASS; SPC has a Ct within the valid range. • Probe Check: PASS; all probe check results pass.
INVALID	Presence or absence of the HIV-1 target nucleic acids cannot be determined. Repeat test with new sample and cartridge. • SPC: FAIL; SPC Ct is not within valid range. • Probe Check: PASS; all probe check results pass
ERROR	Presence or absence of HIV-1 target nucleic acids cannot be determined. Repeat test with new sample and cartridge. • HIV-1: NO RESULT • SPC: NO RESULT • Probe Check: FAIL*; all or one of the probe check results fail. *If the probe check passed, the error is caused by the maximum pressure limit exceeding the acceptable range or by a system component failure.
NO RESULT	Presence or absence of HIV-1 target nucleic acids cannot be determined. Repeat test with new sample and cartridge. A NO RESULT indicates that insufficient data were collected. For example, the operator stopped a test that was in progress. • HIV-1: NO RESULT • SPC: NO RESULT • Probe Check: NA (not applicable).

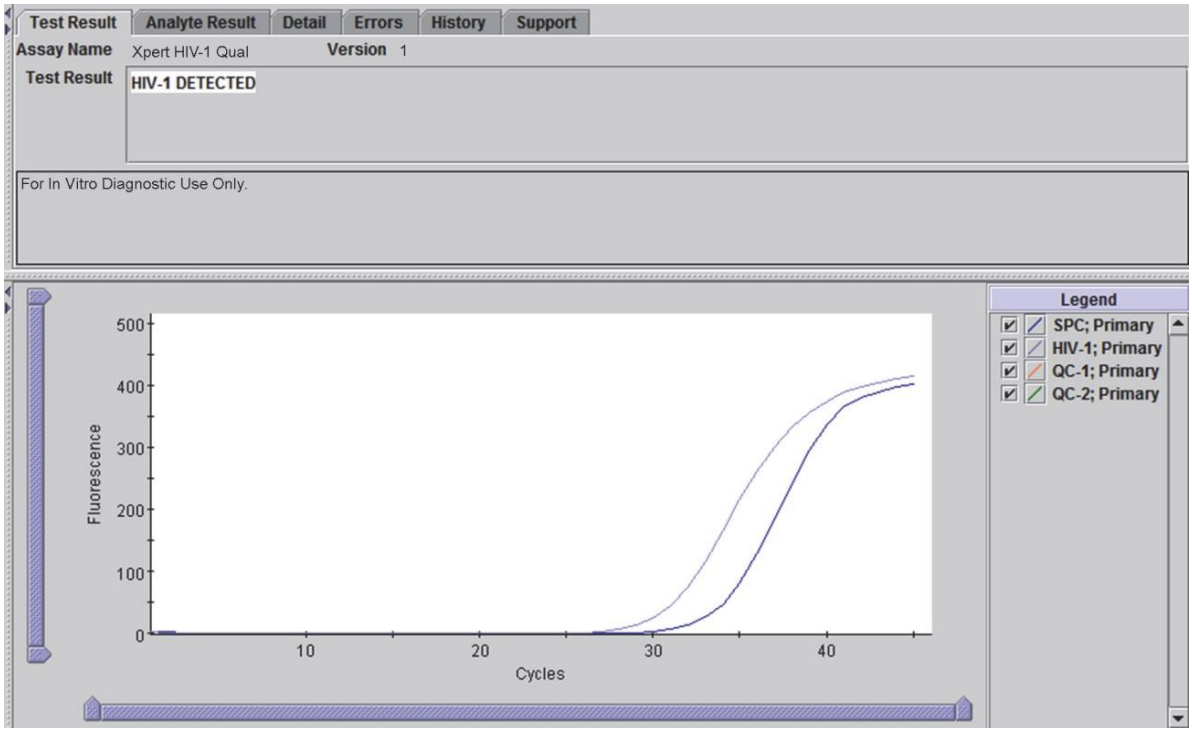


Figure 6 HIV -1 DETECTED

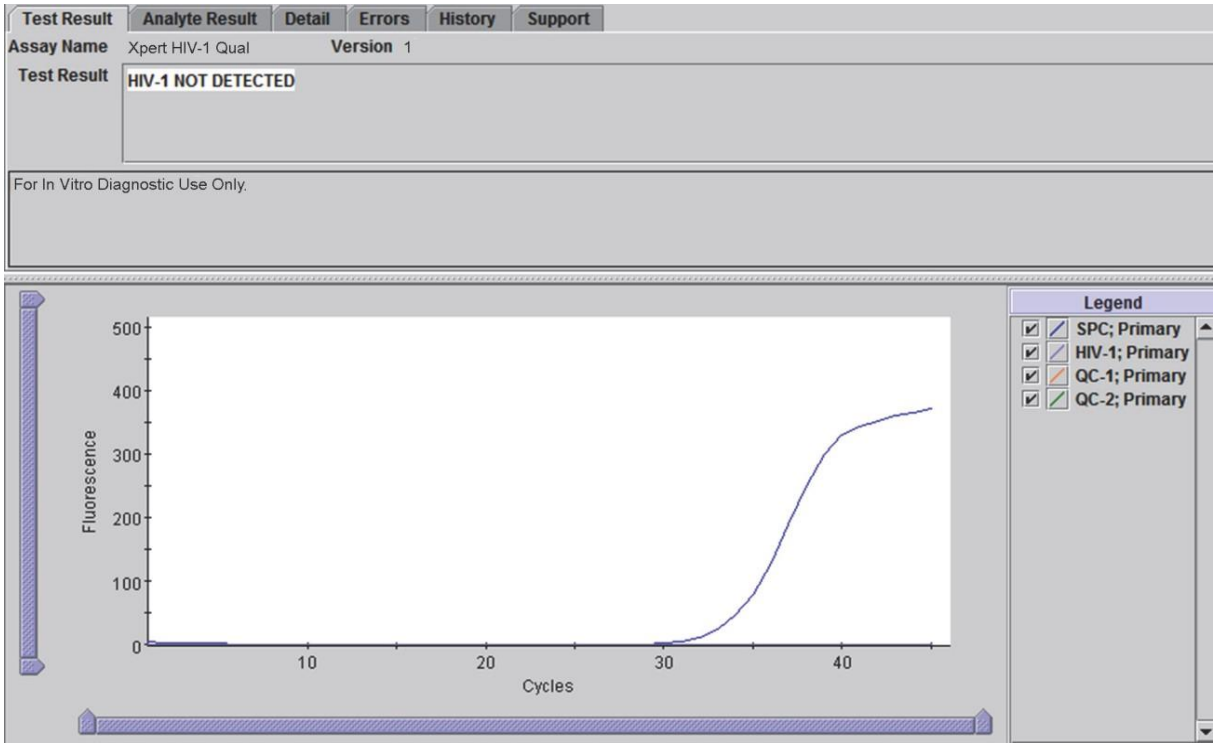


Figure 7. HIV -1 NOT DETECTED

8.3.15 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error

Good laboratory practices and changing gloves between handling specimens are recommended to avoid contamination of reagents.

Rare mutations within the target region of the HIV-1 Qual assay may affect primer and/or probe binding resulting in failure to detect the virus.

A negative test result does not preclude HIV-1 infection. Results from the HIV-1 Qual assay should be interpreted in conjunction with clinical presentation and other laboratory markers.

8.3.16 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the manufacture package insert and verification report for detailed information on Performance Characteristics of the testing procedure

8.3.17 Supporting Documents

- Sample collection manual and safety manual
- Quality manual

8.3.18 References

1. Ministry of Health, Community Development, Gender, Elderly and Children,
2. Standard Operating Procedures for qualitative HIV-1 HEID testing using GeneXpert
3. Xpert HIV-1 Qual -1 Assay Package Insert 308-3048 Rev J
4. GeneXpert Dx System. Operator Manual

8.4 DETERMINATION OF HIV EARLY INFANT DIAGNOSIS BY USING GENEXPERT SYSTEM

8.4.1 Purpose

This SOP outlines the steps for qualitative *in vitro* diagnostic HIV-1 test by using automated GeneXpert system.

8.4.2 Scope

The HIV-1 Qual assay, is a qualitative *in vitro* diagnostic test designed to detect Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1 (HIV-1) total nucleic acids on the automated GeneXpert Systems using human whole blood (WB) and dried blood spot (DBS) specimens from individuals suspected of HIV-1 infection. The HIV-1 Qualitative assay is intended to aid in the diagnosis of HIV-1 infection in conjunction with clinical presentation and other laboratory markers. The assay is intended to be used by laboratory professionals or specifically-trained healthcare workers. The assay is not intended to be used as a blood donor screening test for HIV-1.

8.4.3 Responsibility

Section head is responsible effective implementation of this procedure. Only competent laboratory staffs should carry out this procedure. It is the responsibility of each staff to read, understand and implement this procedure.

8.4.4 Principle

Principle of the Procedure

The GeneXpert (GX) Instrument Systems automate and integrate sample preparation, nucleic acid extraction and amplification, and detection of the target sequence in simple or complex samples using real time reverse transcription PCR (RT-PCR). The systems consist of an instrument, personal computer, and preloaded software for performing tests and viewing the results. The systems require the use of single-use disposable GeneXpert cartridges that hold the RT-PCR reagents and host the RT-PCR processes. Because the cartridges are self-contained, cross contamination between samples is minimised. The HIV-1 Qual assay includes reagents for the detection of HIV-1 total nucleic acids in specimens as well as an internal control to ensure adequate processing of the target and to monitor the presence of inhibitor(s) in the RT and PCR reactions. The Probe Check Control (PCC) verifies reagent rehydration, PCR tube filling in the cartridge, probe integrity, and dye stability.

8.4.5 Principle of operation

Each GeneXpert Dx module processes one sample. You insert the sample and applicable reagents into a GeneXpert cartridge, create a test, load the cartridge into an available instrument module, and then start the test. During the test, the system performs the following steps:

i. Moves the sample and reagents into different chambers in the cartridge for sample preparation.
ii. Hydrates the reagent beads.
iii. Performs probe checks to ensure that the sample preparation is successful (only if the assay definition requires this step).
iv. Moves the sample and reagent mixture into the reaction tube.
v. Starts the PCR cycles and real-time detection.

8.4.6 Sample requirements

DBS collected as per SOP for collection of DBS.

EDTA Anticoagulated WB in sterile tubes using EDTA (lavender top) as the anticoagulant as per the manufacturer’s instructions for use. A minimum of 100 µL of WB is required for the HIV-1 Qualitative assay.

8.4.7 Equipment

Start up, Maintenance, troubleshoot and shut down refer manufacturer instructions

Thermo Mixer C for incubation with smart block, Biosafety cabinet, Data computer connected to LIS (Optional) and Printer (optional)

8.4.8 Materials

Materials (Reagents and consumables) used to perform the test.

Reagent kit content	Extra consumables
The HIV-1 Qual assay kit contains sufficient reagents to process 10 specimens or quality control samples. The kit contains the following: HIV-1 Qual assay Cartridges with Integrated Reaction Tubes 10 • Bead 1, Bead 2, and Bead 3 (freeze-dried) 1 of each per cartridge • Lysis Reagent (Guanidinium Thiocyanate) 1.4 mL per cartridge • Rinse Reagent 0.5 mL per cartridge • Elution Reagent 2.5 mL per cartridge • Binding Reagent 2.4 mL per cartridge • Proteinase K Reagent 0.48 mL per cartridge HIV-1 Qual assay Sample Reagent Set (Sample Reagent) 10 • Lysis Reagent (Guanidinium Thiocyanate) 1.0 mL per vial Disposable 1 mL Transfer Pipettes 1 bag of 10 per kit Disposable 100 µL Transfer Micropipettes 1 bag of 10 per kit **CD 1 per kit** • Assay Definition Files (ADF) • Instructions to import ADF into GeneXpert software • Instructions for Use (Package Insert)	• DBS Collection Kit (Filter paper cards, e.g., Whatman 903, Munktell or equivalent, lancets, desiccants, plastic • sealable bags, and swabs) • Scissors, sterile (recommended for excising DBS from filter paper if not using a perforated DBS card) • Sterile pipette tips • Serviette/Wipe • Bleach • 70 % alcohol or methylated spirit • Distilled water • Labelling marker • Optional: sterile pipettes for sample processing
	• Laboratory coat, • Non - powdered gloves

8.4.9 Storage and Stability.

DBS cards may be stored at 18–30 °C for 30 days or – 15°C - 20 °C or colder for up to 4 months, or -70 °C for longer storage.

EDTA-anticoagulated WB may be stored at 31–35 °C for up to 8 hours, 15–30 °C for up to 24 hours or at 2–8 °C for up to 72 hours, prior to preparing and testing the sample.

8.4.10 Safety

i. Treat all biological specimens, including used cartridges, as if capable of transmitting infectious agents.

ii. Wear protective disposable gloves, laboratory coats, and eye protection when handling specimens and reagents. Wash hands thoroughly after handling specimens and test reagents.
iii. Follow safety procedures for working with chemicals and handling biological samples.
iv. When processing more than one sample at a time, open only one cartridge; add sample and close the cartridge before processing the next sample. Change gloves between samples.
v. Do not substitute HIV-1 Qual assay reagents with other reagents.
vi. Do not open the HIV-1 Qual assay cartridge lid except when adding the Sample Reagent and WB or the Sample Reagent treated DBS sample.
vii. Do not use a cartridge if it appears wet or if the lid seal appears to have been broken.
viii. Do not shake the cartridge. Shaking or dropping the cartridge after opening the cartridge lid may yield invalid results.
ix. Do not use a cartridge that has a damaged reaction tube.
x. Each single-use HIV-1 Qual assay cartridge is used to process one sample. Do not reuse spent cartridges.
xi. The single-use disposable pipette is used to transfer one sample. Do not reuse spent disposable pipettes.
xii. In the event of contamination of the work area or equipment with sample or control materials, disinfect the area with a 1:10 bleach solution and then 70% ethanol. Wipe work surfaces dry completely before proceeding.

8.4.11 Calibration

Do not need to calibrate the GeneXpert Dx instrument. Cepheid performs all of the necessary calibrations before you receive the system. However, Cepheid recommends that the instrument be recalibrated after 1 year of use, based on the initial installation date (or based on the previous calibration for subsequent years) or at 2000 tests per instrument module, whichever comes first.

8.4.12 Quality control

Quality control is an important part of *in vitro* diagnostic testing because it ensures you are performing the tests correctly and that your GeneXpert Dx System is working properly. The GeneXpert Dx System automatically performs internal quality control for each sample. During each test, the system uses one or more of the following controls:

- **Internal control (IC**)—Verifies the performance of the PCR reagents and prevents a false negative result. The internal control PCR assay assesses if there is any inhibition, possibly by components, in the test sample. The internal control is provided in the cartridge and should be positive in a negative sample.
- **Endogenous control (EC)**—Normalises targets and ensures sufficient sample is used in the test. Because of its low variability, the endogenous control can also be used to indicate sample-inhibitor contamination. The endogenous control is taken from the sample sample.

Each test includes a Sample Volume Adequacy (SVA), a Sample Processing Control (SPC) and Probe Check Control (PCC).

Sample Volume Adequacy (SVA): Ensures that the sample was correctly added to the cartridge. The SVA verifies that the correct volume of sample has been added in the sample chamber. The SVA passes if it meets the validated acceptance criteria. If the SVA does not pass, an ERROR 2096 will display if there is no sample or an ERROR 2097 if there is not enough sample. The system will prevent the user from resuming the test.

Sample Processing Control (SPC): Ensures that the sample was correctly processed. The SPC is an Armoured RNA in the form of a dry bead that is included in each cartridge to verify adequate processing of the sample virus. The SPC verifies that lysis of HIV-1 has occurred if the organism is present and verifies that the sample processing is adequate. Additionally, this control detects sample associated inhibition of the RT-PCR reaction. The SPC should be positive in a negative sample and can be negative or positive in a positive sample. The SPC passes if it meets the validated acceptance criteria.

In addition to the controls, the GeneXpert Dx instrument performs a probe check during the first stage of the test.

Probe Check Control (PCC): Before the start of the PCR reaction, the GeneXpert Instrument System measures the fluorescence signal from the probes to monitor bead rehydration, reaction tube filling, probe integrity, and dye stability. The PCC passes if it meets the validated acceptance criteria.

External Controls: Internal quality controls should be done weekly by using known HIV-1 DETECTED and HIV -1 NOT DETECTED as the same as the routine EID/DBS samples.

8.4.13 Procedural steps

Follow the actions described step by step to do each specific task

Start-up the GeneXpert instrument

- Turn on the GeneXpert Dx instrument, and then turn on the computer.
- On the Windows desktop, double-click the GeneXpert Dx shortcut icon.
- Log on to the GeneXpert Dx System software using your user's name and password.
- Click on "CHECK STATUS" and check if modules are available. If not proceed to "Troubleshooting" in User manual.

Note: Before start processing the sample, check that the GeneXpert instrument is functioning and the modules are available.

Preparing of cartridge(s) for EDTA anticoagulated Whole Blood

i. Wear protective disposable gloves.
ii. Disinfect the work area by 0.5 % bleach solution followed by 70 % alcohol
iii. Wear protective disposable powder free gloves. iv. Label the Sample Reagent vial with the sample identification.

iv. Inspect the test cartridge for damage. If damaged, do not use.
v. Open the cartridge lid.
vi. Use the 1 mL transfer pipette provided to transfer 750 µL of the sample reagent into the sample chamber of the cartridge.
vii. Allow the Sample Reagent to adjust to room temperature and mix the bottle by inverting before transferring to the cartridge. Transfer exactly 750 µL into the sample chamber of the cartridge.
viii. Mix the Whole Blood sample by inverting the vial (EDTA or lavender-top tube) at least seven times. Immediately transfer 100 µL using the micropipette provided by squeezing the upper bulb and then releasing to aspirate the blood.
ix. Squeeze again to dispense the blood into the sample chamber of the cartridge where it will mix with the Sample Reagent already in the sample chamber. Alternatively, use an automatic pipette to dispense the blood into the sample chamber of the cartridge. Do **NOT** pour the sample into the chamber!

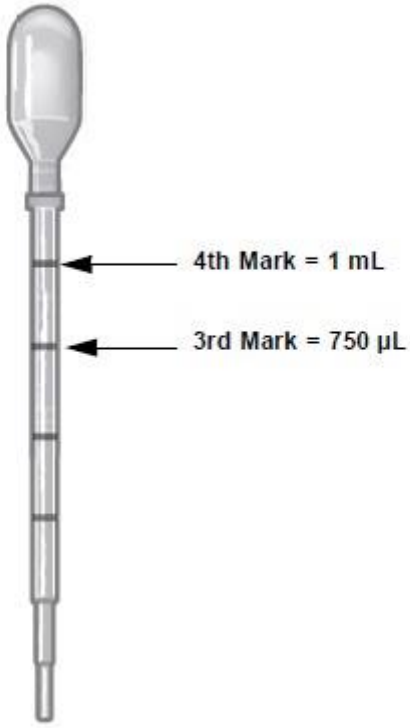


Figure 8. HIV-1 Qual Assay 1 mL Transfer Pipette

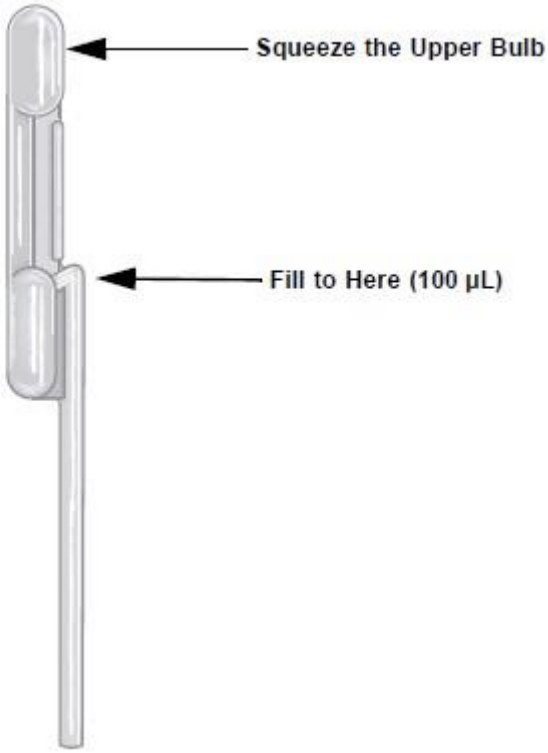


Figure 9. HIV-1 Qual Assay 100 µL Transfer Micropipette

Figure 10. HIV-1 Qual Assay Cartridge (Top View)

DBS sample

i. Wear protective disposable gloves.
ii. Disinfect the working area.
iii. Wear protective disposable powder free gloves.
iv. Before starting, remove the vial containing the Sample Reagent from the kit and, if it was refrigerated, allow to adjust to room temperature. If the vial has not been stored in an upright position, make sure the buffer is settled in the bottom by giving the vial a firm shake.
v. Turn on Thermo Mixer to heat to 56 °C.
vi. Label the Sample Reagent vial with the sample identification.

vii. Using sterilised scissors, excise one entire DBS from the filter paper card for each sample. Follow the delineated lines when excising the DBS. If perforated circles are used, use clean and sterile pipette tips to detach the DBS.
viii. Unscrew the lid on the vial containing the Sample Reagent and place one DBS in the vial. Ensure that the DBS is fully submerged in the Sample Reagent buffer.
ix. Place the vial with the DBS in a Thermo Mixer and incubate for 15 minutes at 56°C while rotating at 500 rpm.
x. Inspect the test cartridge for damage. If damaged, do not use.
xi. Open the cartridge lid
xii. Use the 1 mL transfer pipette provided to transfer all the liquid from the lysed DBS sample into the sample chamber of the cartridge. Ensure the pipette is filled above the third mark on the transfer pipette. Avoid suction of the DBS with the pipette. Do **NOT** pour the sample into the chamber!
xiii. Close the cartridge lid, ready to start the test.

Notes Change gloves between sample, and each new procedure.

Starting the Test

i. In the GeneXpert System window, click **Create Test.** The scan Cartridge Barcode dialog box appears.
ii. Scan the barcode on the HIV-1 Qual assay cartridge.
iii. Using the barcode information, the software automatically fills the boxes for the following fields: Select Assay, Reagent Lot ID, Cartridge SN, and Expiration Date.
iv. Type the Patient ID, make sure the Patient ID is typed correctly.
v. Type in the **Sample ID**. Make sure the Sample ID is typed correctly.
vi. Open the instrument module door with the blinking green light and load the cartridge.
vii. Click **Start Test** (Gene Xpert Dx). Enter you're your user name and password, if requested.
viii. Close the door. ix. The test starts and the green light stops blinking. When the test is finished, the light turns off.
ix. Wait until the system releases the door lock before opening the module door and removing the cartridge.

8.4.14 Biological Reference Intervals.

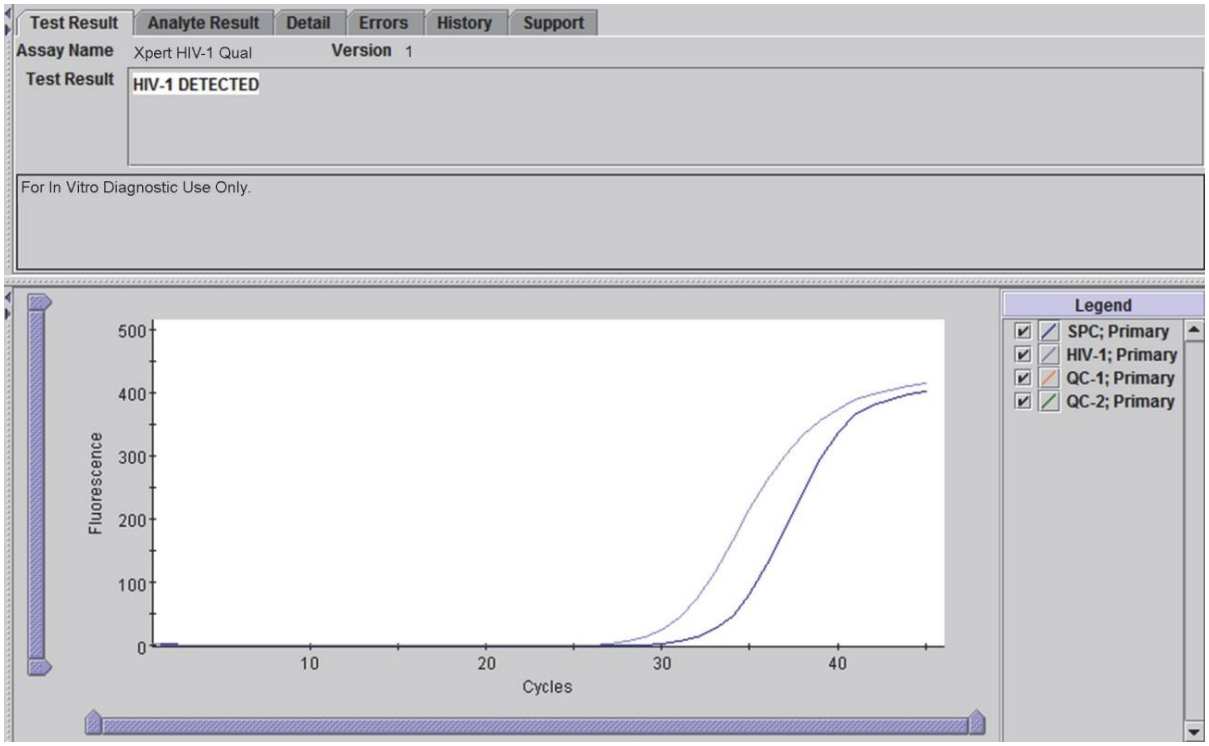
Not Applicable.

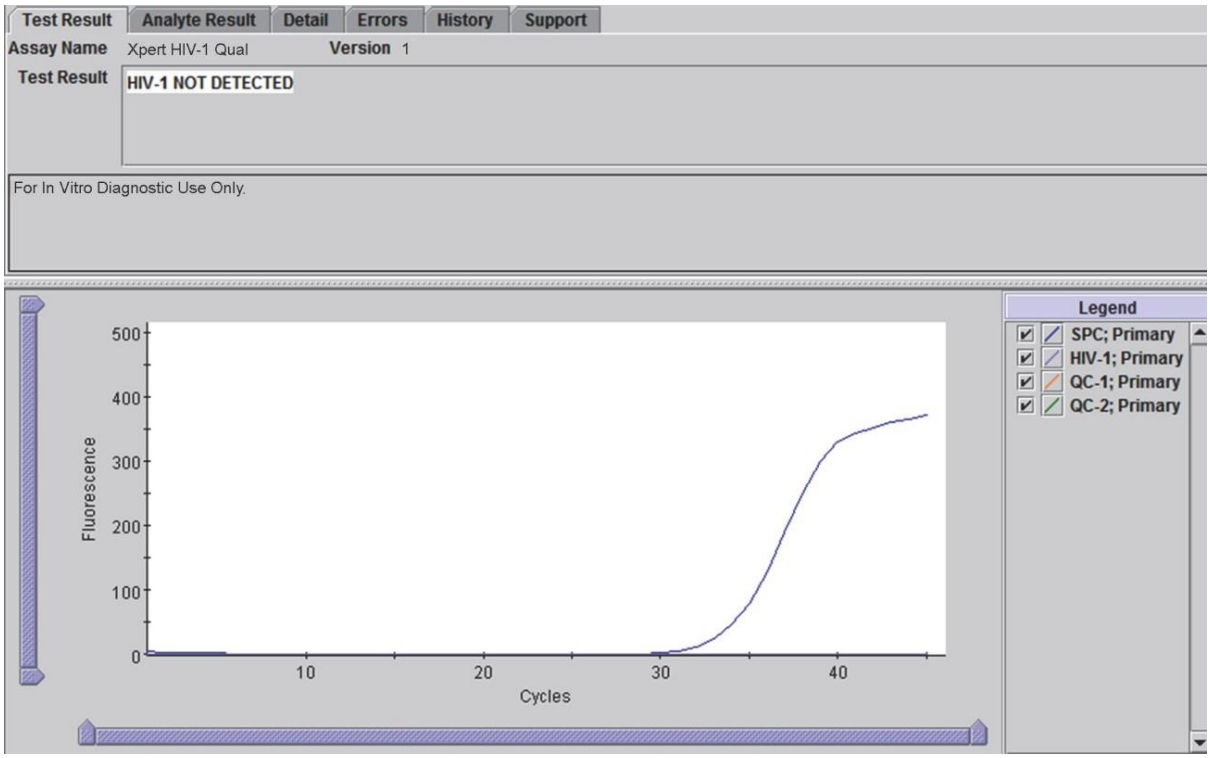
8.4.15 Interpretation and reporting of Results

The results are interpreted automatically by the GeneXpert Instrument System from measured fluorescent signals and embedded calculation algorithms and are clearly shown in the View Results window. Possible results are shown in Table below:

Result	**Interpretation**
HIV-1 DETECTED See Figure 1.	The HIV-1 target nucleic acids are detected.

Result	Interpretation
	• The HIV-1 target nucleic acids have a Ct within the valid range. • SPC: NA (not applicable); SPC is ignored because the HIV-1 target amplification occurred. • Probe Check: PASS; all probe check results pass.
HIV-1 NOT DETECTED See Figure 2.	The HIV-1 target nucleic acids are not detected. SPC meets acceptance criteria. • SPC: PASS; SPC has a Ct within the valid range. • Probe Check: PASS; all probe check results pass.
INVALID	Presence or absence of the HIV-1 target nucleic acids cannot be determined. Repeat test with new sample and cartridge. • SPC: FAIL; SPC Ct is not within valid range. • Probe Check: PASS; all probe check results pass
ERROR	Presence or absence of HIV-1 target nucleic acids cannot be determined. Repeat test with new sample and cartridge. • HIV-1: NO RESULT • SPC: NO RESULT • Probe Check: FAIL*; all or one of the probe check results fail. *If the probe check passed, the error is caused by the maximum pressure limit exceeding the acceptable range or by a system component failure.
NO RESULT	Presence or absence of HIV-1 target nucleic acids cannot be determined. Repeat test with new sample and cartridge. A NO RESULT indicates that insufficient data were collected. For example, the operator stopped a test that was in progress. • HIV-1: NO RESULT • SPC: NO RESULT • Probe Check: NA (not applicable).





8.4.16 Limitation of the Procedure and Sources of Error.

Good laboratory practices and changing gloves between handling specimens are recommended to avoid contamination of reagents.

Rare mutations within the target region of the HIV-1 Qual assay may affect primer and/or probe binding resulting in failure to detect the virus.

A negative test result does not preclude HIV-1 infection. Results from the HIV-1 Qual assay should be interpreted in conjunction with clinical presentation and other laboratory markers

8.4.17 Performance Characteristics

Refer to the manufacture package insert for detailed information on Performance Characteristics of the testing procedure.

8.4.18 Supporting Documents

Sample collection manual, Quality manual

8.4.19 References

1. Ministry of Health, Community Development, Gender, Elderly and Children, Standard
2. Operating Procedures for qualitative HIV-1 HEID testing using GeneXpert
3. Xpert HIV-1 Qual -1 Assay Package Insert 308-3048 Rev J
4. GeneXpert Dx System. Operator Manual

CHAPTER 9: ANATOMICAL PATHOLOGY

9.1 PROCEDURE FOR PERFOMING SEMINALYSIS

9.1.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for performing semen analysis for determining male fertility.

9.1.2 Scope

This procedure is to be used in Hospital laboratory for semen analysis

9.1.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained Medical Laboratory Technicians, Technologists and scientists are responsible for implementing this test procedure.

The Head of Unit is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation of this procedure.

9.1.4 Principle

Investigating male fertility status as well as monitoring spermatogenesis during and following male fertility regulation.

9.1.5 Sample requirements

Semen sample collected in leak proof, plastic or glass container. Collect sample following four days of sexual abstinence.

9.1.6 Equipment

Improved Neubauer counting chamber, Microscope

9.1.7 Materials

Reagent	**Consumables**
Isotonic sterile saline, Crystal violet, 70% Ethanol, Formalin 4%, Sodium bicarbonate, distilled water, Aniline Blue, Distilled Water or phosphate buffer, Sodium Chloride, Distilled water, Eosin Y, Resorcinol 1N Hydrochloric acid, Distilled water	Freshly produced semen Retrograde Ejaculate Concentrate Cryo-semen in tube Surgically obtained

Reagent preparation

a) Semen Diluent 1

Isotonic sterile saline	240 ml
Crystal violet	1.0 g
70% Ethanol	50.0 ml

Note: Store in the refrigerator

b) Semen Diluent 2

Formalin 4%	1 ml
Sodium bicarbonate	5.0 g
Distilled water	100.0 ml

c) 0.1% Aniline blue solution

Aniline Blue	0.1g
Distilled Water or phosphate buffer	100 mls

Note: The concentration of Aniline Blue solution can be adjusted to suit the specific needs of the analysis, but a concentration of 0.1% is commonly used for sperm viability testing. It is important to prepare fresh Aniline Blue solution for each analysis and to avoid exposure to light, as this can degrade the stain. d) 0.5% Eosin solution

Sodium Chloride	0.9 g
Distilled water	100ml
Eosin Y	0.5 g

Dissolve Sodium chloride to distilled water then add Eosin Y. e) Resorcinol-hydrochloric acid (RHA)

Resorcinol	1 g
1N Hydrochloric acid	1 ml
Distilled water	1 ml

9.1.8 Storage and stability

The semen should be kept between 20 °C to 37 °C and should be examined within 1 hour after collection

9.1.9 Safety

- Semen samples may contain dangerous infectious agents (e.g. human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis viruses or herpes simplex virus) and should therefore be handled as a biohazard.
- Always wear gloves, mask and goggles when handling Xylene.

- Ethanol is flammable. Store properly in flammable cabinet. Use gloves and gown when working will ethanol solutions.
- Wear solvent-resistant gloves (e.g., nitrile) and a fluid-impervious laboratory coat at all times when working with stains. Wear goggles when cleaning and changing solutions.

9.1.10 Calibration

All auxiliary equipment should be calibrated annually

9.1.11 Quality control

Known azoospermic fixed slide and known smear with sperms can be used as control

Control materials can be obtained in house. Also control materials obtained commercially might be useful to verify quality of the procedure.

9.1.12 Procedure Steps

Macroscopic Examination		
STEP	PARAMETERS	ACTION
A)	Appearance	Report the appearance of the semen within an hour o collection. E.g.:
B)	Liquefaction	• Leave it at room temperature or incubate the sample for 20 - 30 minutes after collection. • Check a well-mixed sample for completion of liquefaction, if not wait for an additional few minutes. • For further testing, semen must be fully liquefied by either mechanical mixing or catalisation by an enzyme. Needling must not be used.
C)	Volume	Determine the sample volume. • A graduated 5 or 10 ml pipette or plastic disposable, graduated pipettes may be used. • Volume should not be determined using a syringe and needle as the rubber plunger and needle have an effect on sperm motility. Rubber less syringes can be used
D)	Viscosity	Using a Pasteur pipette draw a portion of the sample and then allow a drop to fall back in the sample container, watch how the drop “strings” down before breaking. • Normal – When a drop strings to a length of 0.5 to 1cm • Increased – When a drop strings out more than 2 cm • Reduced – When a drop breaks out without stringing down

Microscopy

a) Sperm Motility

Quantitative Motility is determined by estimating visually the percentage of motile spermatozoa and non-motile spermatozoa.

Qualitative Motility is determined subjectively by grading the forward progression made by the largest number of spermatozoa, as none, poor, good and excellent. Normal Motility is shown by 60% or greater motile spermatozoa with the majority exhibiting good to excellent forward progression at one half hour to 3 hours after ejaculation.

Motility Assessment in Sufficient Sperm cells

Step	***Action***
A)	Deliver 10µl of well-mixed semen onto glass slide and cover with a 22x22mm coverslip. Approx. 20µl for 22x50mm coverslip or 24µl for 24x50mm coverslip
B)	Allow to settle for approximately 1 minute.
C)	Microscopically examine the semen with a 20x or 40x magnification lens with a reticle eyepiece.
D)	Examine and score 10 random moving sperms in a single field by analysing their movements. then
E)	Examine at least 10 fields (100sperms) at the centre of the cover slipped area and assess the average percentage of motile spermatozoa seen.

Motility Assessment in Insufficient sperm cells

Step	***Action***
1	Dilute the semen in the conical tube with HTF culture media and mix well
2	Centrifuge the mixture at 2000rpm for 10 minutes
3	Using a Pasteur pipette, remove the supernatant and pipette the a drop of sediment onto a slide then warm for approx. 5 minutes
4	Microscopically examine the semen with a 20x or 40x magnification lens with a reticule eyepiece.
5	Examine and score 10 random moving sperms in a single field by analysing their movements. then
6	Examine at least 10 fields (100sperms) at the centre of the cover slipped area and assess the average percentage of motile spermatozoa seen.

Assess only intact spermatozoa (defined as having a head and a tail; since only intact spermatozoa are counted for sperm concentration. Do not count motile pinheads.

Vitality staining

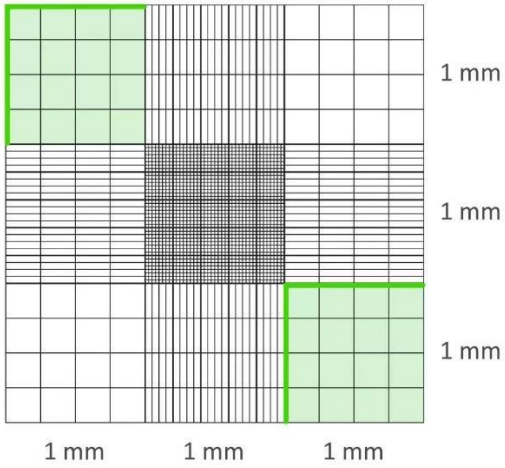
Sperm vitality, as estimated by assessing the membrane integrity of the cells, maybe determined routinely on all samples, but is especially important for samples with less than about 30% progressively motile spermatozoa. This test can provide a check on the motility evaluation, since the percentage of dead cells should not exceed (within sampling error) the percentage of immotile spermatozoa. The percentage of viable cells normally exceeds that of motile cells.

Supravital staining: The staining of live spermatozoa (vital) outside (supra) the human body.

i. Take a glass slide and Add 1 drop of 0.1% Aniline Blue stain or 0.5% Eosin to 1 drop of semen (± 50µl).
ii. Mix gently.
iii. Make duplicate thin smears of above mixture on the glass
iv. slides.
v. Allow the slides to air dry.
vi. Using the 40x or 100 x oil immersion lenses, screen at least 100 spermatozoa.
vii. Spermatozoa that appear white (unstained) are recorded as alive (Vital), and those showing blue cytoplasmic coloration (stained) are recorded as dead (Non-Vital). In case Eosin is used the colour will be pink
viii. For quality control reasons, count 100 spermatozoa per slide, and the difference of the counts on both slides must not differ by more than 10%. This is determined by verifying that the difference between the two counts of vital spermatozoa is less than 1/20 of their sums.
ix. If the difference is greater than 10%, a third count must be carried out and the average of the three must be calculated and reported as a percentage of vital spermatozoa.
x. When counting various fields on the slide keep away from the edges. xi. Sperm vitality should be assessed as soon as possible after liquefaction of the semen sample, preferably at 30 minutes, but in any case, within 1 hour of ejaculation, to prevent observation of deleterious effects of dehydration or of changes in temperature on vitality.

Sperm Concentration using a Neubauer Counting Chamber

Step	***Parameter***	***Action***
1	Dilution	• Use a micropipette to dispense the appropriate amount of fixative/diluent into two dilution vials. • Mix the semen sample well • Aspirate the appropriate volume of semen immediately after mixing, allowing no time for the spermatozoa to settle out of suspension • Wipe the semen off the outside of the pipette tip, taking care not to touch the opening of the tip. • Dispense the semen into the fixative and rinse the pipette tip by aspirating and expressing the fixative. • Mix the semen sample well again, and prepare the replicate dilution following the steps above. • Mix the first dilution thoroughly by for 10 seconds. Immediately remove approximately 10 µl of fixed/diluted suspension, to avoid settling of the spermatozoa.
2	Neubauer Chamber set up and loading	• Touch the pipette tip carefully against the lower edge of one of the chambers at the V-shaped groove.

Step	*Parameter*	*Action*
		• Depress the plunger of the pipette slowly, allowing the chamber to fill by capillary action. The coverslip should not be moved during filling, and the chamber should not be overfilled (when the coverslip may be seen to move) or under filled (when air occupies some of the chamber area). • Mix the second dilution, as above, and immediately remove a second 10- l aliquot. Load the second chamber of the haemocytometer following the steps above. • Store the haemocytometer horizontally for at least 4 minutes at room temperature in a humid chamber (e.g. on water-saturated filter paper in a covered Petri dish) to prevent drying out. The immobilised cells will sediment onto the grid during this time.
3	Counting	 • First assess the 2 corner grids of one side of the improved Neubauer chamber, row by row. • Count sperms in all small 16 squares of the upper left square • Free/loose heads and pinheads are not counted. Do not count sperm whose heads touch the upper or left side of the block being counted. • Continue counting the other diagonal square which is the right bottom.
4	Calculations	• Calculate the sum of the two numbers obtained from both 2 squares. • Then calculate using the formula: - n= (N x 10 x 20 x 1000) / 2, see the explanation below • The results should be reported as number of sperms in Millions per ml e.g. 30mil/ml

Note: Total number of sperm per mL (n) = (Number of sperm counted in two corner squares x 10 x 20 x 1000) / 2 Where:

- N=Number of sperm counted in two corner squares = the number of sperm counted in the two corner squares of the Improved Neubauer Chamber
- 10 = the conversion factor from squares to millions of sperm
- 20 = the dilution factor of 1:20
- 1000 = the conversion factor from millilitres to microliters
- 2 = the number of corner squares counted

Table 1. Determining the required dilution for Neubauer Chamber

Spermatozoa /x40 field	**Spermatozoa /x20**	**Dilution required**	**Semen (µl)**	**Diluent (µl)**	**Chamber**	**Area to be assessed**
>101	>404	1:20 (1+19)	50	950	Improved Neubauer chamber	Diagonal Corner grids
16-100	64-400	1:5 (1+4)	50	200	Improved Neubauer chamber	Diagonal Corner grids
2-15	8-60	1:2 (1+1)	50	50	Improved Neubauer chamber	Diagonal Corner grids
<2	<8	1:2	50	50	Improved Neubauer chamber	All Grids or Entire Slide

Sperm Morphology

Step	***Parameter***	***Action***
A)	Making Smears & Staining	• Place 1 drop of semen in centre of a clean slide. • Place a second slide on top of the first slide and allow the semen to spread between them. • Gently pull the two slides apart using a sliding action thus making 2 slides simultaneously. • Allow the slides to air dry. • Fix the smears with 95% ethanol or 50/50 ether/ethanol. • Stain the slides using the Papanicolaou's staining procedure. • Mount the slides with DPX
B)	Counting of Spermatozoa	• Count at least 100 spermatozoa (preferably 200) on each slide at x100 oil magnification.

		• Each sperm is counted according to the scoring system being used. • If the morphology count differs by more than 10%, recount both slides. • Calculate the mean of the counts. • Report in percentages of both Normal and Abnormal morphologies.

Biochemistry

a). Semen Fructose

This is an indicator of the secretory function of the seminal vesicles and is important in cases of **azoospermia**, where negative semen fructose levels may indicate congenital bilateral absence of the seminal vesicles and vas deferens.

Step	***Action***
A)	Take a semen sample and dilute it in saline or buffer solution, if necessary.
B)	Mix the semen sample with RHA solution in a proportion of 1:1, usually 2-3 drops of semen and 2-3 drops of RHA solution.
C)	Incubate the mixture for 5-10 minutes at 37°C.
D)	Observe the mixture for any colour change, typically from yellow to blue or green, indicating the presence of fructose.
E)	The test is considered positive if the colour changes from yellow to blue or green, indicating the presence of fructose in the semen. If there is no colour change, the test is considered negative.

Note: It's important to note that a positive result in the semen fructose test indicates the presence of functional sperm, but it is not a definitive test for male fertility. Other factors such as sperm count, motility, and morphology also contribute to male fertility. **b). Measure the pH**

i. Using a narrow range pH paper, e.g. pH 6.4–8.0, spread a drop of liquefied semen on the paper.
ii. After 30 seconds, record the ph.
iii. pH of normal semen: Should be pH 7.2 or more within 1 hour of ejaculation.
iv. When the pH is over 7.8 this may be due to infection.
v. When the pH is below 7.0 and the semen is found to contain no sperm, this may indicate dysgenesis (failure to develop) of the vas deferens, seminal vesicles or epididymis

9.1.13 Biological Reference Intervals

i. Appearance homogenous grey
ii. Volume 2-5mls

iii. Motility –forward progressive movement over 50% of spermatozoa are motile within 1hrs of ejaculation
iv. Viscosity about 1.5cm to 2cm
v. PH 7.2-7.7 within one hour of ejaculation
vi. Sperm count 20-150 million per ml
vii. Fructose level

9.1.14 Interpretation and Reporting of Results

Sample which met the criteria of reference range above is normal

Appearance: colour

Volume: mls

Motility: forward progressive movement, sluggish movement or Immotile

Viscosity: cm pH

Sperm count million per ml

Oligospermia = Decreased number of spermatozoa in the semen

Azoospermia = Lack of live spermatozoa in the semen

Necrospermia = Condition in which the spermatozoa of the semen are dead or Motionless

9.1.15 Limitations of the Procedure and Sources of Error

- Delaying sample from time collected to laboratory affect results
- Coitus interrupts method of collection may affect concentration of spermatozoa because first portion of ejaculation may be lost, also acidic pH of vaginal affect sperm motility and semen may be contaminated with cells and bacteria If the temperature is not adhered during transportation, affects the results

9.1.16 Performance Characteristics Not applicable

9.1.17 Supporting documents

- Laboratory quality policy manual
- Laboratory safety policy manual
- Laboratory sample collection manual

9.1.18 References

- Bancroft JD, Stevens, Alan. *Theory and Practice of Histological Techniques 6th* ed. Churchill Livingstone; 2008.

- WHO laboratory manual for the Examination and processing of human semen,5th edition. 2010
- Medical laboratory manual for tropical countries by Monica Cheesbrough 2nd edition 2010

9.2 PROCEDURE FOR MORTUARY SERVICES

9.2.1 Purpose

This procedure provides instructions for providing mortuary services including autopsy practice, embalming as well as safety of personnel, visitors and community.

9.2.2 Scope

This document provides guidelines for the mortuary staff and administration recommended standards for mortuary facilities in settings and for communication between staff involved in autopsy procedures or autopsy related processes.

Body storage

A body cold store having a capacity appropriate for the mortuary workload should be maintained at a temperature of about 2- 6 ^{o}C.

If long term storage is required, the body should have maintained at approximately 20^{o}C.

Labelling procedures should be established so that body identification is made easy.

9.2.3 Responsibility

Qualified and trained mortuary personnel are responsible for implementing this procedure.

The Head of Laboratory is responsible for ensuring the effective implementation and maintenance of this procedure.

9.2.4 Principle Not applicable

9.2.5 Sample requirements Not applicable

9.2.6 Equipment

Refrigerator, Trolley, Post-mortem kit

9.2.7 Materials

10% formalin, Gloves, Leak proof bag, gloves, water resistant gown/plastic apron over water repellent gown, and surgical masks, goggles or face shield, shoe covers

9.2.8 Storage and stability

- Dead body: For short term store at 2-6°C, For long term store -20°C
- 10% formalin: Store at room temperature

9.2.9 Safety

- PPE shall be used to prevent skin and mucous membrane contact with blood and other body fluid. These may include the use of gloves, N95 masks, protective eye wear, face shields, shoe covers, plastic aprons/gowns hair bornets, cut resistant gloves and laboratory coats.
- Surgical or post mortem gloves must be worn by all personnel involved in the autopsy procedure

Hand washing:

i. Hand and other skin surface should be washed with soaps and water immediately after contact with blood or other body fluid. Hand shall be washed each time with running water and soap.
ii. Sufficient and appropriate disinfectant should be 0.5% chlorine solution for routine mortuary work, embalming and post-mortem, then removed and rinsed with distilled water before being dried and stored.
iii. Appropriate vaccination and follow up of immunity status should be offered to all mortuary staff and record should be maintained including any refusal of an offer of immunisation.
iv. The Mortuary personnel is responsible to ensuring that he/she complies with policies guarding personal safety, handling of bodies and bodily fluids as well as the safe operation of Mortuary equipment.
v. Put bio hazardous waste in a red biohazard bag
vi. Put the red bag in the bio hazardous waste box
vii. Tape box closed
viii. Put taped box in bio hazardous waste pick up location
ix. The Medical Attendants must wear complete PPE when handling hazardous waste.

Autopsy Instruments:

- All instruments are to be cleaned and disinfected between examinations, instruments should be dried and laid out on a non-metal surface
- Autopsy Tables and Garbage Disposals: Autopsy tables should be cleaned and disinfected between autopsies or at the end of the day
- Following the autopsy, the disposals and drain on each autopsy table should be cleaned.

9.2.10 Calibration

Calibration for refrigerators should be done as per schedule

9.2.11 Quality control Not applicable

9.2.12 Procedure for receiving died body from inside the facility.

After receiving a call from the ward there is a dead body the following procedure should be followed.

- Prepare the trolley by making sure it is well covered.
- Make sure you have put on proper personal protective equipment such as apron, face mask, boot and gloves.

9.2.13 In the ward you should observe the following before:

If the dead body is well labelled

> If the mortuary forms have been filled in and signed by the nurse

>Make sure you sign the death book before you take the body

9.2.14 Once you reach in the mortuary do the documentation first

- inform the relatives about the process that they should follow including how to do the payments and how to get the discharge summary.
- Dead body should be kept in a cooling unit (with tags as above)
- Make sure to label on the form the number of the fridge (unit) and the fridge should have a tag number which should match with that attached to the body inside.

Note: Tags have to be attached to the big toes /or around the circumference of the ankle

Receiving dead body from outside the facility brought by police, relatives or good Samaritans.

After receiving a dead body from the police or relatives from home the following procedures should be followed

i. First get the information, document the police/transport ID/telephone number
ii. Prepare the trolley to receive the dead body
iii. Check the body appearance and attached properties, if it's a police case after documentations put the dead body directly to the cooling unit and wait for post-mortem exam to be done.
iv. Provide the mortuary identity card to the police, if will be later on provided to the relative
v. If it's a home cases after documentation inform the relatives about the other process of payments.
vi. After payments request the nearby relative to attend the embalming procedure then keep the dead body in the cooling unit after following the identification procedure and make sure it is well labelled.
vii. Make sure you label the form to indicate which unit the dead body has been put in.

9.2.15 Releasing the died body from mortuary to relatives

Before giving out dead bodies following procedure should be followed;

i. For the dead body from the facility make sure the relative comes with the discharge summary, burial certificate and the proper receipt.
ii. Check if the information has been filled well in the mortuary register book.
iii. When relative have accomplished all the process and have all the form needed, assist them to prepare the dead body and keep it in a good condition
iv. Allow them to leave after finishing all the process.
v. For out - patients make sure the relatives come with the burial certificate/or letter from local government if they have it and proper receipts.
vi. When they have accomplished all process, assist them to prepare the body in the washer rooms and make sure equipment, water and sanitation is well controlled.

9.2.16 Handling personal property and clothing

Personal property that arrives with decedent remains shall be processed as follows;

i. Decedent's personnel property will be entered into register book upon admission.
ii. Clothing should be described by colours and items
iii. Personal effect such as jewellery, watch as well as money should only be removed in the presence of relatives/police.
iv. Personal effects such as jewellery should be described in non-valuable terms e.g. yellow metal or coloured stone**.**

9.2.17 Embalming procedure

It consists of arterial infusion of embalming fluid (10% Formalin). Since most bodies are not disposed within 72hrs after death, hence the importance of a mortuary establishing this service.

i. Arrange all your equipment that are needed for embalming.
ii. Prepare the formalin solution 10% concentration
iii. Put on the proper protective equipment
iv. Prepare the body to be embalmed
v. Start the embalming procedure
vi. Make sure that body has a label and tag
vii. Clean the area and the equipment that have been used.

9.2.18 Autopsy procedure

i. Autopsy has to be complete routinely.
ii. A complete autopsy is defined to include a detailed external examination as entire body and an internal examination to include the removal and dissection of all thoraco –abdominal and neck organs, opening the head with the removal and examination of the brain
iii. A complete autopsy does not require histological examination

iv. A patient autopsy is defined as an examination that surface any part of the defined complete autopsy e.g. not opening any of the body cavities or not examining organs.
v. An external examination is defined as a detailed description of the decedents remains including scars, surgical incisions, medical devices and tattoos.

9.2.19 Pre-autopsy procedures

Prior to autopsy the medical attendant will set up the autopsy work room according to the case examination status including preparing tables for body dissection, preparing instruments, preparing sample containers and collection tubes, preparing paper work for daily case load and taking radiographs.

Autopsy work room should be set up with the following instruments supplies, in certain cases it will be necessary to equip the autopsy work room with specialised instruments or additional supplies.

9.2.20 The standard autopsy precautions including using:

i. A surgical scrub or suits
ii. Surgical cap
iii. Impervious gown of apron with full sleeves coverage
iv. A form of eye protection e.g. goggles or face shield
v. Shoe covers
vi. Double surgical gloves with interposed layer of cut proof synthetic mesh.
vii. Surgical masks that may protect nose and mouth from splashes of body fluids but do not always offer protection from airborne pathogens
viii. Use of respiration in adequate resources
ix. Safety practices to prevent injury from sharp items including hand washing as necessary after glove removal

9.2.21 Peri autopsy procedure

i. Remove bodies from body storage colder in the stage in autopsy suits
ii. Identification by the relatives and authorised photographer can take photos
iii. Undress and transfer remaining to autopsy table
iv. Remove medical intervention devices and wash remains
v. Assist photographer in taking autopsy photographs and ID photos
vi. Perform initial Y or median incision
vii. Remove chest plate
viii. Open thoracic and abdominal cavities
ix. Medical attendant has to assist the pathologist in obtaining toxicology samples
x. (blood, bile, urine, vitreous, gastric, liver, brain)
xi. Remove organs
xii. Weigh and record organs weight
xiii. Open the entire length of the gastro intestinal tract
xiv. Elevate head
xv. Incise and reflect scalp
xvi. Remove brain
xvii. Remove duct

xviii. Obtain decedents fingerprints
xix. Perform other autopsy procedures as directed (removing spinal cord, opening inner extremities to exam pulmonary thrombo –emboli, stripping pavietal pleural, incising the psoas muscles, assisting with preparation of sex kits and DNA cards. Measure the length of a died.

9.2.22 Post autopsy procedures

i. Put organs in viscera bag
ii. Replace body organs
iii. Close the thoracic, abdominal and cranial cavities with sutures
iv. Clean the body and replace in body bag
v. Indicate completion of examination by inciting a ONE on body bag
vi. Return body to refrigerated storage vii. Put sample in designated area depending on processing instructions;

   a) Toxicology samples are put in toxicology refrigerator in the yellow tray labelled" toxicology"
   b) Histology sections are put in the yellow tray on top of toxicology refrigerator labelled "histology"
   c) Microbiology sample are put in the yellow tray on top of toxicology refrigerator labelled "micro"

vii. Thoroughly clean and disinfect autopsy and dissection tables, sinks, drains, instruments, dry erase boards floor area
viii. Between examinations all instruments surfaces should be cleaned with a 10% bleach solution.

9.2.23 Body storage and organisation

i. Body should be stored in clean, closed body bags with no leakage of fluids on rack or tray
ii. Place body in empty compartment head toward the wall
iii. Tag body storage compartment with decedent name and case number
iv. Log body on body part(s) into box and cart inventory sheet
v. Maintain an accurate box or cart inventory sheet. The inventory sheet should be updated appropriate daily
vi. Empty trays to the cleaned and disinfected and kept in box
vii. All trays should be cleaned and disinfected following a release or transfer

9.2.24 Receiving and releasing remains

Receiving Remains;

i. Identify ID bracelet with Police to tag
ii. Obtain appropriate signatures on transport notification form
iii. Take photography using the camera
iv. Obtain decedent height and weight
v. Record personal property (clothing)
vi. Complete intake of body into the logbook

vii. Complete intake of body in FACTS
viii. Log body on box and cart sheet
ix. Place body in refrigerated storage

Releasing Remains:

i. Confirm in FACTS that the body is ready to be released and that the receipt of remain seen has been properly completed by communications unit.
ii. Print and sign copy of the Receipt of remains form.
iii. Sign body out of release logbook
iv. Obtain funeral home representatives signatures, number and initials where appropriate
v. Have to tag and receipt of remains form witnesses
vi. Clean and disinfect tray before retaining it to cold box

9.2.25 Sample Storage and Retrieval

All stock specimens retained in clean and dry bottle in 10% buffered formalin label write the Post Mortem Examination Number, name, age, sex, address and anatomical site

9.2.26 Transportation of remains

If a body is to be shipped out of the country, a letter stating that the autopsy showed no evidence of any infections or communicable diseases is required.

In the contents of such a letter must include Identification details such as name and date of death that match the details in the transit/burial permit or death certificate.

9.2.27 Supporting documents

National guideline for operating of Mortuary services 2020, National guideline for establishment of Mortuary services 2020, IPC Guideline 2018

9.2.28 References

1 Standard guidelines for the facilities and operation of mortuaries in Tanzania 2008
2 Hutchins GM. Practice guidelines for autopsy performance. Archives of pathology and laboratory medicine, 1994, 118(1):19-25
3 Advices ED, Sims KL. Enhancing autopsy performance and reporting. A system for a 5-day completion time. Archives of pathology and laboratory medicine,1996,120(3):249-53.

Annex 1: List of Subject Matter Experts who developed these SOPs

No	NAME	TITILE	FACILITY
1.	Adam Mwakyoma	Laboratory Scientist	Kilimanjaro Christian Medical Centre (KCMC), Moshi
2.	Amedeus Mushi	Laboratory Scientist & Epidemiologist	HLPC, MoH, Dodoma
3.	Anjela Maufi	Laboratory Scientist	Kitete RRH, Tabora
4.	Antusa Massawe	Laboratory Scientist	Dunga H/C, Tanga
5.	Baraka Mathias	Laboratory Scientist	Maranatha Hospital, Mbeya
6.	Betrand Msemwa	Microbiology & Manyara	Catholic University of Health and Alliened Sciences (CUHAS), Mwanza
7.	Bezard Ngumbuchi	Quality Officer	PHLB, Dodoma
8.	Ceif Abdul	Quality Officer	NPHL, Dar es Salaam
9.	David Ocheng	Laboratory Expert/ Consultant	Ilala, Dar es Salaam
10.	Desmond Kileo	ICTO	DHCTSU, MoH, Dodoma
11.	Dickson Charles Kakuntebe	Laboratory Scientist	Cardinal Rugambwa Hospital, Dar es Salaam
12.	Dominic Fwiling'afu	Registrar	PHLB, MoH, Dodoma
13.	Dr. Alex Magesa	DDS	DHCTSU, MoH, Dodoma
14.	Dr. Goodluck Tesha	Epidemiologist	Jhpiego, Dar es Salaam
15.	Dunstan Haule	Laboratory Quality Officer	NBTS-HQ, Dar es Salaam
16.	Edward Lushishi	Laboratory Technologist	Singida RRH, Singida
17.	Emmanuel Ndaki	Laboratory Scientist	NBTS Lake zone, Mwanza
18.	Eng. Gervas H. Swai	Biomedical Engineer	DHCTSU, MoH, Dodoma
19.	Eng. Suniva S. C. Haule	Head Health Care and Technical Services	DHCTSU, MoH, Dodoma
20.	Ezekiel Mng'ong'o	Laboratory Scientist	Maranatha Hospital, Mbeya
21.	Farhiya Mohamed	Laboratory Quality Officer	NBTS Eastern Zone, Dar es Salaam
22.	Ferdinand Matata	Head of Diagnostic Services	PO-RALG, Dodoma
23.	Frank Changala	Laboratory Scientist	NPHL, Dar es Salaam
24.	Dr Haji Hussein	Technical officer	ICAP, Dar es Salaam
25.	Frank Mushi	Laboratory Scientist	Manyara RRH, Manyara
26.	Frank Shemhande	Laboratory Quality Officer	SBNRH-Ndanda, Mtwara
27.	Godfrey Mahundi	Laboratory Manager	Dodoma MC Hospital
28.	Helman Mhangala	Deputy Laboratory Manager	NBTS Central Zone, Dodoma
29.	Ibrahim Mauki	Laboratory Scientist	NPHL, Dar es Salaam

30.	Idrissa Hassan	Laboratory Service Coordinator	PORALG, Dodoma
31.	Innocent A. Chinguile	Laboratory Scientist & Epidemiologist	Training, Dodoma MoH,
32.	Jackson Luvamunda	Quality Officer	Sinza HC, Dar es Salaam
33.	Jackson Zengo	Deputy National Laboratory Quality Officer	DHCTSU, Dodoma MoH,
34.	Jacob Lusekelo	National Laboratory Quality Officer	DHCTSU, Dodoma MoH,
35.	James Mziray	Laboratory Service Coordinator	PO-RALG, Dodoma
36.	Joakim Chacha	LS-HSEEP	DHCTSU, MoH, Dodoma
37.	Joyce Samson	Laboratory Quality Officer	Sekou-Toure RRH, Mwanza
38.	Kadogosa Saimon	Laboratory Technologist	Singida RRH, Singida
39.	Lanja Kahemela	Laboratory Quality Officer	MNH, Mloganzila, Dar es Salaam
40.	Maige Ngeleja	DSCMC	MoH, Dodoma
41.	Mary F. Mtui	Registrar	HLPC, MoH, Dodoma
42.	Mayala Lushina	Laboratory Quality Officer	MNH, Upanga, Dar es Salaam
43.	Michael Mazoya	Laboratory Scientist	NBTS, Dar es Salaam
44.	Mzelifa Daudi	Microbiologist	University of Dodoma (UDOM), Dodoma
45.	Pius R. Tarimo	Laboratory Scientist & Epidemiologist	Kilimanjaro Christian Medical University College (KCMUCo), Moshi
46.	Rajabu Muninge	Laboratory Scientist	Maranatha Hospital, Mbeya
47.	Rashid Nassoro	Laboratory Quality Officer	Morogoro RRH, Morogoro
48.	Reuben Abednego	Laboratory Scientist	NPHL, Dar es Salaam
49.	Reuben Lema	Deputy Laboratory Manager	Morogoro Morogoro RRH,
50.	Reuben S. Mkala	Ag. Head of Laboratory Service	DHCTSU, Dodoma MoH,
51.	Richard Kinyaha	Laboratory Scientist	Kibong'oto IDH, Kilimanjaro
52.	Robert Makala	Regional Laboratory Technologist (RLT)	RAS - Manyara
53.	Sabra Rashid	Laboratory Scientist	MoH, Unguja-Zanzibar
54.	Said Lunemhya	Laboratory Scientist	Benjamin Mkapa ZRH, Dodoma
55.	Scolastica S. Manyama	Laboratory Quality Officer	Mirembe Hospital, Dodoma
56.	Susu Jeremiah Susu	Laboratory Quality Officer	Benjamin Mkapa ZRH, Dodoma

57.	Tamaly Lutufyo	Laboratory Manager	CCBRT, Dar es Salaam
58.	Ulfat Rahim	Laboratory Technologist	TMJ, Dar es Salaam
59.	William S Mollel	Laboratory Technologist	MOLLEL LABORATORY, Dodoma
60.	Yahya Mnung'a	MeLSAT-President	MeLSAT, Dar es Salaam
61.	Yohana Shirima	Laboratory Technologist	NBTS Northern zone, Moshi
62.	Yulitha Barnabas	Laboratory Manager	Dodoma RRH, Dodoma
63.	Zacharia Omary	Laboratory Manager	Sekou-Toure RRH, Mwanza

Annex 2: Biological Reference Intervals for Full Blood Count

Parameter	Reference Range					
	Adult		Infants		Children	
	Males	Females	Birth	1 month	1 year	SI Unit
WBC	4.00 - 10.0	4.0 - 10	10 - 26	5.0 - 9.0	6.0 - 16.0	$x10^3$ /µL
NEU	40 - 80	40 - 80	40 - 80	40 - 80	40 - 80	%
LYM	20 - 40	20 - 40	20 - 40	20 - 40	20 - 40	%
MON	2 - 10	2 - 10	2 - 10	2 - 10	2 - 10	%
EOS	1 – 6	1 - 6	1 - 6	1 - 6	1 - 6	%
BASO	<1 - 2	<1 - 2	<1 - 2	<1 - 2	<1 - 2	%
RBC	4.5 - 5.5	3.8 - 4.8	5.0 - 7.0	3.0 - 5.4	3.9 - 5.1	$x10^6$ /µL
HGB	13.0 - 17.0	12.0 -15.0	14.0 - 22.0	11.5 - 16.5	11.1 - 14.1	g/dL
MCV	83.0 - 99.0	83.0 - 99.0	100 -120	92 - 116	72 - 84	Fl
MCH	27.0 - 32.0	27.0 - 32.0	31.0 - 37.0	30.0 - 36	25.0 - 29.0	Pg
MCHC	31.5 - 34.5	31.5 - 34.5	30.0 - 36.0	29.0 - 37.0	32.0 - 36.0	g/dl
Hct	40 – 50	36 - 46	45 - 75	33 - 53	30 - 38	%
RDW						
PLT	150 - 410	150 - 410	100 - 450	200 - 500	200 - 550	$x10^3$ /µL
MPV						

Annex 3: Biological Reference Intervals for Coagulation Profile

Test	Range	SI Unit
Prothrombin Time	9.40 - 12.50	Sec
Activated Prothrombin Time	25.40 – 36.90	Sec
Fibrinogen	2.20 – 2.80	g/l
Factor V	0.62 -1.39	IU
Factor VII	0.50 -1.29	IU
Factor VIII	0.50 -1.50	IU
Factor IX	0.65 -1.50	IU
Free protein S (male)	74.10 - 145.10	%
Free protein S (female)	54.70 - 123.70	%
Protein S activity	63.50 - 149.00	%
Protein C may be less in neonates, infants and increase in adolescence	70.00 – 140.00	%
Plaminogen (activity)	80.20 - 132.50	%
Plamin inhibitor	98.00 – 122.00	%
Homocysteine	4.30 - 11.10	µmol/L
D-dimmer	≤ 232	ng/ml
Von Will brand factor ristocetin cofactor activity (blood group O)	480 - 201.90	%
Von Will brand Factor ricostein factor activity (blood A+B+AB)	60.80 - 239.80	%

Annex 4: Biological Reference Intervals for Urine Biochemistry

Parameter	Abbreviation	Biological Reference Intervals
Urobilinogen	URO	Normal
Glucose	GLU	Negative
Bilirubin	BIL	Negative
Ketones	KET	Negative
Specific gravity	S.G	1.003-1.029
Occult blood	BLD	Negative
Ph	Ph	4.5 - 7.8
Protein	PRO	Negative
Nitrite	NIT	Negative
Leukocytes	LEU	Negative

Annex 5: Biological Reference Intervals for Clinical Chemistry and Immunoassays

Test Name	Normal range	SI Unit
Parameter/Analyte	**Sub category**	
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	0 - 55	U/L
Albumin	35 - 50	g/l
Alkaline Phosphate	Male 15 -125	U/L
	Female 15 -125	U/L
	Male child 0 - 500	U/L
	Female Child 0 - 500	U/L
	Children	U/L
	Aged 1 day <250	U/L
	Aged 2 - 5 days <231	U/L
	Aged 6 days - 6 months <449	U/L
	Aged 7months - 1 year <462	U/L
	Aged 1 - 3years <281	U/L
	Aged 4 - 6years <269	U/L
	Aged 7 - 12 years <300	U/L
	Aged 13 - 17 years (M) <390	U/L
	Aged 13 - 17 years (F) <187	U/L
Aspatate Aminotransferase	5 - 34	U/L
Bilirubin – Direct	0 – 8.6	µmol/L
Bilirubin – Total	3.4 - 20.5 General	µmol/l
Total Protein	64 - 83	g/l
Gamma Glutamyl Transferase	Male 12- 64	U/L
	Female 9 - 36	U/L
	Male child 9 - 36	U/L
	Female child 9 - 36	U/L
CSF protein	0-4.3 lumbar fluid	g/L
CSF glucose	One third of Glucose	g/L
Asciti Protein	60 - 80	g/L
Ascitic Glucose	70 - 100	mg/dL
Creatinine	Adult Male 63.6 - 110.5	µmol/L
	Adult Female 50.4 - 98.1	µmol/L
	Male child 27 - 88	µmol/L
	Female child 27 - 88	µmol/L
Blood Urea Nitrogen (BUN)	Male 3.2 - 7.4	µmol/L
	Female 2.5 - 6.7	µmol/L
	Male child 3.2 - 7.4	µmol/L
	Female Child 2.5 - 6.7	µmol/L
Cholesterol Total	<5.2	mmol/L
HDL - Cholesterol	1.04 - 1.55	mmol/L
LDL – Cholesterol	0 - 3.34	mmolL
Triglycerides	0 - 1.69	mmol/L

Test Name	Normal range	SI Unit
Sodium (Na)	136 - 145	mmol/L
Potassium (K)	3.5 – 5.1	mmol/L
Chloride (Cl)	98 – 107	mmol/L
Amylase Total	25- 125	U/L
Creatine Kinase (CK)	Male 30 – 200	U/L
	Female 29- 168	U/L
	Male child 30 – 200	U/L
	Female child 29-168	U/L
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	125 – 220	IU/L
Lipase	13- 60	U/L
Calcium	Male 2.1 – 2.55	mmol/L
	Famale 2.1-2.55	mmol/L
	Male child 2.2 – 2.7	mmol/L
	Female child 2.2 – 2.7	mmol/L
Glucose	3.3 - 6.1	mmol/L
Iron	Male 5.5 – 25.8	µmol/L
	Female 4.5 - 25.8	µmol/L
	Male child 5.5 – 25.8	µmol/L
	Female child 4.5 – 25.8	µmol/L
% Saturation (Iron saturation)	20 - 50	%
Uric Acid	Male 0.21 - 0.42	mmol/L
	Female 0.15 - 0.35	mmol/L
	Male child 0.21 - 0.42	mmol/L
	Female child 0.15 - 0.35	mmol/L
Phosphorus	0.74 - 1.52	mmol/L
Sodium 24hrs Urine	27 – 287	mmol/24 hours
Potassium 24hrs Urine	25 – 125	mmol/24hrs
Transferrin	Male 1.74 - 3.64	g/L
	Female 1.8 - 3.82	g/L
	Male child 1.86 – 3.88	g/L
	Female child 1.86 - 3.88	g/L
Alpha Feto Protein	0.0 - 1.09	ng/ml
High Sensitive Troponin	13.8-17.5 Female	pg/ml
	28.9-39.2 Male	pg/ml
Vitamin B12	187-883	pg/ml
Ferritin	10 - 250	ng/ml
Folate	3.72 - 50.4	ng/ml
PSA	0.0 - 4.0	ng/ml
TSH	0.49 - 4.67	IU/ml
T4	0.47 - 4.67	ng/L
T_3	1.45 - 3.48	pg/ml
CK-MB	0.0 - 6	%

Test Name	Normal range	SI Unit
Tacrolimus	3 – 20	ng/ml
BNP	0-142	pg/ml
Cyclosporine	30.0-1500	ng/ml
CEA	0-5	ng/ml
CA-125	0-35	IU/mL
B-HCG	Less than 5 for non pregnant	mIu/mL
	25 for early pregnancy	mIu/mL
Vitamin D	0 - 160	ng/ml
Immunoglobulin G	5.40-18-22 Male	g/l
	5.52-16.31 Female	g/l
Immunoglobulin E	1-12 months <15	IU/mL
	1-5 years <60	IU/mL
	6-9 years <90	IU/mL
	10-15 years <200	IU/mL
	Adults <100	IU/mL
Immunoglobulin A	Male 63 – 645	mg/dl
	Female 65 – 517	mg/dl
	Male child 21- 291	mg/dl
	Female child 21 - 281	mg/dl
Immunoglobulin M	Male 0.22-2.40	g/l
	Female	g/l
	0.33-2.93	g/l
	Either 0.22-2.93	g/l
D - Dimer	0 .0 – 198	ng/L
CRP	0.0-5.0	mg/L
Estradiol	Follicular phase 21-251	pg/ML
	Midcycle phase 38-649	pg/ML
	Lueal phase 21-312	pg/ML
	Postmenopausal female 1028	pg/ML
	Male 11-44	pg/ML
Prolactin	Male	ng/ml
	3.46-19.40	ng/ml
	Female5.18-26.53	ng/ml
Testosterone	Male 4.94-32.01	nmol/L
	Female 0.38-1.97	nmol/L
Progesteron	Follicular phase 0.1-0.3	ng/ml
	Luteal phase 1.2-15.9	ng/ml
	Postmenopausal 0.1-0.2	ng/ml
	First trimester 2.8-147.3	ng/ml
	Second trimester 22.5-95.3	ng/ml
	Third trimester 27.9-242.5	ng/ml
	Male 0.1-0.2	ng/ml
LH	Male 1.14-8.75	ng/ml
	Follicular phase 2.39-6.60	ng/ml
	Midcycle peak-9.06-74.24	ng/ml

Test Name	Normal range	SI Unit
	Luteal phase 0.909.33	ng/ml
	Postmenopausal	ng/ml
	10.39 - 64.57	ng/ml
FSH	Male 0.95 - 11.95	mIu/mL
	Follicular phase 3.03 - 8.08	mIu/mL
	Midcycle peak 2.55 - 16.69	mIu/mL
	Luteal phase 1.38 - 5.47	mIu/mL
	Postmenopausal	mIu/mL
	26.72 - 133.41	mIu/mL
Magnesium	Male 0.66 - 1.07	mmol/L
	Female 0.66 - 1.07	mmol/L
	Male child 0.70 - 0.86	mmol/L
	Female 0.70 - 0.86	mmol/L
ADA	0 - 15	U/L
Glycated haemoglobin (HBA1C)	4 - 6	%

Annex 6: Critical or Panic Values that call for Immediate Actions

Analyte	**Less Than**	**Greater Than**
Amylase	25 U/L	150 U/L
Chloride	85 mmol/L	115 mmol/L
CK	30 U/L	200 U/L
Creatinine	26 umol/L	120 umol/L
Glucose(fasting)	2.5 mmol/L	20.0 mmol/L
Potassium	2.5 mmol/L	6.0 mmol/L
Sodium	120 mmol/L	160 mmol/L
Bilirubin Total	3.4 umol/L	20.5 umol/L
Biliribun Total for new Born	**Newborn** 24hours ≥ 1374 umol/L 48hours ≥ 2224 umol/L 84hours ≥2904 umol/L One week to one month ≥3424 umol/L	
Urea (BUN)	≤1.0mmol/L	≥ 54 mmol/L
HGB	< 5 mg/dl	> 20 g/dl
CD4	200 cells/□l	

Annex 7: Charts for Biochemical Identifications of Common Enterobacteriaceae and other Enteric Organisms

Organism	MAC Reaction	TSI	Oxidase	H_2S	Gas	Motility	Indole	Urea	Citrate	Haemolysis	Comment
Serratia mercesens	NLF	K/A or A/A	-	-	+	+	-	-	+	-	Red pigment at room temp on MHA
Proteus mirabilis	NLF	K/A	-	+	+	+	-	+	+(weak)	-	Grow with swarming xters on BA
Proteus vulgaris	NLF	A/A or K/A	-	+	+	+	+	+	+/-	-	Grow with swarming xters on BA
Salmonella sp	NLF	K/A	-	+	+	+	-	-	+	-	Citrate pos (non-typhoid salmonella)
Salmonella typhi	NLF	K/A	-	Wk+	+	+	-	-	-	-	Black ppt on SSA&XLD
Shigella sonnei	NLF	K/A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	No black ppt on SSA/XLD
Other Shigella sp	NLF	K/A		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Vibrio cholerae	NLF	A/A	-	+	+	-	-	-	-	+	String test-positive
Vibrio parahaemolyticus	NLF	K/A	+	-	-	+	+	-	+	+	
P.aeruginosa	NLF	K/NC	+	-	-	+	-	+	+	+/-	Green pigmentation on MHA
Acinetobacter spp	NLF	NC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Coccoide rods
Morganella morganii	NLF	K/A	-	-	+	+	+	+	-	-	
Providencia spp	NLF	K/A	-	-		+	+		+	-	
Yersinia enterocolitica	NLF	K/A	-	-	-	+(25/-35°C)	+/-	+/-	-	-	
Edwardsiella tarda	NLF	K/A	-	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	
E.coli	LF	A/A	-	-	+	+	+	-	-	+/-	Grows with precipitate bile salt on MCA

Organism	MAC Reaction	TSI	Oxidase	H_2S	Gas	Motility	Indole	Urea	Citrate	Haemolysis	Comment
Enterobacter aerogenes	LF	A/A	-	-	+	+	-	-	+	-	Often resistant to Ampicillin and cephalosporin
Klebsiella pneumoniae	LF	A/A	-	-	+	-	-	+	+	-	Grow with very mucoid colonies
Klebsiella oxytoca	LF	A/A	-	-	+	-	+	+	+	-	
Citrobacter freundii	Late LF	A/A or K/A	-	+	+	+	-	+/-	+	-	

NOTE PAD

NOTE PAD

NOTE PAD

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:

PERMANENT SECRETARY

MINISTRY OF HEALTH,

MAGUFULI GOVERNMENT CITY, AFYA ROAD/STREET, MTUMBA,

PO BOX 743,

40478 DODOMA, TANZANIA.

LANDLINE: +255 (0)26 232 3267

EMAIL: ps@afya.go.tz

WEBSITE: www.moh.go.tz

ISBN 978-9912-9833-6-6

9 789912 983366